

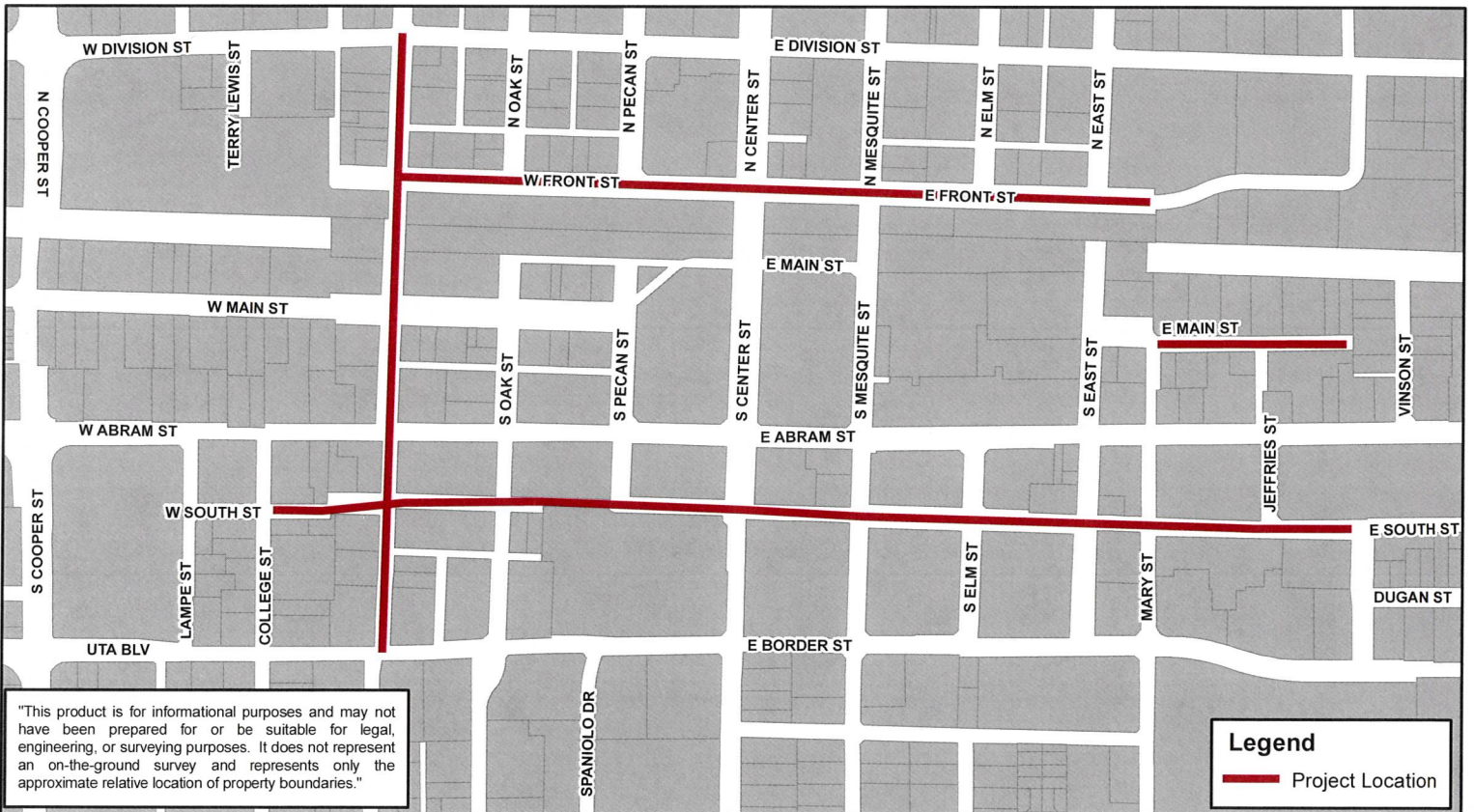
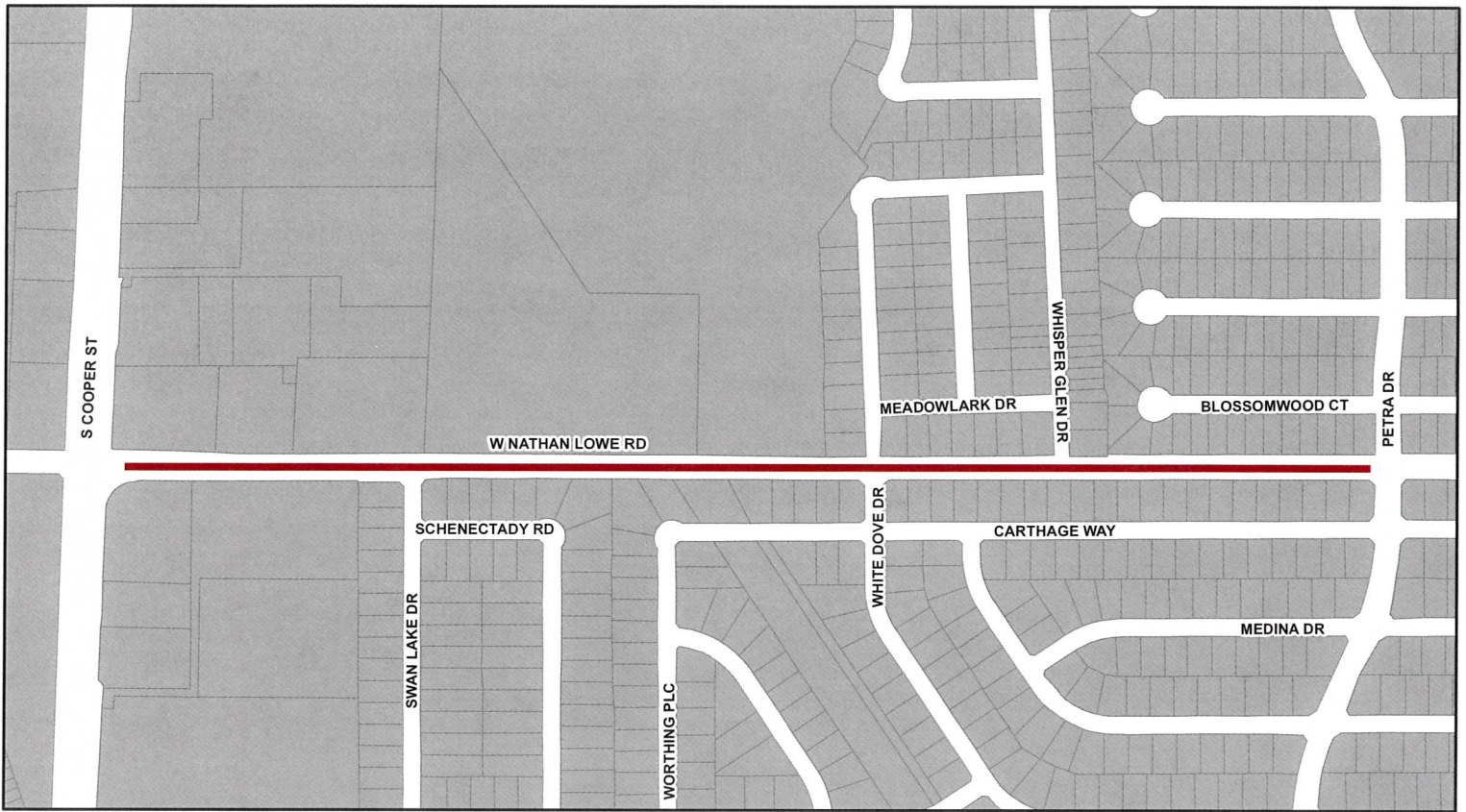


**2022 NATHAN LOWE AND DOWNTOWN SIDEWALK  
IMPROVEMENTS**


**CITY OF ARLINGTON  
PROJECT NO. PWSW22001**

Prepared by  
City of Arlington  
Department of Public Works and Transportation





"This product is for informational purposes and may not have been prepared for or be suitable for legal, engineering, or surveying purposes. It does not represent an on-the-ground survey and represents only the approximate relative location of property boundaries."

**Legend**  
 Project Location



# Nathan Lowe & Downtown Sidewalk Improvements

## Project No. PWSW22001

### Location Map



Prepared By:  
 PWT Engineering Operations  
 1/10/2022

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

<u>SECTION NUMBER</u>	<u>SUBJECT OF SECTION</u>
	Instructions to Bidders
1	Advertisement for Bids
2	Prevailing Wage Rates
3	Contractor Residency Statement
3A	MWBE Utilization Plan
3B	Letter of Intent to Subcontract
3C	Good Faith Effort Checklist
4	Affidavit Against Prohibited Acts
4A	Affidavit Against Firearm Entities
4B	Affidavit Against Boycotting Energy Companies
5	Verification Relating to Boycotting Israel
6	Proposal
7	Contract
8	Performance Bond
9	Payment Bond
10	Maintenance Bond
11	Special Provisions - General Administration Specifications
12	Special Provisions - General Construction Specifications
13	Special Provisions – Paving Specifications
14	Special Provisions – Water & Sanitary Sewer Specifications
<del>15</del>	<del>Special Provisions – Drainage Specifications – N/A</del>
16	Trench Safety and OSHA
17	Special Provisions - Landscaping Specifications
18	Special Provisions - Pavement Marking Specifications

- 19 ~~Special Provisions – Streetlights Specifications – N/A~~
- 20 Special Provisions – Sign Specifications
- 21 ~~Special Provisions – Signals Specifications – N/A~~
- 22 ~~Special Provisions – Mill & Overlay/Reclamation Specifications – N/A~~

## INSTRUCTIONS TO BIDDERS

1. **PROPOSAL FORM:** The Bidder may use the original proposal forms included in these bid documents or the Bidder may substitute a computer-generated proposal for the original proposal included in these bid documents. The Substitute Proposal shall also be signed by the Bidder. Any discrepancy in items between the Substitute Proposal and the original proposal form, the original proposal form shall govern. If the Substitute Proposal changes the intent of a bid item or contains an error in the quantities, unit prices, or extension of prices, the City may reject the bid submitted.

2. **DELIVERY OF PROPOSAL:** Proposal shall be delivered directly to the Office of the Director of Public Works and Transportation, 2<sup>nd</sup> Floor, City Hall, 101 West Abram Street, Arlington TX, 76010. It shall be the Bidder's responsibility to ensure delivery of his/her proposal at the proper place by the time stated in the Notice to Bidders. The mere fact that a proposal was dispatched will not be considered. Any bids received after closing time will be returned unopened.

- **Each Proposal shall be in a sealed envelope plainly marked with the words "BID DOCUMENTS" or "BID PROPOSAL" with the name or description of the project as shown on the front cover of the Contract Documents.**
- **All bid items in the proposal including alternate and addendum items must be filled with a numeric value, including zero value. Bid items with blanks or dashes will be considered as non-responsive items and the bid will not be eligible for award consideration.**
- **The following MUST be included in the bid proposal otherwise the bid will be considered non-responsive and the bid will not be eligible for award consideration:**
  - *Certified or cashier's check or an approved bidder's bond*
  - *Signed Section 3 Contractor Residency Statement*
  - *Signed Acknowledgement/Acceptance of addendum(s) {last page of the addendum}, if applicable*
  - *MWBE Utilization Plan - Section 3A (MWBE certifications for each firm must be included)*
- **All potential bidders MUST submit the following to Austin Allen at [Austin.Allen@arlingtontx.gov](mailto:Austin.Allen@arlingtontx.gov) no later than 2:00 p.m. CDT, on Thursday, February 24, 2022.**
  - *Letter of Intent to Subcontract – Section 3B (needed for each subcontractor)*
  - *Good Faith Effort Checklist (GFE) – Section 3C and supporting documentation.*

***Failure to submit the required MWBE documentation, based on the above listed time and date will result in the bid being considered non-responsive.***

3. **MINORITY/WOMAN BUSINESS ENTERPRISE CONTRACT SPECIFIC GOAL**  
The City's Minority/Woman Business Enterprise (MWBE) utilization goal, for this project is **25%**.

Subcontracting opportunity identified for this solicitation includes: **Sidewalk, Landscaping, Signage/Markings, and Retaining Walls.**

The contractor's MWBE commitment percentage is based on the total value of the contract including any change orders and modifications throughout the contract agreement.

The criteria used to set a MWBE Contract Specific Goal shall include business availability, the nature of the contract, the City's past experiences with MWBE participation in similar contracts, price competitiveness, subcontracting opportunities, progress towards meeting the annual goal and other relevant factors.

Bidders/proposers must submit good-faith efforts documentation, along with Good Faith Effort (GFE) checklist, **no later than 2:00 p.m. CDT, on Thursday, February 24, 2022.** Good Faith Effort (GFE) documentation will be sent to the Office of Business Diversity for review to determine if bid/proposal will be accepted, declined, or allow the bidder/proposer to withdraw.

4. PROCUREMENT OF GOODS AND SERVICES FROM MINORITY/WOMEN BUSINESS ENTERPRISE OR HISTORICALLY UNDERUTILIZED BUSINESSES:

It is the City's policy to remove all barriers for MWBEs to compete and create a level playing field for MWBEs to participate in City contracts and related subcontracts.

The Contractor specifically shall comply with all applicable provisions of the City's MWBE Policy and Procedures and any amendments. MWBE and non-MWBE subcontractors also agree to comply with all applicable provisions of the City's MWBE Policy and Procedures and any amendments. The City's MWBE Policy and Procedures and any amendments thereto are incorporated by reference herein as though written word for word. The Contractor shall insert the substance of this provision in all subcontracts and purchase orders.

The Contractor shall appoint a high-level official with decision-making capabilities for the Contractor to administer and coordinate the Contractor's efforts to carry out the requirements and provisions of the City's MWBE Policy and Procedures and its Contractual commitments.

The City of Arlington reaffirms that it will not, nor will its contractors, discriminate based on race, age, color, religion, sex, sexual orientation, gender identity, national origin, ancestry, gender, disability, or place of birth in the award and performance of contracts.

Every locally funded contract will be evaluated by the City to determine the appropriate method for enhancing MWBE participation, including progress towards the achievement of the annual aspirational MWBE goal and other program objectives.

Procedures for implementation, including good faith efforts requirements, information submitted with bid proposals, reporting procedures, etc., shall be consistent with the procedures utilized in the City's MWBE Policy & Procedures Manual.

The City will recognize MWBE companies that have received one or more certifications from the following organizations:

- North Central Texas Regional Certification Agency (NCTRCA),
- State of Texas Historically Underutilized Business (HUB),
- Texas Department of Transportation (TxDOT),

- DFW Minority Supplier Development Council (MSDC), and
- Woman's Business Council Southwest.

The City reserves the right to review, accept or reject any certification from agencies not listed. In addition, the lowest responsible bidder will be required to submit cost information related to minority/woman businesses in accordance with Section 11-25.

5. **PREQUALIFICATION OF BIDDERS:** All Bidders on this project must be prequalified to perform **Sidewalk** work by the City of Arlington prior to the opening of bids. The successful contractor must perform this primary work type on this project. Bids received not in compliance with the prequalification requirements will not be opened.

Contractors performing the following work types must also be prequalified:

- Miscellaneous Concrete
- Water/Sewer

The lowest responsible bidder will be required to submit a list of subcontractors and the type of work they will be performing to verify status of prequalification. If the required prequalification is not met, the lowest responsible bidder will be required to provide a substitute prequalified subcontractor or the bid will be rejected. Application for prequalification of subcontractors will not be accepted after the bid is opened. However, should there be a change in project scope during construction the City reserves the right to require additional prequalification of contractor(s) performing the work.

For information related to prequalification status, please contact the Department of Public Works and Transportation. To obtain prequalification status, application forms must be completed and returned to the Department of Public Works and Transportation. Processing time varies and may take up to three weeks to process. The mere fact that an application was submitted does not guarantee or constitute approval of prequalification status.

6. **BID SECURITY:** Each bid must be accompanied by a certified or cashier's check or an approved bidder's bond made payable to the City in an amount of five (5%) percent of the largest possible total of the bid as a guarantee that, if awarded the contract, the Bidder will enter into a Contract and execute all necessary bonds.

7. **PERFORMANCE, PAYMENT AND MAINTENANCE BONDS:** Performance, payment and maintenance bonds in the amount of not less than one hundred percent (100%) of the contract price conditioned upon the faithful performance of the contract, and upon payment of all persons supplying labor or furnishing materials, will be required upon the forms which are a part of the Contract Documents. Bonds shall be executed by a surety company acceptable to and approved by the City, authorized to do business in the State of Texas and acceptable for underwriting of risks as indicated by the latest revision, Treasury Department Circular 570, listing acceptable sureties on Federal Bonds. The period of the Maintenance Bond shall be two years from the date of acceptance of all work done under the Contract, to cover the guarantee as set forth in the Special Provisions.

8. **BIDDERS KNOWLEDGE OF CONDITIONS:** Prior to submission of a proposal, bidders shall have made a thorough inspection of the site of work and a thorough examination of the plans and specifications and shall become informed as to the nature of the work, labor conditions, and all other matters that may affect the cost and time of completion of the work.

9. INTERPRETATION OF DOCUMENT: If any person contemplating submitting a bid is in doubt as to the meaning of any part of the plans, specifications, or other proposed contract documents, the person may contact the engineer (email preferred) for an interpretation. All inquiries must be received no later than seven (7) calendar days prior to opening of bids. The person making the inquiry or request for additional information will be responsible for its prompt delivery. The City cannot guarantee a response if the inquiry or request is not submitted in time. Any interpretation of these documents will be made by addendum duly issued. The City will not be responsible for any other explanations or interpretations.

10. SOIL INVESTIGATION: Soils report was not performed for this project.

11. ALTERNATE BIDS: No bids for alternate work items shall be submitted except as shown on the Proposal. The City reserves the right to choose either the base bid or alternate bid whichever is most advantageous to the City. There will be no adjustments to unit prices bid due to the City's choice of alternate bids.

12. ADDENDUM: The City reserves the right to issue addendum(s) to the Plans, Proposal, Specifications, and Special Provisions. Addendum(s) will be issued via the City's supplier/vendor portal, IonWave, located on the City's web page. Bidders who are currently registered with IonWave will be notified via the portal notification process and the addendum(s) may be downloaded by logging into the portal. **It shall be the Bidder's responsibility to ensure that he/she is aware of any and all addendum(s) issued by the City.**

13. AWARD OF CONTRACT: As allowed by law, the Contract shall be awarded to the bidder whose bid represents the lowest responsible bid as determined by the City.

It is the intent of the City of Arlington that this project be completed as quickly and economically as is feasible. A tabulation of the bids received will be prepared for consideration by the City Council. It is anticipated that the BEGIN WORK DATE will be approximately two months after the date of bid opening.

14. BID TABULATION: A tabulation of all bids will be available within five (5) working days of the bid opening on City's web page, [https://www.arlingtontx.gov/city\\_hall/departments/finance/purchasing/bidding\\_procurement](https://www.arlingtontx.gov/city_hall/departments/finance/purchasing/bidding_procurement), under "Current Bid Opportunities", "Public Works and Transportation/Engineering".

15. AFFIDAVIT AGAINST PROHIBITED ACTS: It shall be the lowest responsible bidder's responsibility to complete this affidavit (Sections 4, 4A and 4B of the Contract Documents) prior to execution of the contract by the City of Arlington. Failure to complete this form may prohibit the Contractor's ability to secure the contract.

16. TITLE VI: The City of Arlington, in accordance with Title VI of the Civil Rights Act of 1964, 78 Stat. 252, 42 U.S.C. 2000d to 2000d-4 and Title 49, Code of Federal Regulations, Department of Transportation, Subtitle A, Office of the Secretary, Part 21, Nondiscrimination in Federally-Assisted programs of the Department of Transportation issued pursuant to such Act, hereby notifies all vendors that it will affirmatively ensure that in any contract entered into pursuant to this advertisement, minority business enterprises will be afforded full opportunity to submit bids in response to this invitation and will not be discriminated against on the grounds of race, color, or national origin in consideration for an award. Vendor will abide and ensure compliance with all terms of Appendix A of the USDOT Standard Title VI Assurances as listed below.

Appendix A of the USDOT Standard Title VI Assurances



During the performance of this contract, the Contractor, for itself, its assignees and successors in interest (hereinafter referred to as the "Contractor") agrees as follows:

(1) Compliance with Regulations: The Contractor shall comply with the Regulations relative to nondiscrimination in Federally-Assisted programs of the Department of Transportation (hereinafter, "DOT") Title 49, Code of Federal Regulations, Part 21, as they may be amended from time to time, (hereinafter referred to as the Regulations), which are herein incorporated by reference and made a part of this contract.

(2) Nondiscrimination: The Contractor, with regard to the work performed by it during the contract, shall not discriminate on the grounds of race, color, or national origin in the selection and retention of subcontractors, including procurements of materials and leases of equipment. The Contractor shall not participate either directly or indirectly in the discrimination prohibited by section 21.5 of the Regulations, including employment practices when the contract covers a program set forth in Appendix B of the Regulations.

(3) Solicitations for Subcontracts, Including Procurements of Materials and Equipment: In all solicitations either by competitive bidding or negotiation made by the Contractor for work to be performed under a subcontract, including procurements of materials or leases of equipment, each potential subcontractor or supplier shall be notified by the Contractor of the Contractor's obligations under this contract and the Regulations relative to nondiscrimination on the grounds of race, color, or national origin.

(4) Information and Reports: The Contractor shall provide all information and reports required by the Regulations or directives issued pursuant thereto, and shall permit access to its books, records, accounts, other sources of information, and its facilities as may be determined by the City of Arlington or the Texas Department of Transportation to be pertinent to ascertain compliance with such Regulations, orders and instructions. Where any information required of a Contractor is in the exclusive possession of another who fails or refuses to furnish this information the Contractor shall so certify to the City of Arlington, or the Texas Department of Transportation as appropriate, and shall set forth what efforts it has made to obtain the information.

(5) Sanctions for Noncompliance: In the event of the Contractor's noncompliance with the nondiscrimination provisions of this contract, the City of Arlington shall impose such contract sanctions as it or the Texas Department of Transportation may determine to be appropriate, including, but not limited to:

- (a) withholding of payments to the Contractor under the contract until the Contractor complies, and/or
- (b) cancellation, termination or suspension of the contract, in whole or in part.

(6) Incorporation of Provisions: The Contractor shall include the provisions of paragraphs (1) through (6) in every subcontract, including procurements of materials and leases of equipment, unless exempt by the Regulations, or directives issued pursuant thereto.

The Contractor shall take such action with respect to any subcontract or procurement as the City of Arlington or the Texas Department of Transportation may direct as a means of enforcing such provisions including sanctions for non-compliance: Provided, however, that, in the event a Contractor becomes involved in, or is threatened with, litigation with a subcontractor or supplier as a result of such direction, the Contractor may request the City of Arlington to enter into such litigation to protect the interests of the City of Arlington, and, in addition, the Contractor may request the United States to enter into such litigation to protect the interests of the United States.

17. FORM 1295: Effective January 1, 2016, the Texas Legislature, House Bill 1295 requires all business entity to file an electronic disclosure of interested parties (Form 1295) to the Texas

Ethic Commission (TEC) for any contracts requiring City Council approval. The lowest responsible bidder will be required to file online with TEC at <https://www.ethics.state.tx.us/filinginfo/1295/>. The responsible bidder will be required to swear or affirm that the information entered is true and correct. An original signed copy of the filing must be submitted to the City prior to approval of the contract by City Council. **Failure to submit Form 1295 prior to date of City Council's approval will result in the contracts not being processed.**

Definition of "Interested Party" is located under Laws & Regulations, Chapter 46, Commission Rules; Disclosure of Interested Parties. FAQ's for Form 1295 can be found on [https://www.ethics.state.tx.us/resources/FAQs/FAQ\\_Form1295.php](https://www.ethics.state.tx.us/resources/FAQs/FAQ_Form1295.php).

18. VERIFICATION RELATING TO BOYCOTTING ISRAEL: New State legislation, Chapter 2270 of the Texas Government Code prevents the City of Arlington from entering a contract that boycotts Israel. The successful contractor must verify they do not and will not boycott Israel during term of this contract. It shall be the lowest responsible bidder's responsibility to complete this verification (Section 5 of the Contract Documents) prior to execution of the contract by the City of Arlington. Failure to complete this form will prohibit the contractor's ability to secure the contract.

19. VERIFICATION RELATING TO ENERGY BOYCOTT: New State legislation, Chapter 2274 of the Texas Government Code prohibits a city from entering into a contract with a value of \$100,000 or more that is to be paid from public funds with a company with more than 10 full-time employees for goods or services unless the contract contains a written verification from the company that it: (1) does not boycott energy companies; and (2) will not boycott energy companies during the term of the contract. It shall be the lowest responsible bidder's responsibility to complete this verification (Section 4A of the Contract Documents) prior to execution of the contract by the City of Arlington. Failure to complete this form will prohibit the contractor's ability to secure the contract.

20. VERIFICATION RELATING TO FIREARMS BOYCOTT: New State legislation, Chapter 2274 of the Texas Government Code (1) prohibits a governmental entity from entering into a contract with a value of \$100,000 or more that is to be paid from public funds with a company with more than 10 full-time employees for the purchase of goods or services unless the contract contains a written verification from the company that it: (a) does not have a practice, policy, guidance, or directive that discriminates against a firearm entity or firearm trade association; and (b) will not discriminate during the term of the contract against a firearm entity or firearm trade association; and (2) provides that the prohibition in (1) does not apply to a city that (a) contracts with a sole-source provider, or (b) the city does not receive any bids from a company that is able to provide the required verification required by (1). It shall be the lowest responsible bidder's responsibility to complete this verification (Section 4B of the Contract Documents) prior to execution of the contract by the City of Arlington. Failure to complete this form will prohibit the contractor's ability to secure the contract.

21. PROCUREMENT OF GOODS AND SERVICES FROM ARLINGTON BUSINESSES : In performing this contract, Contractor agrees to use diligent efforts to purchase all goods and services from Arlington Businesses whenever such goods and services are comparable in availability, quality and price.

END OF SECTION

**SECTION NO. 1**

**ADVERTISEMENT FOR BIDS**

This project primarily consists of constructing sidewalks and ADA ramps. The Engineer's estimate for this project is \$775,000.00.

Sealed bids will be received by the City of Arlington, Texas, at the Office of the Director of Public Works and Transportation, 2<sup>nd</sup> Floor, City Hall, 101 W. Abram Street, Arlington TX, 76010, **until 2:00 p.m. on Tuesday, February 22, 2022**, for the construction of **2022 NATHAN LOWE AND DOWNTOWN SIDEWALK IMPROVEMENTS, PROJECT NO. PWSW22001** as listed in the contract documents, at which time and place they will be publicly opened and read aloud in the Public Works Conference Room. Any bid received after closing time will be returned unopened.

All bidders and subcontractors on this project must be pre-qualified in the appropriate work category as outlined in the Instructions to Bidders of the contract documents.

Contract documents, including plans, specifications, and addendums may be reviewed and/or downloaded from the City's vendor/supplier portal, IonWave, accessible via the City's web page, [https://arlingtontx.gov/city\\_hall/departments/finance](https://arlingtontx.gov/city_hall/departments/finance). Look for "Vendor/Supplier" under "Services".

A cashier's check or an acceptable Bidder's Bond payable to the City of Arlington, Texas, in an amount of not less than five percent (5%) of the largest possible total for the bid submitted, must accompany the bid.

A Performance Bond and a Payment Bond, each for one hundred percent (100%) of the contract price, will be required. The successful bidder shall also furnish to the City a Maintenance Bond covering defects of material and workmanship for two calendar years following the City's approval and acceptance of the construction.

Not less than the prevailing wage rates adopted by the City of Arlington, Texas, and as set forth in the contract documents, must be paid on this project.

The City reserves the right to request bidders to provide Minority/Women Business Enterprises (MWBE) information. This is for information only and no preference shall be given, nor will this information affect the results of the contract award

In case of ambiguity or lack of clearness in stating prices in the Proposal, the City reserves the right to accept the most advantageous construction thereof to the City or to reject the proposal.

The City reserves the right to reject any or all bids and waive any or all informalities. No bid may be withdrawn until the expiration of ninety (90) days from the date bids are opened.

All inquiries must be submitted to the City in accordance with the Instructions to Bidders of the contract documents.

**FOR THE CITY OF ARLINGTON**

**A PRE-BID Teleconference/Meeting** will be held for this project on Monday, February 7, 2022 at 2:00 p.m. in the Public Works and Transportation Conference Room, 2<sup>nd</sup> Floor, City Hall, 101 W. Abram Street, Arlington, TX 76010. Prospective bidders are encouraged to participate either in person or by teleconference. If participating by teleconference, please contact Austin Allen, Graduate Engineer at 817-459-6351 or at [Austin.Allen@arlingtontx.gov](mailto:Austin.Allen@arlingtontx.gov) no later than Friday, February 4, 2022 at 5:00 p.m. to register for the call.

**Arlington Star-Telegram publication dates:** Sunday, January 30, 2022 & Sunday, February 06, 2022

**CONTRACTOR STATUS INFORMATION**

Instructions: Please fill in the appropriate section below, completing all blanks within the section. This information is necessary to ensure that the contract and bonds are in the correct form.

SECTION 1: If the contractor is a sole proprietor, fill in this section only:

Name:     Kenneth                    Gerard                    Halverson      
                    First                                    Middle                                    Last

Name under which you are engaged in business (if operating under an assumed name):

Ken-Do Contracting, LP

Residence:     3653 Greathouse Road Waxahachie    Ellis    Texas    75167      
                    Street                                    City                    County                    State                    ZIP

Business:     P.O. Box 2001    Desoto    Dallas    Texas    75115      
                    Street                                    City                    County                    State                    ZIP

Principal place of business:     Waxahachie    Ellis    Texas    75167      
                                    City                    County                    State                    ZIP

Contact Person:     Kenneth Halverson    214-882-1349    khalver439@aol.com      
                                    Name                                    Phone                                    Email Address

SECTION 2: If the contractor is a partnership, fill in this section only:

Name of Partner: \_\_\_\_\_  
                                    First                                    Middle                                    Last

Residence: \_\_\_\_\_  
                    Street                                    City                    County                    State                    ZIP

Name of Partner: \_\_\_\_\_  
                                    First                                    Middle                                    Last

Residence: \_\_\_\_\_  
                    Street                                    City                    County                    State                    ZIP

Name under which contractor conducts business (if operating under an assumed name):

\_\_\_\_\_

Business Address: \_\_\_\_\_  
                                    Street                                    City                    County                    State                    ZIP

Principal place of business: \_\_\_\_\_  
City County State Zip

Contact Person: \_\_\_\_\_  
Name Phone Email Address

**SECTION 3: If the contractor is a corporation, fill in this section only:**

Registered name of corporation: \_\_\_\_\_

Doing business as: \_\_\_\_\_

Date charter expires: \_\_\_\_\_

State of corporation: \_\_\_\_\_

Date of corporation filing: \_\_\_\_\_ (If non-Texas corporation, date of Certificate of Authority Issuance).

Registered Agent: \_\_\_\_\_  
First Middle Last

Address: \_\_\_\_\_  
Street City County State ZIP

Location of Corporation principal office:  
\_\_\_\_\_  
Street City County State ZIP

Person executing contract on behalf of corporation: (Please print)

Name: \_\_\_\_\_  
First Middle Last

Title: \_\_\_\_\_

Address: \_\_\_\_\_  
Street City County State ZIP

Telephone Number: \_\_\_\_\_

Contact Person: \_\_\_\_\_  
Name Phone Email Address

END OF SECTION



Structures.....\$ 13.84

LABORER

Asphalt Raker.....\$ 12.69  
Flagger.....\$ 10.06  
Laborer, Common.....\$ 10.72  
Laborer, Utility.....\$ 12.32  
Pipelayer.....\$ 13.24  
Work Zone Barricade  
Servicer.....\$ 11.68

POWER EQUIPMENT OPERATOR:

Asphalt Distributor.....\$ 15.32  
Asphalt Paving Machine.....\$ 13.99  
Broom or Sweeper.....\$ 11.74  
Concrete Pavement  
Finishing Machine.....\$ 16.05  
Concrete Saw.....\$ 14.48  
Crane Operator, Lattice  
Boom 80 Tons or Less.....\$ 17.27  
Crane Operator, Lattice  
Boom over 80 Tons.....\$ 20.52  
Crane, Hydraulic 80 Tons  
or Less.....\$ 18.12  
Crawler Tractor.....\$ 14.07  
Excavator, 50,000 pounds  
or less.....\$ 17.19  
Excavator, over 50,000  
pounds.....\$ 16.99  
Foundation Drill , Truck  
Mounted.....\$ 21.07  
Foundation Drill, Crawler  
Mounted.....\$ 17.99  
Front End Loader 3 CY or  
Less.....\$ 13.69  
Front End Loader, over 3 CY.\$ 14.72  
Loader/Backhoe.....\$ 15.18  
Mechanic.....\$ 17.68  
Milling Machine.....\$ 14.32  
Motor Grader, Fine Grade....\$ 17.19  
Motor Grader, Rough.....\$ 16.02  
Pavement Marking Machine....\$ 13.63  
Reclaimer/Pulverizer.....\$ 11.01  
Roller, Asphalt.....\$ 13.08  
Roller, Other.....\$ 11.51  
Scraper.....\$ 12.96  
Small Slipform Machine.....\$ 15.96  
Spreader Box.....\$ 14.73

Servicer.....\$ 14.58

Steel Worker (Reinforcing).....\$ 16.18

TRUCK DRIVER

Lowboy-Float.....\$ 16.24  
Off Road Hauler.....\$ 12.25  
Single Axle.....\$ 12.31



Single or Tandem Axle Dump	
Truck.....	\$ 12.62
Tandem Axle Tractor with	
Semi Trailer.....	\$ 12.86
Transit-Mix.....	\$ 14.14
-----	
WELDER.....	\$ 14.84

WELDERS - Receive rate prescribed for craft performing operation to which welding is incidental.

THE STATE OF TEXAS §  
COUNTY OF ELLIS §

**AFFIDAVIT**

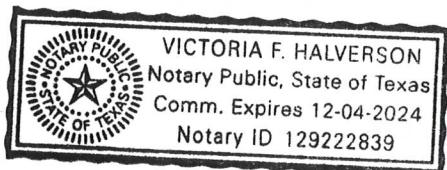
BEFORE ME, the undersigned authority, a Notary Public in and for the State of Texas, on this day personally appeared Kenneth Halverson,  who is known to me or  who was proved to me on the oath of \_\_\_\_\_ (name of person identifying the acknowledging person) or  who was proved to me through \_\_\_\_\_ (description of identity card or other document issued by the federal or state government containing the picture and signature of the acknowledging person) to be the person whose name is subscribed to this affidavit; and being by me first duly sworn, upon oath stated as follows:

"My name is Kenneth Halverson. I am of sound mind and capable of making this affidavit.

"I am President for Ken-Do Contracting, LP, which company entered into a contract on the 29<sup>th</sup> day of March, 2022, to construct **2022 NATHAN LOWE AND DOWNTOWN SIDEWALK IMPROVEMENTS**, City of Arlington Project No. **PWSW22001**, in the City of Arlington, Texas, and I am duly authorized on behalf of said company to hereby swear and affirm that all wages for labor on the above-referenced project are in strict compliance with the established prevailing wage rates as described in the contract documents for the referenced project, and all wages have been and will be paid and satisfied as the prevailing rates may change from time to time. Upon request by the City of Arlington, I shall allow a complete examination of the financial records relative to this project, including, but not limited to, cancelled checks, invoices and statements at any time, and allow the City of Arlington to interview any and/or all employees of the above said company or any and/or all employees of said Company's subcontractor or subcontractors. Also, I hereby agree on behalf of the above company, to be accountable for any and all penalties and/or fine provisions in accordance with the contract documents and relevant law."

  
\_\_\_\_\_  
AFFIANT

GIVEN UNDER MY HAND AND SEAL OF OFFICE this the 6<sup>th</sup> day of April, 2022.



Victoria F. Halverson  
Notary Public In and For The State of Texas

Victoria F. Halverson  
Notary's Printed Name

END OF SECTION

SECTION NO. 3

CONTRACTOR RESIDENCY STATEMENT

The Texas Government Code section 2252.002 governs the awarding of contracts to non-resident bidders. This law provides that, in order to be awarded a contract as low bidder, a non-resident bidder (out-of-state contractor whose corporate office or principal place of business is outside the State of Texas) bid projects in Texas at an amount lower than the lowest Texas resident bidder by the same amount that a Texas resident bidder would be required to underbid a non-resident bidder in order to obtain a comparable contract in the state in which the non-resident's principal place of business is located. The appropriate blanks in the following statement must be filled out by all out-of-state or non-resident bidders in order for those bids to meet specifications. The failure of out-of-state or non-resident contractors to do so will automatically disqualify that bidder. This does not apply to contracts involving Federal Funds.

Initial here if you are Texas Residential Bidder.

Initial here if you are a Non-resident contractor in \_\_\_\_\_ (give state), our principal place of business, is required to be \_\_\_\_\_ percent lower than resident bidders by State Law.

BIDDER

KEN-DO CONTRACTING  
Company

By KENNETH HALVEGSON  
(Please Print)

P.O. BOX 2001  
Address

[Signature]  
Signature

DESO TO TX 75115  
City State Zip

PRESIDENT  
Title (Please Print)

\*The State Purchasing and General Services Commission defines Principal Place of Business as follows: Principal Place of Business in Texas means, for any type of business entity recognized in the State of Texas, that the business entity:

- has at least one permanent office located in the State of Texas, from which business activities other than submitting bids to governmental agencies are conducted and from which the bid is submitted, and
- has at least one employee who works in the Texas office

\*The Texas Comptroller annually publishes a list showing how each state regulates the award if governmental contracts whose principal place of business is not located in that state. <http://comptroller.texas.gov/>

END OF SECTION  
Revised 9/2016

SECTION 3A

OFFICE OF BUSINESS DIVERSITY  
MWBE Utilization Plan

Project Name: 2022 NATHAN LOWE AND DOWNTOWN SIDEWALK IMPROVEMENTS

Project No: PWSU 22001

Date: 02/17/2022

LEGEND

MWBE = Minority/Woman Business Enterprise

\* Ethnicity = Native American (AI), Asian Pacific/Indian (AS), African American (BL), Hispanic (HI), Caucasian Female (WO), or Non-Minority (N/A)

Prime Contractor	MWBE (Yes/No)
<u>KEN-DO CONTRACTING</u>	<u>NO</u>

LIST ALL SUBCONTRACTING OPPORTUNITIES (use additional sheets if necessary):

Name of Company and Description of Work Type	Potential MWBE Firm Ethnicity* (Yes/No)	Anticipated Dollar (\$) of Work
<u>J+G TRANSPORTATION</u>		
<u>MATERIALS DELIVERY &amp; HAUL OFF</u>	<u>HI YES</u>	<u>\$ 24,000.00</u>
<u>COWTOWN READY-MIX CONCRETE DELIVERY</u>	<u>WO YES</u>	<u>\$ 12,000.00</u>
<u>SYB CONSTRUCTION</u>	<u>WO YES</u>	<u>\$ 16,000.00</u>
<u>MISC. CONSTRUCTION</u>		
<u>STRAIGHT LINE SAW SEAL</u>	<u>BL YES</u>	<u>\$ 8,000.00</u>
<u>STREET SEALING &amp; SIDEWALKS</u>		

Please complete this form and include with proposal, as an attachment.

Upon formal award of said project, the proposer will submit a Prime, Subs & MWBE Report identifying the Local and/or MWBE subcontractor(s) that will perform the listed work. By signing below, the recommended proposer shall agree to meet their Local and/or MWBE goal based on the information provided on this document.

Name of Company's Main Contact Person KENNETH HALVERSON

Signature of Main Contact Person 

**MINORITY/WOMEN BUSINESS ENTERPRISE**

**Minority and/or Woman-owned Business Enterprises are encouraged to participate in all City procurement solicitation. In order to be identified as a certified Minority/Woman Business Enterprise with the City of Arlington, Texas; this form, along with a copy of the selected certification, must be included with the bid/proposal.**

**PLEASE CHECK THE APPROPRIATE ETHNICITY AND/OR GENDER:**

American Indian     Asian     Black     Hispanic     Woman Owned

**Certification Status: Is the firm certified as a Minority, Woman, or Disadvantaged Business Enterprise by a government or business development agency?**     Yes     No (If yes, please select specific agency)

North Central Texas Regional Certification Agency (NCTRCA)

State of Texas Historically Underutilized Business (HUB)

Dallas/Fort Worth Minority Supplier Development Council (DFW MSDC) or NMSDC affiliate

Women's Business Council – Southwest (WBC-SW) or WBENC affiliate

Texas Department of Transportation, Disadvantaged Business Enterprise (TxDOT, DBE)

Small Business Administration, 8(A) Program

Other (please specify)

**The City of Arlington encourages minority participation and utilizing MWBE subconsultants where there are opportunities on this project.**

**For City Use Only:**

I have reviewed this Utilization Plan and found that the Ken-Do Contracting **HAS** or **HAS NOT** complied as per the City's M/WBE Special Provisions.

Verified Goal attainment:

Ken-Do Contracting has agreed to meet a 6.72% MWBE goal. Ken-Do has provided GFE as well, meeting the requirements per the MWBE Policy.

MBE 3.58 %

WBE 3.14 %

Reviewer Nohemi Sanchez

Date: 2/28/2022

SECTION 3B

OFFICE OF BUSINESS DIVERSITY  
Letter of Intent

Project Number: P. W 5 M 22 001

Project Title: 2022 CONCRETE PANEL AND SIDEWALK

REPLACEMENT PROGRAM ("Prime Contractor") agrees to enter into a contractual agreement with COWTOWN READY MIX ("Subcontractor/Supplier"), who will provide the following goods/services on the above-referenced contract.

(Use broad categories (ex. "electrical work", "HVAC equipment purchase", etc.) to describe the goods/services to be provided).

CONCRETE SUPPLY AND DELIVERY

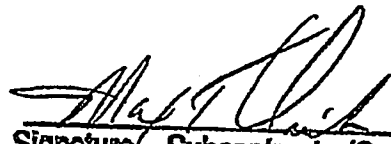
for an estimated amount of \$ 12,000.00 or 1.50 % of the total estimated contract value.

Prime Contractor agrees to utilize said Subcontractor/Supplier in the capacity indicated herein and Subcontractor/Supplier agrees to work on the above-referenced contract in the capacity herein, contingent upon award of the contract to Prime Contractor.

  
Signature - Prime Contractor

KENNETH HALVERSON  
Print Name

PRESIDENT

  
Signature - Subcontractor/Supplier

MAX T. ULLRICH  
Print Name

SALOR MA. ALVAR

Looking for (Companies or Trades):

Servicing (City or Zipcode):

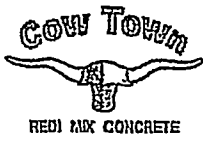
Search by Company Name or Keyword

Fort Worth, TX

SEARCH

/ Dallas, Fort Worth / Ready Mixed Concrete

Menu



### CowTown Redi Mix Concrete

FORT WORTH, TEXAS 76111

PH (817) 759-1010 ALT LOCATIONS WEBSITE

Quote Pre-Qual Brochure Share

*P.O. Box 162337  
Ft. Worth, TX  
76161*

< Back

## OUR CERTIFICATIONS

We have the following certifications.

### Certification

Issuer: DBE (Disadvantaged Business Enterprise)

Qualifier: Not Provided

Expiration: Not Provided

### Certification

Issuer: MBE (Minority Business Enterprise)

Qualifier: Not Provided

Expiration: Not Provided

### Certification

Issuer: TxDOT (Texas Department of Transportation)

Qualifier: Texas, State of, Dept. of Transportation

Expiration: Not Provided

### Certification

Issuer: WBE (Women's Business Enterprise)

Qualifier: Not Provided

Expiration: Not Provided

### Certification

Issuer: TxDOT (Texas Department of Transportation)

Qualifier: Texas, State of

Expiration: Not Provided

Go to next section: Home →

SECTION 3B

OFFICE OF BUSINESS DIVERSITY  
Letter of Intent

Project Number: P. W 5 M 22 001

Project Title: 2022 CONCRETE PANEL AND SIDEWALK

REPLACEMENT PROGRAM ("Prime Contractor") agrees to enter into a contractual agreement with SYB CONSTRUCTION ("Subcontractor/Supplier"), who will provide the following goods/services on the above-referenced contract.

(Use broad categories (ex. "electrical work", "HVAC equipment purchase", etc.) to describe the goods/services to be provided).

GENERAL CONSTRUCTION

for an estimated amount of \$ 16,000.00 or 2.00 % of the total estimated contract value.

Prime Contractor agrees to utilize said Subcontractor/Supplier in the capacity indicated herein and Subcontractor/Supplier agrees to work on the above-referenced contract in the capacity herein, contingent upon award of the contract to Prime Contractor.

  
Signature - Prime Contractor

KENNETH HALVERSON  
Print Name

PRESIDENT 01/13/22  
Title Date

  
Signature - Subcontractor/Supplier

Susan Wood  
Print Name

Treasurer 1-13-22  
Title Date





**GLENN HEGAR TEXAS COMPTROLLER OF PUBLIC ACCOUNTS**

The Texas Comptroller of Public Accounts (CPA) administers the Statewide Historically Underutilized Business (HUB) Program for the State of Texas, which includes certifying minority, woman, and service disabled veteran-owned businesses as HUBs and facilitates the use of HUBs in state procurement and provides them with information on the state's procurement process.

We are pleased to inform you that your application for certification/re-certification as a HUB has been approved. Your company's profile is listed in the State of Texas HUB Directory and may be viewed online at <https://mycpa.cpa.state.tx.us/tpasscmbsearch/index.jsp>. Provided that your company continues to meet HUB eligibility requirements, the attached HUB certificate is valid for the time period specified.

You must notify the HUB Program in writing of any changes affecting your company's compliance with the HUB eligibility requirements, including changes in ownership, day-to-day management, control and/or principal place of business. *Note: Any changes made to your company's information may require the HUB Program to re-evaluate your company's eligibility.*

Please visit our website at <http://comptroller.texas.gov/procurement/prog/hub/> and reference our publications (i.e. Grow Your Business pamphlet, HUB Brochure and Vendor Guide) providing addition information on state procurement resources that can increase your company's chances of doing business with the state.

Thank you for your participation in the HUB Program! If you have any questions, you may contact a HUB Program representative at 512-463-5872 or toll-free in Texas at 1-888-863-5881.

**Texas Historically Underutilized Business (HUB) Certificate**



Certificate/VID Number	1752053952300
File/Vendor Number	006221
Approval Date	12-AUG-2019
Scheduled Expiration Date	12-AUG-2023

The Texas Comptroller of Public Accounts (CPA), hereby certifies that

**S.Y.B. CONSTRUCTION CO., INC.**

has successfully met the established requirements of the State of Texas Historically Underutilized Business (HUB) Program to be recognized as a HUB. This certificate printed 16-AUG-2019, supersedes any registration and certificate previously issued by the HUB Program. If there are any changes regarding the information (i.e., business structure, ownership, day-to-day management, operational control, business location) provided in the submission of the business' application for registration/certification as a HUB, you must immediately (within 30 days of such changes) notify the HUB Program in writing. The CPA reserves the right to conduct a compliance review at any time to confirm HUB eligibility. HUB certification may be suspended or revoked upon findings of ineligibility.

*Statewide HUB Program  
Statewide Procurement Division*

Note: In order for State agencies and institutions of higher education (universities) to be credited for utilizing this business as a HUB, they must award payment under the Certificate/VID Number identified above. Agencies, universities and prime contractors are encouraged to verify the company's HUB certification prior to issuing a notice of award by accessing the Internet (<https://mycpa.cpa.state.tx.us/tpasscmbsearch/index.jsp>) or by contacting the HUB Program at 512-463-5872 or toll-free in Texas at 1-888-863-5881.

**WBENC**  
 WOMEN'S BUSINESS ENTERPRISE  
 NATIONAL COUNCIL

JOIN FORCES, SUCCEED TOGETHER.

hereby grants

**National Women's Business Enterprise Certification**

S.Y.B. Construction Company, Inc

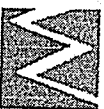
who has successfully met WBENC's standards as a Women's Business Enterprise (WBE).  
 This certification affirms the business is woman-owned, operated and controlled and is valid through the date herein.

Certification Granted: April 3, 2014  
 Expiration Date: April 3, 2022  
 WBENC National Certification Number: 2005124295

WBENC National WBE Certification was processed and validated by Women's  
 Business Council - Southwest, a WBENC Regional Partner Organization.

*Debbie Hurst*

Authorized by Debbie Hurst, President Women's  
 Business Center



WOMEN'S  
 BUSINESS  
 COUNCIL

NAICS: 237110, 237310, 237990, 238110, 238990  
 UNSDSC: 72101513, 72140000, 72141000, 72141001, 72141105, 72141106, 72141108, 72141120, 72141121, 72141123, 72141126, 72141205, 72152704, 72152705, 72152706, 72152707, 72152711



Great Lakes  
 Women's  
 Business  
 Council



WBEFLORIDA

WBEOMETRONY

WBESEATTLE



WBESEAST

WBEORV

WBE PACIFIC



WBE SOUTH

WBEWEST



Disadvantaged Business Enterprise (DBE)  
S.Y.B. Construction Company, Inc

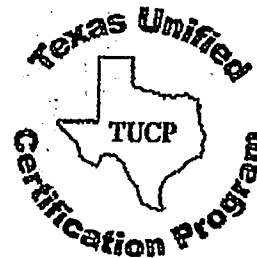
## S.Y.B. Construction Company, Inc

has filed with the Agency an Affidavit as defined by NCTRCA Disadvantaged Business Enterprise (DBE) 49 CFR Part 26 and is hereby certified to provide service(s) in the following areas:

**NAICS 237110: WATER AND SEWER LINE AND RELATED STRUCTURES CONSTRUCTION**  
**NAICS 237310: SIDEWALK, PUBLIC, CONSTRUCTION**

This Certification commences May 14, 2020 and supersedes any registration or listing previously issued. This certification must be updated annually by submission of an Annual Update Affidavit. At any time there is a change in ownership, control of the firm or operation, notification must be made immediately to the North Central Texas Regional Certification Agency for eligibility evaluation.

Certification Expiration: May 31, 2021  
Issued Date: May 14, 2020  
CERTIFICATION NO. WFDB24781N0521



*Ericia Mitchell*

\_\_\_\_\_  
Certification Administrator

SECTION 3B

OFFICE OF BUSINESS DIVERSITY  
Letter of Intent

Project Number: P. W 5 M 22 001

Project Title: 2022 CONCRETE PANEL AND SIDEWALK

REPLACEMENT PROGRAM ("Prime Contractor") agrees to enter into a contractual agreement with STRAIGHT LINE SAWING & SEALING ("Subcontractor/Supplier"), who will provide the following goods/services on the above-referenced contract.

(Use broad categories (ex. "electrical work", "HVAC equipment purchase", etc.) to describe the goods/services to be provided).

SAW CUTTING AND STREET SEALING

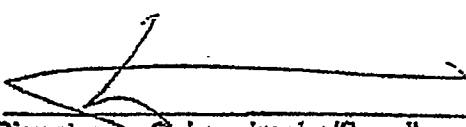
for an estimated amount of \$ 8,000.00 or 1.00 % of the total estimated contract value.

Prime Contractor agrees to utilize said Subcontractor/Supplier in the capacity indicated herein and Subcontractor/Supplier agrees to work on the above-referenced contract in the capacity herein, contingent upon award of the contract to Prime Contractor.

  
Signature - Prime Contractor

KENNETH HALVERSON  
Print Name

PRESIDENT 01/13/22  
Title Date

  
Signature - Subcontractor/Supplier

ERIC JOHNSON  
Print Name

PRESIDENT 1/13/22  
Title Date



Minority Business Enterprise (MBE)  
**STRAIGHT LINE SAWING & SEALING,  
INC.**

## **STRAIGHT LINE SAWING & SEALING, INC.**

has filed with the Agency an Affidavit as defined by NCTRCA Minority Business Enterprise (MBE) Policies & Procedures and is hereby certified to provide service(s) in the following areas:

- NAICS 236220: ADDITION, ALTERATION AND RENOVATION, COMMERCIAL AND INSTITUTIONAL BUILDING**
- NAICS 236220: ADDITION, ALTERATION AND RENOVATION, GENERAL CONTRACTORS, COMMERCIAL AND INSTITUTIONAL BUILDING**
- NAICS 236220: AIRPORT BUILDING CONSTRUCTION**
- NAICS 237110: CONSTRUCTION MANAGEMENT, WATER AND SEWER LINE**
- NAICS 237110: SEWER MAIN, PIPE AND CONNECTION, CONSTRUCTION**
- NAICS 237310: AIRPORT RUNWAY CONSTRUCTION**
- NAICS 237310: CONSTRUCTION MANAGEMENT, HIGHWAY, ROAD, STREET AND BRIDGE**
- NAICS 237310: HIGHWAY, STREET, AND BRIDGE CONSTRUCTION**
- NAICS 238910: CONCRETE BREAKING AND CUTTING FOR DEMOLITION**
- NAICS 238910: DEMOLITION, BUILDING AND STRUCTURE**
- NAICS 238990: CONCRETE SAWING AND DRILLING (EXCEPT DEMOLITION)**

This Certification commences October 19, 2021 and supersedes any registration or listing previously issued. This certification must be updated every two years by submission of an Annual Update Affidavit. At any time there is a change in ownership, control of the firm or operation, notification must be made immediately to the North Central Texas Regional Certification Agency for eligibility evaluation.

Certification Expiration: October 31, 2023  
Issued Date: October 19, 2021  
CERTIFICATION NO. BMMB45674N1023

SECTION 3B

OFFICE OF BUSINESS DIVERSITY

Letter of Intent

Project Number: PNBM 2201

Project Title: 2022 Concrete Panel and Sidewalk

Replacement Program ("Prime Contractor") agrees to enter into a contractual agreement with Jose Solis owner of The J.C.S.G. Transportation ("Subcontractor/Supplier"), who will provide the following goods/services on the above-referenced contract:

(Use broad categories (ex. "electrical work", "HVAC equipment purchase", etc.) to describe the goods/services to be provided).

Haul Material

for an estimated amount of \$ 24,000.00 or 3.00 % of the total estimated contract value.

Prime Contractor agrees to utilize said Subcontractor/Supplier in the capacity indicated herein and Subcontractor/Supplier agrees to work on the above-referenced contract in the capacity herein, contingent upon award of the contract to Prime Contractor.

[Signature]  
Signature - Prime Contractor

Kenneth Halverson  
Print Name

President 01/20/2022  
Title Date

[Signature]  
Signature - Subcontractor/Supplier

JOSE SOLIS  
Print Name

owner 01/20/2022  
Title Date



Minority Business Enterprise (MBE)  
J C & G transportation DBA J C & G  
transportation

J C & G transportation DBA J C & G  
transportation

has filed with the Agency an Affidavit as defined by NCTRCA Minority Business Enterprise (MBE) Policies & Procedures and is hereby certified to provide service(s) in the following areas:

NAICS 484220: ASH, GARBAGE, RECYCLABLE MATERIAL, REFUSE, RUBBISH, TRASH, OR  
WASTE HAULING (EXCEPT COLLECTION OR DISPOSAL)  
NAICS 484220: DUMP TRUCKING (E.G., GRAVEL, SAND, TOP-SOIL)  
NAICS 484220: SAND HAULING, LOCAL

This Certification commences January 29, 2021 and supersedes any registration or listing previously issued. This certification must be updated every two years by submission of an Annual Update Affidavit. At any time there is a change in ownership, control of the firm or operation, notification must be made immediately to the North Central Texas Regional Certification Agency for eligibility evaluation.

Certification Expiration: January 31, 2023  
Issued Date: January 29, 2021  
CERTIFICATION NO. HMMB10308N0123

*Erica Mitchell*

Certification Administrator

1047



Small Business Enterprise (SBE)  
J C & G transportation DBA J C & G  
transportation

### J C & G transportation DBA J C & G transportation

has filed with the Agency an Affidavit as defined by NCTRCA Small Business Enterprise (SBE) Policies & Procedures and is hereby certified to provide service(s) in the following areas:

- NAICS 484220: ASH, GARBAGE, RECYCLABLE MATERIAL, REFUSE, RUBBISH, TRASH, OR WASTE HAULING (EXCEPT COLLECTION OR DISPOSAL)
- NAICS 484220: DUMP TRUCKING (E.G., GRAVEL, SAND, TOP-SOIL)
- NAICS 484220: SAND HAULING, LOCAL

This Certification commences January 29, 2021 and supersedes any registration or listing previously issued. This certification must be updated every two years by submission of an Annual Update Affidavit. At any time there is a change in ownership, control of the firm or operation, notification must be made immediately to the North Central Texas Regional Certification Agency for eligibility evaluation.

Certification Expiration: January 31, 2023  
Issued Date: January 29, 2021  
CERTIFICATION NO. HMSB63011N0128

Certification Administrator



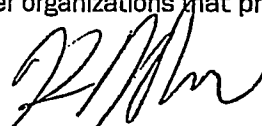
OFFICE OF BUSINESS DIVERSITY  
Good Faith Effort Checklist

In making a determination that the contractor has made a good-faith effort to meet the City's MWBE goals, the Office of Business Diversity shall consider specific documentation concerning the steps taken to obtain MWBE participation, with a consideration of the following factors:

If a contractor fails to submit the Good Faith Efforts checklist, with document, by the deadline for submission will be considered non-responsive.

- Contractor attended the City's pre-bid or pre-proposal meeting.
- Contractor advertised in general circulation, trade association, and/or MWBE-focused media regarding subcontracting and/or supplier opportunities.
- Contractor solicited through reasonable and available means (e.g., written notices, advertisements) M/WBES certified in the anticipated scopes of subcontracting of the contract, within sufficient time to allow them to respond. Attach detailed Contacts Log, including date, method of contact, person contacted and contact information, and the result of the contact.
- Contractor selected those portions of the contract consistent with the available M/WBES, including breaking down the work into economically feasible units to facilitate M/WBE participation even when the proposer would prefer to perform those scopes with its own forces. Provide description of work selected.
- Contractor provided timely and adequate information about plans, specifications, scope of work and contract requirements to interested MWBES. Followed up initial solicitations to answer questions and encourage M/WBES to submit proposals or bids. Attach evidence of information provided, including the date, e.g., letters, emails, telephone logs, etc.
- Contractor negotiated in good-faith with interested MWBES that have submitted proposals or bids and thoroughly investigated their capabilities, using good business judgement, and taking into consideration the MWBE subcontractor's price quote and not rejecting reasonable quotes from interested MWBE. Evidence of such negotiations includes the names, addresses, email addresses and telephone numbers of M/WBES with whom the vendor negotiated; a description of the information provided to M/WBES regarding the work selected for subcontracting; and explanations as to why agreements could not be reached with M/WBES to perform the work.
- Contractor made effort to assist interested MWBES to obtain bonding, lines of credit, or insurance as required by the City or the vendor for performance of the contract (if applicable).
- Contractor effectively utilized the services of M/WBE assistance groups; local, state, and federal M/WBE business assistance offices and other organizations that provide assistance in the recruitment and placement of MWBES.

Signature Prime Contractor:



Print Name:

KENNETH HALVERSON

Title

PRESIDENT

Date:

02/18/2022

Ken-Do Contracting  
P.O. Box 2001  
Desoto, TX 75115  
972-230-7038

## MWBE CONTACT INFORMATION

- Called Trumex Trucking Arlington 817-456-5467 Spoke w/Flavio Alvarez- Certification expired, but willing to work with us and will apply for recert. He is on active COA MWBE list.
- Called All Steel Fabrication (WBE) 817-877-0082 Orders pushed out next 3 months.
- Called Capa Concrete (MWBE) 469-802-6259. Arlington too far from their base in Dallas.
- Called Little JJ Trucking Co. 817-996-1414. Works only in Ft. Worth.

-Contacted Women's Business Council ([www.wbcsouthwest.org](http://www.wbcsouthwest.org)) requested list of WBE in area. Awaiting response.

- Reginald Cleveland (MWBE Manager COA) 817-459-6263 requesting MWBE list.

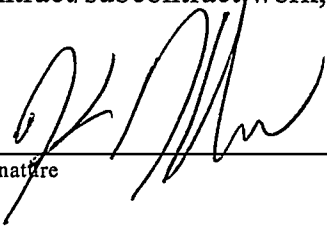
-Sent request to participate in COA B2Gnow program to interface with list of MWBEs...awaiting response.

- Letter of Intent signed by Cowtown Redi Mix (concrete supplier and delivery) WO MWBE
- Letter of Intent signed by SYB Construction (General construction) WO MWBE
- Letter of Intent signed by Straight Line Saw and Sealing (Street sealing) BL MWBE
- Letter of intent signed by J&G Transportation (Materials delivery & Haul off) HI MWBE

SECTION NO. 4

AFFIDAVIT AGAINST PROHIBITED ACTS

I hereby affirm that I am aware of the provisions of the Texas Penal Code Sec. 36.02, 36.08, 36.09, and 36.10 (a copy of which follows), dealing with Bribery and Gifts to Public Servants. I further affirm that I will adhere to such rules and instruct and require all agents, employees, and sub-contractors to do the same. I am further aware that any violation of these rules subjects this agreement to revocation, my removal from bid lists, prohibiting future contract/subcontract work, revocation of permits, and prosecution.

  
\_\_\_\_\_  
Signature

4-7-22  
\_\_\_\_\_  
Date

\_\_\_\_\_  
ATTEST (if corporation)

\_\_\_\_\_  
Date

# TEXAS PENAL CODE

## TITLE 8: OFFENSES AGAINST PUBLIC ADMINISTRATION

### CHAPTER 36. Bribery and Corrupt Influence

#### 36.02 Bribery

- (a) A person commits an offense if he intentionally or knowingly offers, confers, or agrees to confer on another, or solicits, accepts, or agrees to accept from another:
  - (1) any benefit as consideration for the recipient's decision, opinion, recommendation, vote, or other exercise of discretion as a public servant, party official, or voter;
  - (2) any benefit as consideration for the recipient's decision, vote, recommendation, or other exercise of official discretion in a judicial or administrative proceeding;
  - (3) any benefit as consideration for a violation of a duty imposed by law on a public servant or party official; or
  - (4) any benefit that is a political contribution as defined by Title 15, Election Code, or that is an expenditure made and reported in accordance with Chapter 305, Government Code, if the benefit was offered, conferred, solicited, accepted, or agreed to pursuant to an express agreement to take or withhold a specific exercise of official discretion if such exercise of official discretion would not have been taken or withheld but for the benefit; notwithstanding any rule of evidence or jury instruction allowing factual inferences in the absence of certain evidence, direct evidence of the express agreement shall be required in any prosecution under this subdivision.
- (b) It is no defense to prosecution under this section that a person whom the actor sought to influence was not qualified to act in the desired way whether because he had not yet assumed office or he lacked jurisdiction or for any other reason.
- (c) It is no defense to prosecution under this section that the benefit is not offered or conferred or that the benefit is not solicited or accepted until after:
  - (1) the decision, opinion, recommendation, vote, or other exercise of discretion has occurred; or
  - (2) the public servant ceases to be a public servant.
- (d) It is an exception to the application of Subdivisions (1), (2), and (3) of Subsection (a) that the benefit is a political contribution as defined by Title 15, Election Code, or an expenditure made and reported in accordance with Chapter 305, Government Code.
- (e) An offense under this section is a felony of the second degree.

#### 36.08 Gift to Public Servant by Person Subject to His Jurisdiction

- (a) A public servant in an agency performing regulatory functions or conducting inspections or investigations commits an offense if he solicits, accepts, or agrees to accept any benefit

from a person the public servant knows to be subject to regulation, inspection, or investigation by the public servant or his agency.

- (b) A public servant in an agency having custody of prisoners commits an offense if he solicits, accepts, or agrees to accept any benefit from a person the public servant knows to be in his custody or the custody of his agency.
- (c) A public servant in an agency carrying on civil or criminal litigation on behalf of government commits an offense if he solicits, accepts, or agrees to accept any benefit from a person against whom the public servant knows litigation is pending or contemplated by the public servant or his agency.
- (d) A public servant who exercises discretion in connection with contracts, purchases, payments, claims, or other pecuniary transactions of government commits an offense if he solicits, accepts, or agrees to accept any benefit from a person the public servant knows is interested in or likely to become interested in any contract, purchase, payment, claim, or transaction involving the exercise of his discretion.
- (e) A public servant who has judicial or administrative authority, who is employed by or in a tribunal having judicial or administrative authority, or who participates in the enforcement of the tribunal's decision, commits an offense if he solicits, accepts, or agrees to accept any benefit from a person the public servant knows is interested in or likely to become interested in any matter before the public servant or tribunal.
- (f) A member of the legislature, the governor, the lieutenant governor, or a person employed by a member of the legislature, the governor, the lieutenant governor, or an agency of the legislature commits an offense if he solicits, accepts, or agrees to accept any benefit from any person.
- (g) A public servant who is a hearing examiner employed by an agency performing regulatory functions and who conducts hearings in contested cases commits an offense if the public servant solicits, accepts, or agrees to accept any benefit from any person who is appearing before the agency in a contested case, who is doing business with the agency, or who the public servant knows is interested in any matter before the public servant. The exception provided by Sec. 36.10(b) does not apply to a benefit under this subsection.
- (h) An offense under this section is a Class A misdemeanor.
- (i) A public servant who receives an unsolicited benefit that the public servant is prohibited from accepting under this section may donate the benefit to a governmental entity that has the authority to accept the gift or may donate the benefit to a recognized tax-exempt charitable organization formed for educational, religious, or scientific purposes.

### **36.09 Offering Gift to Public Servant**

- (a) A person commits an offense if he offers, confers or agrees to confer any benefit on a public servant that he knows the public servant is prohibited by law from accepting.
- (b) An offense under this section is a Class A misdemeanor.

**36.10 Non-Applicable**


- (a) Sections 36.08 (Gift to Public Servant) and 36.09 (Offering Gift to Public Servant) do not apply to:
  - (1) a fee prescribed by law to be received by a public servant or any other benefit to which the public servant is lawfully entitled or for which he gives legitimate consideration in a capacity other than as a public servant;
  - (2) a gift or other benefit conferred on account of kinship or a personal, professional, or business relationship independent of the official status of the recipient; or
  - (3) a benefit to a public servant required to file a statement under Chapter 572, Government Code, or a report under Title 15, Election Code, that is derived from a function in honor or appreciation of the recipient if:
    - (A) the benefit and the source of any benefit in excess of \$50 is reported in the statement; and
    - (B) the benefit is used solely to defray the expenses that accrue in the performance of duties or activities in connection with the office which are nonreimbursable by the state or political subdivision;
  - (4) a political contribution as defined by Title 15, Election Code;
  - (5) a gift, award, or memento to a member of the legislative or executive branch that is required to be reported under Chapter 305, Government Code;
  - (6) an item with a value of less than \$50, excluding cash or a negotiable instrument as described by Section 3.104, Business & Commerce Code; or
  - (7) an item issued by a governmental entity that allows the use of property or facilities owned, leased, or operated by the governmental entity.
- (b) Section 36.08 (Gift to Public Servant) does not apply to food, lodging, transportation, or entertainment accepted as a guest and, if the donee is required by law to report those items, reported by the donee in accordance with that law.
- (c) Section 36.09 (Offering Gift to Public Servant) does not apply to food, lodging, transportation, or entertainment accepted as a guest and, if the donor is required by law to report those items, reported by the donor in accordance with that law.
- (d) Section 36.08 (Gift to Public Servant) does not apply to a gratuity accepted and reported in accordance with Section 11.0262, Parks and Wildlife Code. Section 36.09 (Offering Gift to Public Servant) does not apply to a gratuity that is offered in accordance with Section 11.0262, Parks and Wildlife Code.

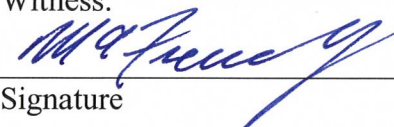
END OF SECTION

**SECTION NO. 4A**

**VERIFICATION RELATING TO DISCRIMINATING AGAINST FIREARM OR  
AMMUNITION INDUSTRIES**

The State of Texas has passed legislation, which is codified in Chapter 2274 of the Texas Government Code, that prevents any municipal government from entering into a contract for goods and services unless the contractor makes certain verifications. The Contractor, by signing below, verifies that Contractor does not have a practice, policy, guidance, or directive that discriminates against a firearm entity or firearm trade association, and that it will not discriminate against a firearm entity or firearm trade association during the term of this Contract. This verification, when executed, will be attached to the contract and become a part of the contract for all purposes. This verification relates to the contract for **2022 NATHAN LOWE AND DOWNTOWN SIDEWALK IMPROVEMENTS**, City of Arlington project No. **PWSW22001**.

BY:   
Name: Kenneth Halverson  
Title: President

Witness:  
  
Signature  
MARNIX FREUDENBERG  
Name  
FIELD SUPERVISOR  
Title

END OF SECTION

**SECTION NO. 4B**

**VERIFICATION RELATING TO BOYCOTTING ENERGY COMPANIES**

The State of Texas has passed legislation, which is codified in Chapter 2274 of the Texas Government Code, that prevents any municipal government from entering into a contract for goods and services unless the contractor makes certain verifications. The Contractor, by signing below, verifies that Contractor does not boycott energy companies and will not boycott energy companies during the term of the Contract. This verification, when executed, will be attached to the contract and become a part of the contract for all purposes. This verification relates to the contract for **2022 NATHAN LOWE AND DOWNTOWN SIDEWALK IMPROVEMENTS**, City of Arlington project No. **PWSW22001**.

BY:   
Name: Kenneth Halverson  
Title: President

Witness:

  
Signature

MALNIX FREUDENBERG  
Name

FIELD SUPERVISOR  
Title


END OF SECTION




**SECTION NO. 5**

**VERIFICATION RELATING TO BOYCOTTING ISRAEL**

The State of Texas has passed legislation which is codified in Chapter 2270 of the Texas Government Code that prevents any municipal government from entering into a contract for goods and services unless the contractor makes certain verifications. The Contractor by signing below verifies that Contractor does not boycott Israel and will not boycott Israel during the term of the Contract. This verification when executed will be attached to the contract and become a part of the contract for all purposes. This verification relates to the contract for **2022 NATHAN LOWE AND DOWNTOWN SIDEWALK IMPROVEMENTS**, City of Arlington project No. **PWSW22001**.

BY:   
Name: Kenneth Halverson  
Title: President

Witness:  
  
Signature  
MARNIX FREUDENBERG  
Name  
FIELD SUPERVISOR  
Title

END OF SECTION

**SECTION NO. 6**

**PROPOSAL**

Proposal of: Ken-Do Contracting, LP  
Address: P.O. Box 2001  
City/State/ZIP: Desoto, Texas 75115  
Federal ID# 20-2081471  
Bid Opening Date: February 22, 2022

TO THE CITY OF ARLINGTON, TEXAS:

The undersigned hereby proposes to furnish the equipment, fuel, labor, materials, power, tools, superintendence, transportation, and to perform the work required for the construction of **2022 NATHAN LOWE AND DOWNTOWN SIDEWALK IMPROVEMENTS**, City of Arlington Project No. **PWSW22001**, in the City of Arlington, Texas, for the following prices, which prices it is clearly and definitely understood shall include all construction materials and equipment as set out in the basis of payment in the contractual documents and maintaining same as required by the detailed specifications.

**PROPOSAL SCHEDULE**

**MOBILIZATION & SWPPP (101-102)**

ITEM NO.	DESCRIPTION	UNIT PRICE IN WORDS	QTY	UNIT	PRICE IN FIGURES	
					UNIT PRICE	TOTAL
101	Mobilization & Bonds in accordance with Section 11-10, for the unit price of	Seventy Five Thousand Dollars and Zero Cents	1	Lump Sum	\$ 75,000.00	\$ 75,000.00
102	Design, Implement, & Maintain Storm Water Pollution Prevention Plan , complete and in place for the unit price of	Twenty Thousand Dollars and Zero Cents	1	Lump Sum	\$ 20,000.00	\$ 20,000.00

**SUBTOTAL MOBILIZATION & SWPPP (101-102) \$ 95,000.00**

**PAVING IMPROVEMENTS (ITEMS 201 - 222)**

ITEM NO.	DESCRIPTION	UNIT PRICE IN WORDS	QTY	UNIT	PRICES IN FIGURES	
					UNIT PRICE	TOTAL
201	Right-of-way/Easement Preparation, work fully performed for the unit price of	Ten Thousand Dollars and Zero Cents	1	Lump Sum	\$ 10,000.00	\$ 10,000.00
202	Additional Cost (above the cost of concrete bid item) for 4-inch High Early Strength Reinforced Concrete Paving (3600 psi/24 hours) as directed by City, for the unit price of	Thirty Dollars and Zero Cents	100	Square Yard	\$ 30.00	\$ 3,000.00
203	Furnish & Install 4-inch Type "B" & 2-inch Type "D" HMAC Permanent Asphalt Steet Transition, including 8-inch CTB, complete and in place for the unit price of	One Hundred Twenty Five Dollars and Zero Cents	500	Square Yard	\$ 125.00	\$ 62,500.00
204	Furnish & Install Cement Treated Base (CTB) as directed by City , complete and in for the unit price of	Forty Dollars and Zero Cents	100	Ton	\$ 40.00	\$ 4,000.00
205	Furnish & Install Crushed Stone for bad weather access, complete and in place for the unit price of	Twenty Five Dollars and Zero Cents	100	Ton	\$ 25.00	\$ 2,500.00
206	Furnish & Install Reinforced Concrete Curb & Gutter, including 8-inch CTB, complete and in place for the unit price of	Forty Five Dollars and Zero Cents	500	Linear Foot	\$ 45.00	\$ 22,500.00
207	Furnish & Install 4-inch thick Reinforced Concrete Sidewalks over compacted native soil per City of Arlington detail, complete and in place for the unit price of	Fifty Five Dollars and Zero Cents	3,800	Square Yard	\$ 55.00	\$ 209,000.00
208	Furnish & Install Retaining Wall (up to 48-inch measured from top of sidewalk) adjacent to Sidewalk, including joints, form liner & reinforced steel, complete and in place for the unit price of	One Hundred Sixty Dollars and Zero Cents	60	Cubic Yard	\$ 160.00	\$ 9,600.00
209	Furnish & Install ADA Compliant Barrier Free Ramp (TxDOT PED-18), complete and in place for the unit price of	Two Thousand Dollars and Zero Cents	70	Each	\$ 2,000.00	\$ 140,000.00
210	Adjust Existing Valve Box to Final Grade, including installing new reinforced concrete pad, work fully performed for the unit price of	One Hundred Dollars and Zero Cents	10	Each	\$ 100.00	\$ 1,000.00
211	Furnish & Install Grass Sodding to match existng yard , complete and in place for the unit price of	Seven Dollars and Zero Cents	6,000	Square Yard	\$ 7.00	\$ 42,000.00
212	Tree Removal greater than 6-inch to 12-inch diameter as measured at 4-feet above ground level, including grinding stump to below ground level, work fully performed for the unit price of	One Thousand Five Hundred Dollars and Zero Cents	1	Each	\$ 1,500.00	\$ 1,500.00
213	Tree Removal greater than 12-inch to 24-inch diameter as measured at 4-feet above ground level, including grinding stump to below ground level, work fully performed for the unit price of	Three Thousand Dollars and Zero Cents	1	Each	\$ 3,000.00	\$ 3,000.00

ITEM NO.	DESCRIPTION	UNIT PRICE IN WORDS	QTY	UNIT	PRICES IN FIGURES	
					UNIT PRICE	TOTAL
214	Tree Removal greater than 24-inch to 36-inch diameter as measured at 4-feet above ground level, including grinding stump to below ground level, work fully performed for the unit price of	Four Thousand Five Hundred Dollars and Zero Cents	1	Each	\$ 4,500.00	\$ 4,500.00
215	Tree Removal greater than 36-inch diameter as measured at 4-feet above ground level, including grinding stump to below ground level, work fully performed for the unit price of	Five Thousand Dollars and Zero Cents	1	Each	\$ 5,000.00	\$ 5,000.00
216	Crape Myrtle Removal 6-feet or taller as measured vertically, work fully performed for the unit price of	Five Hundred Dollars and Zero Cents	1	Each	\$ 500.00	\$ 500.00
217	Remove & Replace 4-inch Reinforced Concrete Sidewalks over compacted native soil, work fully performed for the unit price of	Sixty Five Dollars and Zero Cents	1,000	Square Yard	\$ 65.00	\$ 65,000.00
218	Remove & Replace Reinforced Concrete Curb & Gutter, including 8-inch CTB, work fully performed for the unit price of	Fifty Two Dollars and Zero Cents	500	Linear Foot	\$ 52.00	\$ 26,000.00
219	Remove & Replace Reinforced Concrete Valley Gutter, including 8-inch CTB, work fully performed for the unit price of	One Hundred Thirty Dollars and Zero Cents	200	Square Yard	\$ 130.00	\$ 26,000.00
220	Remove & Replace 6-inch Reinforced Concrete Commercial Drive Approach on compacted native soil, complete and in place for the unit price of	Seventy Dollars and Zero Cents	700	Square Yard	\$ 70.00	\$ 49,000.00
221	Relocate and Adjust Existing AMI Water Meter to Final Grade & Location, including all fittings & piping for connection before & after Meter, detaching & reattaching AMI antenna to meter box (coordinate with Water Meter Services representative), work fully performed for the unit price of	Five Hundred Dollars and Zero Cents	20	Each	\$ 500.00	\$ 10,000.00
222	Construction Contingency for Public Works' Items, work fully performed for the unit price of	One Hundred Thousand Dollars and Zero Cents	1	Lump Sum	\$ 100,000.00	\$ 100,000.00

**SUBTOTAL PAVING IMPROVEMENTS (ITEMS 201 - 222) \$ 796,600.00**

**ALTERNATE A (Item 199A)**

ITEM NO.	DESCRIPTION	UNIT PRICE IN WORDS	QTY	UNIT	PRICES IN FIGURES	
					UNIT PRICE	TOTAL
199A	The additional cost for using Green Cement above the cost of cement in accordance with Section 12-38 for raw cement and for items where concrete is placed or cast-in-place, for the unit price of	One Dollar and Zero Cents	1	Lump Sum	\$ 1.00	\$ 1.00

**SUBTOTAL ALTERNATE A (Item 199A) \$ 1.00**

**TOTAL SUMMARY**

MOBILIZATION & SWPPP (101-102) \$ 95,000.00

PAVING IMPROVEMENTS (ITEMS 201 - 222) \$ 796,600.00

TOTAL BASE BID \$ 891,600.00

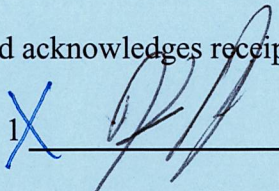
TOTAL BASE BID + ALTERNATE A \$ 891,601.00

In case of ambiguity or lack of clearness in stating prices in the Proposal, the City reserves the right to accept the most advantageous construction thereof to the City or to reject the Proposal.

The undersigned bidder agrees to begin work within ten (10) days from the beginning date of the project as provided in the written Notice to Proceed and to complete the work within 300 calendar days; provided, that the City's construction funds are available.

Enclosed with this Proposal is a Bidder's Bond or Cashier's Check for five percent bidders bond (\$ 5% ) dollars, which it is agreed shall be collected and retained by the City as liquidated damages if the City accepts this bid within ninety (90) days after the opening of bids, and the undersigned bidder then fails to execute the contract and bonds with the City within ten (10) days after official notice of such acceptance; otherwise, said Bidder's Bond or Check shall be returned to the undersigned on demand. This sum of money is not to be considered as a penalty, but shall be deemed, taken and treated as reasonable liquidated damages. The sum of money is fixed and agreed on between the bidder and City because of the impracticability and extreme difficulty of fixing and ascertaining the actual damage to the owner.

The undersigned acknowledges receipt of the following addendum

Addendum No. 1 X 

Addendum No. 2 \_\_\_\_\_

Addendum No. 3 \_\_\_\_\_

BIDDER

Ken-Do Contracting, LP

Company

By 

Kenneth Halverson

(Please Print)

President

Title

P.O. Box 2001

Address

(Seal if corporation)

Desoto

City

Texas

State

75115

Zip

**ADDENDUM NO. 1  
to the Plans and Specifications for**

**2022 Nathan Lowe & Downtown Sidewalk Improvements**

**City of Arlington Project No. PWSW22001**

**February 16, 2022**

The following instructions shall constitute **Addendum No. 1** to the Plans and Specifications for the above titled project. **The Bidder shall acknowledge receipt of the addendum in the appropriate spaces provided on the last page of this addendum and include the acknowledgement/acceptance with the sealed bid. Addendum not acknowledged will be considered non-responsive and the bid will not be considered for award.** They shall supersede any and all instructions and shall become as much a part of the Plans and Specifications as though written therein. The successful bidder shall also acknowledge acceptance of the addendum on the final contract:

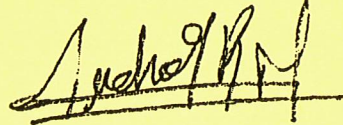
**I. CLARIFICATION & ADDITIONAL INFORMATION:**

1. The plans provided for bid should be used as a guide. Sidewalk layouts will be verified with inspector and engineer before construction. There will not be any additional compensation for field adjustments.
2. Nathan Lowe Road sidewalk is a priority and must be completed in entirety once started before moving to additional locations.
3. Additional locations will be added throughout the downtown district.
4. Fly ash can be used in accordance to City of Arlington specifications and references.
5. Flexbase will not be allowed in lieu of CTB.
6. Pre-Bid Meeting Agenda attached.



ACKNOWLEDGEMENT/ACCEPTANCE:

The undersigned does hereby agree to the additions, stipulations, and terms outlined in **ADDENDUM No. 1** to the Plans and Specifications for the **2022 Nathan Lowe & Downtown SidEwalk Improvements, City of Arlington Project No. PWSW22001**.



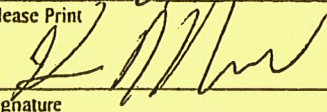
Andrea Ruales, P.E.  
Senior Engineer/Engineering Operations  
Public Works and Transportation

The bidder shall acknowledge his/her Addendum in the appropriate space below and **include it in the bid proposal otherwise the bid will be considered as non-responsive.**

Contractor:

KEN-DO CONTRACTING  
Company

By KENNETH MACVEGSON  
Please Print

  
Signature

PRESIDENT  
Title - Please Print

**SECTION NO. 7**

STATE OF TEXAS §

**Contract**

COUNTY OF TARRANT §

PROJECT NO. PWSW22001

This Contract, made and entered into this 29<sup>th</sup> day of March, 2022, by and between the City of Arlington of Tarrant County, Texas, a municipal corporation, hereinafter called "Owner," and Ken-Do Contracting, LP, hereinafter called "Contractor."

W I T N E S S E T H:

For and in consideration of the payment, agreements and conditions hereinafter mentioned, and under the conditions expressed in the bonds herein, Contractor hereby agrees to complete the construction of improvements described as follows:

**2022 NATHAN LOWE AND DOWNTOWN SIDEWALK IMPROVEMENTS**

**City of Arlington Project No. PWSW22001**

in the City of Arlington, Texas, and all extra work in connection therewith, under the terms as stated in the latest versions of the:

Standard Specifications for Public Works Construction Standards, as issued by the North Central Texas Council of Governments, and;

City of Arlington Standard Specifications For Water & Sanitary Sewer Construction,

as they may be amended from time to time (hereinafter collectively called "Standard Specifications"), and under the terms of all Special Provisions and Special Specifications of this Contract; and at his, her or their own proper cost and expense to furnish all superintendence, labor, insurance, equipment, tools and other accessories and services necessary to complete the said construction in accordance with all the Contract documents, incorporated herein as if written word for word, and in accordance with the plans, which include all maps, plats, blueprints, and other drawings and printed or written explanatory manner therefore, and the specifications as prepared by **City of Arlington** hereinafter called Engineer, who has been identified by the endorsement of the Contractor's written proposal, these General Provisions of the Standard Specifications, the Special Provisions, and the Special Specifications of this Contract, the payment, performance, and maintenance bonds hereto attached; all of which are made a part hereof and collectively evidence and constitute the entire Contract.

The Contractor hereby agrees to commence work within ten (10) days from the beginning date of the project as provided in the written Notice to Proceed and to complete the work within 300 calendar days from the beginning date of the project.

The Owner agrees to pay the Contractor in current funds for the performance of the Contract in accordance with the proposal submitted therefore, subject to additions and deductions, as provided therein.

This Contract is entered into subject to the Charter and ordinances of Owner, as they may be amended from time to time, and is subject to and is to be construed, governed, and enforced under all applicable State of Texas and federal laws. Situs of this Contract is agreed to be Tarrant County, Texas, for all purposes including performance and execution.

If any of the terms, sections, subsections, sentences, clauses, phrases, provisions, covenants, or conditions of this Contract is held for any reason to be invalid, void or unenforceable, the remainder of the terms, sections, subsections, sentences, clauses, phrases, provisions, covenants, or conditions of this Contract shall remain in full force and effect and shall in no way be affected, impaired, or invalidated.

Owner reserves the right to terminate this agreement immediately upon breach of any term or provision of this Contract by Contractor; or, if any time during the term of this Contract, Contractor shall fail to commence the work in accordance with the provisions of this Contract or fail to diligently provide Services in an efficient, timely, and careful manner and in strict accordance with the provisions of this Contract or fail to use an adequate number or quality of personnel and equipment to complete the work or fail to perform any of its obligations under this Contract, then Owner shall have the right, if Contractor shall not cure any such default after thirty (30) days written notice thereof, to terminate this Contract and complete the work in any manner it deems desirable, including engaging the Services of other parties therefore. Any such act by Owner shall not be deemed a waiver of any other right or remedy of Owner. If after exercising any such remedy the cost to Owner of the performance of the balance of the work is in excess of that part of the Contract sum which has not theretofore been paid to Contractor hereunder, Contractor shall be liable for and shall reimburse Owner for such excess.

No right or remedy granted herein or reserved to the parties is exclusive of any other right or remedy herein by law or equity provided or permitted; but, each shall be cumulative of every other right or remedy given hereunder. No covenant or condition of this Contract may be waived without consent of the parties. Forbearance or indulgence by either party shall not constitute a waiver of any covenant or condition to be performed pursuant to this Contract.

Contractor's status shall be that of an independent Contractor and not an agent, servant, employee or representative of Owner in the performance of this Contract. No term or provision of, or act of Contractor or Owner under this Contract shall be construed as changing that status.

This Contract embodies the complete agreement of the parties hereto, superseding all oral or written previous and contemporary agreements between the parties relating to matters herein; and except as otherwise provided herein, cannot be modified without the written agreement of the parties.

Owner and Contractor each bind themselves, their successors, executors, administrators and assigns to the other party to this Contract. Neither Owner nor Contractor will assign, sublet, subcontract or transfer any interest in this Contract without the written consent of the other party. No assignment, delegation of duties or subcontract under this Contract will be effective without the written consent of Owner.

It is further agreed that one or more instances of forbearance by the City in the exercise of its rights herein shall in no way constitute a waiver thereof.

In performing this Contract, Contractor agrees to use diligent efforts to purchase all goods and services from Arlington Businesses whenever such goods and services are comparable in availability, quality and price.

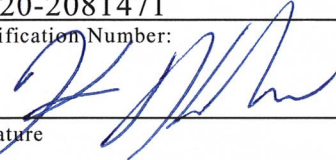
*{Signature Pages Follows}*

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the parties of these presents have executed this agreement in the year and date first written above.

CONTRACTOR

Ken-Do Contracting, LP  
Company Name

20-2081471  
Tax Identification Number:

By   
Signature

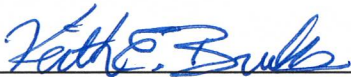
Kenneth Halverson  
Printed or Typed Name


President  
Printed or Typed Title



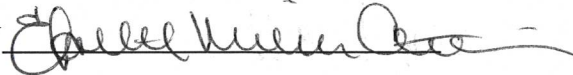
CITY OF ARLINGTON, TEXAS

ATTEST:

  
Keith E. Brooks, P.E., CFM  
Director of Public Works  
and Transportation

  
Alex Busken  
City Secretary

APPROVED AS TO FORM:  
TERIS SOLIS, City Attorney

BY 

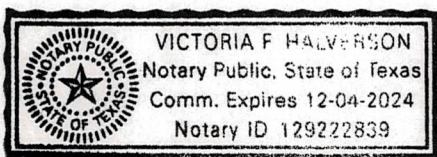


THE STATE OF TEXAS §  
COUNTY OF ELLIS §

**Contractor Acknowledgment**

BEFORE ME, the undersigned authority, a Notary Public in and for the State of Texas, on this day personally appeared Kenneth Halverson  who is known to me or  who was proved to me on the oath of \_\_\_\_\_ (name of person identifying the acknowledging person) or  who was proved to me through \_\_\_\_\_ (description of identity card or other document issued by the federal or state government containing the picture and signature of the acknowledging person) to be the person whose name is subscribed to the foregoing instrument, and acknowledged to me that he/she executed same for and as the act and deed of \_\_\_\_\_, a corporation of \_\_\_\_\_ County, Texas, and as \_\_\_\_\_ thereof, and for the purposes and consideration therein expressed and in the capacity therein stated.

GIVEN UNDER MY HAND AND SEAL OF OFFICE this the 6<sup>th</sup> day of April, 2022.



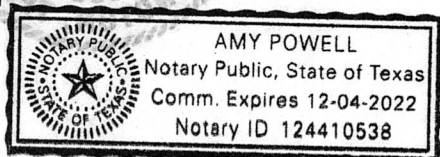
Victoria F. Halverson  
Notary Public In and For The State of Texas  
Victoria F. Halverson  
Notary's Printed Name

THE STATE OF TEXAS §  
COUNTY OF TARRANT §

**City Acknowledgement**

BEFORE ME, the undersigned authority, a Notary Public in and for the State of Texas, on this day personally appeared Keith E. Brooks, P.E., CFM, known to me to be a person and officer whose name is subscribed to the foregoing instrument, and acknowledged to me that he/she executed same for and as the act of the City of Arlington, Texas, a Texas municipal corporation, and as Director of Public Works and Transportation thereof, and for the purposes and consideration therein expressed.

GIVEN UNDER MY HAND AND SEAL OF OFFICE this the 27<sup>th</sup> day of April, 2022.



Amy Powell  
Notary Public In and For The State of Texas  
Amy Powell  
Notary's Printed Name

END OF SECTION

SECTION NO. 8

THE STATE OF TEXAS §

Performance Bond

COUNTY OF TARRANT §

KNOW ALL BY THESE PRESENTS:

THAT Ken-Do Contracting, LP

of the City of Desoto, County of Dallas

State of Texas hereinafter referred to as "PRINCIPAL," and

Endurance Assurance Corporation, a corporate surety/sureties organized under the laws of the State of New York and authorized to do business in the State of Texas, hereinafter referred to as "SURETY," (whether one or more), are held and firmly bound unto the **CITY OF ARLINGTON, TEXAS**, a municipal corporation located in Tarrant County, Texas, hereinafter referred to as "CITY," in the amount of **EIGHT HUNDRED NINETY ONE THOUSAND SIX HUNDRED ONE DOLLARS and ZERO CENTS (\$891,601.00)**, lawful money of the United States, to be paid in Arlington, Tarrant County, Texas, for the payment of which sum well and truly to be made, we bind ourselves, our heirs, executors, assigns, administrators and successors, jointly and severally; and firmly by these presents, the condition of this obligation is such that,

WHEREAS, PRINCIPAL entered into a certain written Contract with the City of Arlington dated the 29<sup>th</sup> day of March, 2022, a copy of which is attached hereto and made a part hereof, to furnish all materials, equipment, labor, supervision, and other accessories necessary for the construction of:

**2022 NATHAN LOWE AND DOWNTOWN SIDEWALK IMPROVEMENTS**

**City of Arlington Project No. PWSW22001**

in the City of Arlington, Texas, as more particularly described and designated in the above referenced contract such contract being incorporated herein and made a part hereof as fully and to the same extent as if written herein word for word:

NOW THEREFORE,

If PRINCIPAL shall well, truly and faithfully perform and fulfill all of the undertakings, covenants, terms, conditions and agreements of the above referenced Contract in accordance with the plans, specifications and Contract documents during the original term thereof, and any extension thereof which may be granted with or without notice to SURETY, and during the life of any guaranty required under the Contract, and shall also well and truly perform and fulfill all the covenants, terms, conditions and agreements of

any and all authorized modifications of such Contract that may hereafter be made, notice of which modifications to SURETY being hereby waived, then this obligation shall be void, otherwise to remain in full force and effect; and in case PRINCIPAL shall fail to do so, it is agreed that CITY may do such work and supply such materials and charge the same against PRINCIPAL and SURETY on this obligation, and PRINCIPAL and SURETY hereon shall be subject to the liquidated damages mentioned in the Contract for each day's failure on its part to comply with the terms and provisions of such Contract.

Provided, further, that if any legal action be filed on this Bond, venue shall lie in Tarrant County, Texas.


And, that SURETY, for value received, hereby stipulates and agrees that no change, extension of time, alteration or addition to the terms of the Contract or to the work performed thereunder, or the plans, specifications, drawings, etc., accompanying same shall in any way affect its obligation on this Bond; and it does hereby waive notice of any such change, extension of time, alteration or addition to the terms of the Contract or to the work to be performed thereunder.

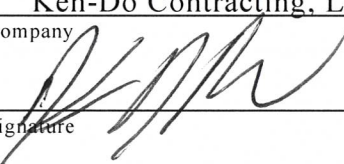
The undersigned and designated agent is hereby designated by SURETY as the agent resident in either Tarrant or Dallas County to whom any requisite notice may be delivered and on whom service of process may be had in matters arising out of such suretyship.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, this instrument is executed on this the 7th day of April, 2022.

WITNESS

PRINCIPAL

By   
Signature  
DEBRA CORTEZ  
Typed/Printed Name  
OFFICE MANAGER  
Title  
PO BOX 2001  
Address  
Desoto TX 75115  
City State Zip

Ken-Do Contracting, LP  
Company  
By   
Signature  
Kenneth Halverson  
Typed/Printed Name  
President  
Title  
P.O. Box 2001  
Address  
Desoto Texas 75115  
City State Zip



WITNESS

By Melissa Pitts  
Signature

Melissa Pitts  
Typed/Printed Name

Bond Secretary  
Title

1206 APOLLO RD #850367  
Address

RICHARDSON, TX 75085  
City State Zip

SURETY

Endurance Assurance Corporation  
Company

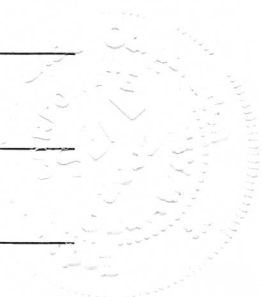
By Jordan A Pitts  
Signature

Jordan A Pitts  
Typed/Printed Name

Attorney-In-Fact  
Title

1221 Avenue of the Americas, 18th Floor  
Address

New York, NY 10020  
City State Zip



**NOTE: Date of Performance Bond must NOT be prior to date of Contract**

END OF SECTION

SECTION NO. 9

THE STATE OF TEXAS §

Payment Bond

COUNTY OF TARRANT §

KNOW ALL BY THESE PRESENTS:

THAT Ken-Do Contracting, LP

of the City of Desoto, County of Dallas

State of Texas hereinafter referred to as "PRINCIPAL", and

Endurance Assurance Corporation, a corporate surety/sureties organized under the laws of the State of New York and authorized to do business in the State of Texas, hereinafter referred to as "SURETY", (whether one or more), are held and firmly bound unto the **CITY OF ARLINGTON, TEXAS**, a municipal corporation located in Tarrant County, Texas, hereinafter referred to as "CITY", and unto all persons, firms and corporations who may furnish materials for or perform labor upon the buildings, structures or improvements referred to in the attached Contract, in the penal sum of **EIGHT HUNDRED NINETY ONE THOUSAND SIX HUNDRED ONE DOLLARS and ZERO CENTS(\$891,601.00)**, lawful money of the United States, to be paid in Arlington, Tarrant County, Texas, for the payment of which sum well and truly to be made, we bind ourselves, our heirs, executors, administrators, successors, and assigns, jointly and severally; and firmly by these presents, the condition of this obligation is such that,

WHEREAS, PRINCIPAL entered into a certain Contract with the City of Arlington, dated the 29<sup>th</sup> day of March, 2022, a copy of which is attached hereto and made a part hereof, to furnish all materials, equipment, labor, supervision, and other accessories necessary for the construction of:

**2022 NATHN LOWE AND DOWNTOWN SIDEWALK IMPROVEMENTS**

**City of Arlington Project No. PWSW22001**

in the City of Arlington, Texas, as more particularly described and designated in the above referenced contract such contract being incorporated herein and made a part hereof as fully and to the same extent as if written herein word for word:

NOW THEREFORE,

If PRINCIPAL shall well, truly and faithfully perform its duties and make prompt payment to all persons, firms, subcontractors, corporations and claimants supplying labor

and materials in the prosecution of the work provided for in the above referenced Contract and any and all duly authorized modifications of such Contract that may hereafter be made, notice to SURETY of such modifications being hereby waived, then this obligation shall be void, otherwise to remain in full force and effect.

PROVIDED, further, that if any legal action be filed on this Bond, venue shall lie in Tarrant County, Texas.

And, that such SURETY, for value received, hereby stipulates and agrees that no change, extension of time, alteration or addition to the terms of the Contract or to the work performed thereunder, or the plans, specifications, drawings, etc. accompanying same shall in any way affect its obligation on this Bond; and it does hereby waive notice of any such change, extension of time, alteration or addition to the terms of the Contract or to the work to be performed thereunder.

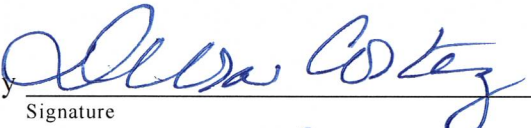
This Bond is given pursuant to the provisions of Chapter 2253 of the Government Code, as amended. The terms "payment bond beneficiary", "public work labor", and "public work material", as used herein, are in accordance with and as defined in the relevant provisions of Chapter 2253 of the Government Code.

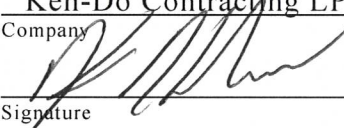
The undersigned and designated agent is hereby designated by SURETY herein as the resident agent in either Tarrant or Dallas Counties to whom any requisite notice may be delivered and on whom service of process may be had in matters arising out of such suretyship.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, this instrument is executed on this the 7th day of April, 2022

WITNESS

PRINCIPAL

By   
Signature  
DEBRA CORTEZ  
Typed/Printed Name  
OFFICE MANAGER  
Title  
PO BOX 2001  
Address  
Desoto TX 75115  
City State Zip

Ken-Do Contracting LP  
Company  
By   
Signature  
Kenneth Halverson  
Typed/Printed Name  
President  
Title  
P.O. Box 2001  
Address  
Desoto Texas 75115  
City State Zip

WITNESS

By Melissa Pitts  
Signature

Melissa Pitts  
Typed/Printed Name

Bond Secretary  
Title

1206 APOLLO RD #850367  
Address

RICHARDSON, TX 75085  
City State Zip

SURETY

Endurance Assurance Corporation  
Company

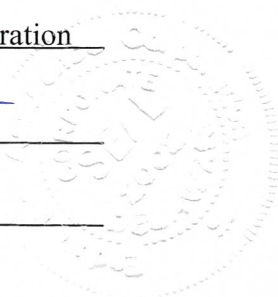
By Jordan A Pitts  
Signature

Jordan A Pitts  
Typed/Printed Name

Attorney-In-Fact  
Title

1221 Avenue of the Americas, 18th Floor  
Address

New York, NY 10020  
City State Zip



The Resident Agent of the SURETY in either Tarrant or Dallas County, Texas, for delivery of notice and service of process is:

NAME Lloyd Ray Pitts Jr

ADDRESS 1201 TALLEY RD , GARLAND, TX 75044

**NOTE: Date of Payment Bond must NOT be prior to date of Contract.**

END OF SECTION

# ENDURANCE ASSURANCE CORPORATION

12468

## POWER OF ATTORNEY

**Know all Men by these Present**, that ENDURANCE ASSURANCE CORPORATION, a Delaware corporation (the "Corporation"), with offices at 4 Manhattanville Road, 3rd Floor, Purchase, NY 10577, has made, constituted and appointed and by these presents, does make, constitute and appoint Lloyd Ray Pitts Jr., William D. Birdsong, Jordan A. Pitts its true and lawful Attorney(s)-in-fact, in the State of TX and each of them to have full power to act without the other or others, to make, execute and deliver on its behalf, as surety or co-surety; bonds and undertakings given for any and all purposes, also to execute and deliver on its behalf as aforesaid renewals, extensions, agreements, waivers, consents or stipulations relating to such bonds or undertakings provided, however, that no single bond or undertaking so made, executed and delivered shall obligate the Corporation for any portion of the penal sum thereof in excess of the sum of ONE HUNDRED MILLION Dollars (\$100,000,000.00).

Such bonds and undertakings for said purposes, when duly executed by said attorney(s)-in-fact, shall be binding upon the Corporation as fully and to the same extent as if signed by the President of the Corporation under its corporate seal attested by its Corporate Secretary.

This appointment is made under and by authority of certain resolutions adopted by the Board of Directors of the Corporation by unanimous written consent on the 9th of January, 2014, a copy of which appears below under the heading entitled "Certificate".

This Power of Attorney is signed and sealed by facsimile under and by authority of the following resolution adopted by the Board of Directors of the Corporation by unanimous written consent on January 9, 2014 and said resolution has not since been revoked, amended or repealed:

**\*RESOLVED**, that in granting powers of attorney pursuant to certain resolutions adopted by the Board of Directors of the Corporation by unanimous written consent on January 9, 2014, the signature of such directors and officers and the seal of the Corporation may be affixed to any such power of attorney or any certificate relating thereto by facsimile, and any such power of attorney or certificate bearing such facsimile signature or seal shall be valid and binding upon the Corporation in the future with respect to any bond or undertaking to which it is attached.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the Corporation has caused these presents to be duly signed and its corporate seal to be hereunto affixed and attested this 18th day of OCTOBER of 2019 at Purchase, New York.

(Corporate Seal)

ATTEST

*Marianne L. Wilbert*

MARIANNE L. WILBERT, SENIOR VICE PRESIDENT

ENDURANCE ASSURANCE CORPORATION

By

*Sharon L. Sims*

SHARON L. SIMS, SENIOR VICE PRESIDENT

STATE OF NEW YORK ss: MANHATTAN  
COUNTY OF NEW YORK

On the 18th day of OCTOBER of 2019 before me personally came SHARON L. SIMS, SENIOR VICE PRESIDENT to me known, who being by me duly sworn, did depose and say that (s)he resides in SCOTCH PLAINS, NEW JERSEY that (s)he is a SENIOR VICE PRESIDENT of ENDURANCE ASSURANCE CORPORATION, the Corporation described in and which executed the above instrument; that (s)he knows the seal of said Corporation; that the seal affixed to said instrument is such corporate seal; that it was so affixed by order of the Board of Directors of said Corporation; and that (s)he signed his (her) name thereto by like order.

NO. 6333844  
(Notarial Seal)  
QUALIFIED IN  
NEW YORK COUNTY  
STATE OF NEW YORK  
COUNTY OF NEW YORK  
EXP. 12/6/2019

ss: MANHATTAN

*Nicholas James Benenati*

Nicholas James Benenati, Notary Public - My Commission Expires 12/6/2019

## CERTIFICATE

I, CHRISTOPHER DONELAN, the PRESIDENT of ENDURANCE ASSURANCE CORPORATION, a Delaware Corporation (the "Corporation"), hereby certify:

1. That the original power of attorney of which the foregoing is a copy was duly executed on behalf of the Corporation and has not since been revoked, amended or modified; that the undersigned has compared the foregoing copy thereof with the original power of attorney, and that the same is a true and correct copy of the original power of attorney and of the whole thereof;
2. The following are resolutions which were adopted by the Board of Directors of the Corporation by unanimous written consent on January 9, 2014 and said resolutions have not since been revoked, amended or modified:

\*RESOLVED, that each of the individuals named below is authorized to make, execute, seal and deliver for and on behalf of the Corporation any and all bonds, undertakings or obligations in surety or co-surety with others:

CHRISTOPHER DONELAN, SHARON L. SIMS, MARIANNE L. WILBERT

And be it further

**\*RESOLVED**, that each of the individuals named above is authorized to appoint attorneys-in-fact for the purpose of making, executing, sealing and delivering bonds, undertakings or obligations in surety or co-surety for and on behalf of the Corporation.

The undersigned further certifies that the above resolutions are true and correct copies of the resolutions as so recorded and of the whole thereof.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, I have hereunto set my hand and affixed the corporate seal this 7th day of April, 2022.

2022  
DELAWARE

*Christopher Donelan*

CHRISTOPHER DONELAN, PRESIDENT

Any reproductions are void.

Primary Surety Claims Submission: suretybondclaims@sompo-intl.com

Surety Claims Hotline: 877-676-7575

Mailing Address: Surety Claims Department, Sompo International, 1221 Avenue of the Americas, 18th Floor, New York, NY 10020

## Policyholder Notice

### TEXAS - IMPORTANT NOTICE

To obtain information or make a complaint:  
You may call the company's telephone number for information or to make a complaint at:

**1-877-676-7575**

You may write the Company at:

**Endurance Assurance Corporation**  
**Attention: Surety**  
**1221 Avenue of the Americas, 18th Floor**  
**New York, NY 10020**

You may contact the Texas Department of Insurance to obtain information on companies, coverages, rights or complaints at:

**1-800-252-3439**

You may write the

Texas Department of Insurance  
PO Box 149104  
Austin, TX 78714-9104  
**FAX# (512) 490-1007**

**Web:** <http://www.tdi.texas.gov>

**E-mail:** [ConsumerProtection@tdi.texas.gov](mailto:ConsumerProtection@tdi.texas.gov)

**PREMIUM OR CLAIM DISPUTES:** Should you have a dispute concerning your premium or about a claim you should contact the company first. If the dispute is not resolved, you may contact the Texas Department of Insurance.

**ATTACH THIS NOTICE TO YOUR POLICY:** This notice is for information only and does not become a part or condition of the attached document.

### AVISO IMPORTANTE

Para obtener informacion o para someter una queja:  
Usted puede llamar al numero de telefono de la compania para informacion o para someter una queja al:

**1-877-676-7575**

Usted tambien puede escribir a:

**Endurance Assurance Corporation**  
**Attention: Surety**  
**1221 Avenue of the Americas, 18th Floor**  
**New York, NY 10020**

Puede comunicarse con el Departamento de Seguros de Texas para obtener informacion acerca de companias, coberturas, derechos o quejas al:

**1-800-252-3439**

Puede escribir al

Departamento de Seguros de Texas  
PO Box 149104  
Austin, TX 78714-9104  
**FAX# (512) 475-1771**

**Web:** <http://www.tdi.texas.gov>

**E-mail:** [ConsumerProtection@tdi.texas.gov](mailto:ConsumerProtection@tdi.texas.gov)

**DISPUTAS SOBRE PRIMAS O RECLAMOS:** Si tiene una disputa concerniente a su prima o a un reclamo, debe comunicarse con la compania primero. Si no se resuelve la disputa, puede entonces comunicarse con el departamento (TDI).

**UNA ESTE AVISO A SU POLIZA:** Este aviso es solo para proposito de informacion y no se convierte en parte o condicion del documento adjunto.

**SECTION NO. 10**

THE STATE OF TEXAS §

**Maintenance Bond**

COUNTY OF TARRANT §

KNOW ALL BY THESE PRESENTS:

THAT Ken-Do Contracting LP

of the City of Desoto, County of Dallas

State of Texas hereinafter referred to as "PRINCIPAL," and

Endurance Assurance Corporation, a corporate surety/sureties organized under the laws of the State of New York and authorized to do business in the State of Texas, hereinafter referred to as "SURETY," (whether one or more), are held and firmly bound unto the **CITY OF ARLINGTON, TEXAS**, a municipal corporation located in Tarrant County, Texas, hereinafter referred to as "CITY," in the amount of **EIGHT HUNDRED NINETY ONE THOUSAND SIX HUNDRED ONE DOLLARS and ZERO CENTS (\$891,601.00)**, lawful money of the United States, to be paid in Arlington, Tarrant County, Texas, for the payment of which sum well and truly to be made, we bind ourselves, our heirs, executors, assigns, administrators and successors, jointly and severally; and firmly by these presents, the condition of this obligation is such that:

WHEREAS, PRINCIPAL entered into a certain written Contract with City of Arlington, dated the 29<sup>th</sup> day of March, 2022, a copy of which is attached hereto and made a part hereof, to furnish all materials, equipment, labor, supervision, and other accessories necessary for the construction of:

**2022 NATHAN LOWE AND DOWNTOWN SIDEWALK IMPROVEMENTS**

**City of Arlington Project No. PWSW22001**

in the City of Arlington, Texas, as more particularly described and designated in the above referenced contract such contract being incorporated herein and made a part hereof as fully and to the same extent as if written herein word for word:

NOW THEREFORE,

If PRINCIPAL will maintain and keep in good repair the work herein contracted to be done and performed for a period of two (2) years from the date of acceptance and perform all necessary work and repair any defective condition growing out of or arising in any part of the construction of said improvement. It being understood that the purpose of this section is to cover all defective conditions arising by reason of defective materials, work or labor performed by PRINCIPAL; then this obligation shall be void, otherwise it shall remain in full force and effect; and in case

PRINCIPAL shall fail to do so, it is agreed that CITY may do such work and supply such materials and charge the same against PRINCIPAL and SURETY on this obligation, and in addition, PRINCIPAL and SURETY herein shall be subject to the liquidated damages as provided in the Contract referred to herein for each day's failure on its part to comply with the terms and provisions of such Contract.

Provided, further, that if any legal action be filed on this Bond, venue shall lie in Tarrant County, Texas.

And, that SURETY, for value received, hereby stipulates and agrees that no change, extension of time, alteration or addition to the terms of the Contract or to the work performed thereunder, or the plans, specifications, drawings, etc., accompanying same shall in any way affect its obligation on this Bond; and it does hereby waive notice of any such change, extension of time, alteration or addition to the terms of the Contract or to the work to be performed thereunder.

The undersigned and designated agent is hereby designated by SURETY as the resident agent in either Tarrant or Dallas County to whom any requisite notice may be delivered and on whom service of process may be had in matters arising out of such suretyship.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, this instrument is executed on this the 7th day of April, 2022.

WITNESS

PRINCIPAL

By Debra Cortez  
Signature  
DEBRA CORTEZ  
Typed/Printed Name  
OFFICE MANAGER  
Title  
PO BOX 2001  
Address  
Desoto TX 75715  
City State Zip

Ken-Do Contracting LP  
Company  
By [Signature]  
Signature  
Kenneth Halverson  
Typed/Printed Name  
President  
Title  
P.O. Box 2001  
Address  
Desoto Texas 75115  
City State Zip



WITNESS

By Melissa Pitts  
Signature

Melissa Pitts  
Typed/Printed Name

Bond Secretary  
Title

1206 APOLLO RD #850367  
Address

RICHARDSON, TX 75085  
City State Zip

SURETY

Endurance Assurance Corporation  
Company

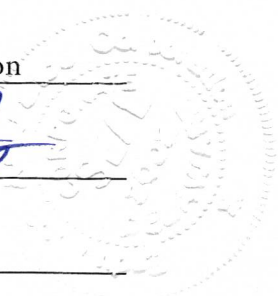
By Jordan A Pitts  
Signature

Jordan A Pitts  
Typed/Printed Name

Attorney-In-Fact  
Title

1221 Avenue of the Americas, 18th Floor  
Address

New York, NY 10020  
City State Zip



**NOTE: Date of Maintenance Bonds must NOT be prior to date of Contract**

END OF SECTION

# ENDURANCE ASSURANCE CORPORATION

12468

## POWER OF ATTORNEY

*Know all Men by these Presents*, that ENDURANCE ASSURANCE CORPORATION, a Delaware corporation (the "Corporation"), with offices at 4 Manhattanville Road, 3rd Floor, Purchase, NY 10577, has made, constituted and appointed and by these presents, does make, constitute and appoint Lloyd Ray Pitts Jr., William D. Birdsong, Jordan A. Pitts its true and lawful Attorney(s)-in-fact, in the State of TX and each of them to have full power to act without the other or others, to make, execute and deliver on its behalf, as surety or co-surety; bonds and undertakings given for any and all purposes, also to execute and deliver on its behalf as aforesaid renewals, extensions, agreements, waivers, consents or stipulations relating to such bonds or undertakings provided, however, that no single bond or undertaking so made, executed and delivered shall obligate the Corporation for any portion of the penal sum thereof in excess of the sum of ONE HUNDRED MILLION Dollars (\$100,000,000.00).

Such bonds and undertakings for said purposes, when duly executed by said attorney(s)-in-fact, shall be binding upon the Corporation as fully and to the same extent as if signed by the President of the Corporation under its corporate seal attested by its Corporate Secretary.

This appointment is made under and by authority of certain resolutions adopted by the Board of Directors of the Corporation by unanimous written consent on the 9th of January, 2014, a copy of which appears below under the heading entitled "Certificate".

This Power of Attorney is signed and sealed by facsimile under and by authority of the following resolution adopted by the Board of Directors of the Corporation by unanimous written consent on January 9, 2014 and said resolution has not since been revoked, amended or repealed:

RESOLVED, that in granting powers of attorney pursuant to certain resolutions adopted by the Board of Directors of the Corporation by unanimous written consent on January 9, 2014, the signature of such directors and officers and the seal of the Corporation may be affixed to any such power of attorney or any certificate relating thereto by facsimile, and any such power of attorney or certificate bearing such facsimile signature or seal shall be valid and binding upon the Corporation in the future with respect to any bond or undertaking to which it is attached.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the Corporation has caused these presents to be duly signed and its corporate seal to be hereunto affixed and attested this 18th day of OCTOBER of 2019 at Purchase, New York.

(Corporate Seal)  
ATTEST

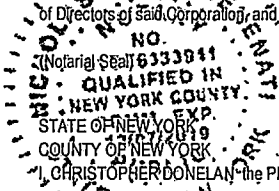
*Marianne L. Wilbert*  
MARIANNE L. WILBERT, SENIOR VICE PRESIDENT

ENDURANCE ASSURANCE CORPORATION

By *Sharon L. Sims*  
SHARON L. SIMS, SENIOR VICE PRESIDENT

STATE OF NEW YORK ss: MANHATTAN  
COUNTY OF NEW YORK

On the 18th day of OCTOBER of 2019 before me personally came SHARON L. SIMS, SENIOR VICE PRESIDENT to me known, who being by me duly sworn, did depose and say that (s)he resides in SCOTCH PLAINS, NEW JERSEY that (s)he is a SENIOR VICE PRESIDENT of ENDURANCE ASSURANCE CORPORATION, the Corporation described in and which executed the above instrument; that (s)he knows the seal of said Corporation; that the seal affixed to said instrument is such corporate seal; that it was so affixed by order of the Board of Directors of said Corporation; and that (s)he signed his (her) name thereto by like order.



*Nicholas James Benenati*

Nicholas James Benenati, Notary Public - My Commission Expires 12/6/2019

## CERTIFICATE

CHRISTOPHER DONELAN the PRESIDENT of ENDURANCE ASSURANCE CORPORATION, a Delaware Corporation (the "Corporation"), hereby certify:

1. That the original power of attorney of which the foregoing is a copy was duly executed on behalf of the Corporation and has not since been revoked, amended or modified; that the undersigned has compared the foregoing copy thereof with the original power of attorney, and that the same is a true and correct copy of the original power of attorney and of the whole thereof;
2. The following are resolutions which were adopted by the Board of Directors of the Corporation by unanimous written consent on January 9, 2014 and said resolutions have not since been revoked, amended or modified:

\*RESOLVED, that each of the individuals named below is authorized to make, execute, seal and deliver for and on behalf of the Corporation any and all bonds, undertakings or obligations in surety or co-surety with others:

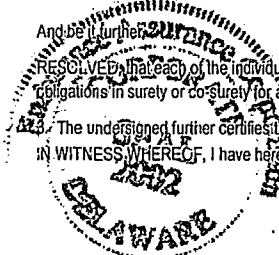
CHRISTOPHER DONELAN, SHARON L. SIMS, MARIANNE L. WILBERT

And be it further

RESOLVED, that each of the individuals named above is authorized to appoint attorneys-in-fact for the purpose of making, executing, sealing and delivering bonds, undertakings or obligations in surety or co-surety for and on behalf of the Corporation.\*

The undersigned further certifies that the above resolutions are true and correct copies of the resolutions as so recorded and of the whole thereof.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, I have hereunto set my hand and affixed the corporate seal this 7th day of April, 2022.



*Christopher Donelan*  
CHRISTOPHER DONELAN, PRESIDENT

## Policyholder Notice

### TEXAS - IMPORTANT NOTICE

To obtain information or make a complaint:  
You may call the company's telephone number for information or to make a complaint at:

**1-877-676-7575**

You may write the Company at:

**Endurance Assurance Corporation**  
**Attention: Surety**  
**1221 Avenue of the Americas, 18th Floor**  
**New York, NY 10020**

You may contact the Texas Department of Insurance to obtain information on companies, coverages, rights or complaints at:

**1-800-252-3439**

You may write the

Texas Department of Insurance  
PO Box 149104  
Austin, TX 78714-9104  
FAX# (512) 490-1007

**Web:** <http://www.tdi.texas.gov>

**E-mail:** [ConsumerProtection@tdi.texas.gov](mailto:ConsumerProtection@tdi.texas.gov)

**PREMIUM OR CLAIM DISPUTES:** Should you have a dispute concerning your premium or about a claim you should contact the company first. If the dispute is not resolved, you may contact the Texas Department of Insurance.

**ATTACH THIS NOTICE TO YOUR POLICY:** This notice is for information only and does not become a part or condition of the attached document.

### AVISO IMPORTANTE

Para obtener informacion o para someter una queja:  
Usted puede llamar al numero de telefono de la compania para informacion o para someter una queja al:

**1-877-676-7575**

Usted tambien puede escribir a:

**Endurance Assurance Corporation**  
**Attention: Surety**  
**1221 Avenue of the Americas, 18th Floor**  
**New York, NY 10020**

Puede comunicarse con el Departamento de Seguros de Texas para obtener informacion acerca de companias, coberturas, derechos o quejas al:

**1-800-252-3439**

Puede escribir al

Departamento de Seguros de Texas  
PO Box 149104  
Austin, TX 78714-9104  
FAX# (512) 475-1771

**Web:** <http://www.tdi.texas.gov>

**E-mail:** [ConsumerProtection@tdi.texas.gov](mailto:ConsumerProtection@tdi.texas.gov)

**DISPUTAS SOBRE PRIMAS O RECLAMOS:** Si tiene una disputa concerniente a su prima o a un reclamo, debe comunicarse con la compania primero. Si no se resuelve la disputa, puede entonces comunicarse con el departamento (TDI).

**UNA ESTE AVISO A SU POLIZA:** Este aviso es solo para proposito de informacion y no se convierte en parte o condicion del documento adjunto.

## SECTION NO. 11

### SPECIAL PROVISIONS – GENERAL ADMINISTRATION SPECIFICATIONS

#### NUMERICAL LISTING

Section No.

- 11-01 PURPOSE OF SPECIAL PROVISIONS
- 11-02 SCOPE OF WORK
- 11-03 MINORITY / WOMEN BUSINESS ENTERPRISE (MWBE) CONTRACT SPECIFIC GOAL
- 11-04 MINORITY / WOMEN BUSINESS ENTERPRISE (MWBE) POST AWARD COMPLIANCE
- 11-05 PREVAILING WAGE RATES
- 11-06 BONDS, INSURANCE, & AFFIDAVITS
- 11-07 INDEMNIFICATION
- 11-08 RIGHT TO AUDIT
- 11-09 SALES TAX EXEMPTION
- 11-10 CONTRACTOR PERSONNEL
- 11-11 MOBILIZATION AND BONDS
- 11-12 SUBMITTALS
- 11-13 CONSTRUCTION MEETING
- 11-14 PUBLIC MEETING
- 11-15 TIME FOR COMPLETION & LIQUIDATED DAMAGES
- ~~11-16 BONUS – N/A~~
- 11-17 COMPUTATION OF CONTRACT TIME FOR COMPLETION & DELAYS
- 11-18 CONSTRUCTION CONTINGENCY ALLOWANCE
- 11-19 MATERIALS AND WORKMANSHIP: WARRANTIES AND GUARANTEES
- 11-20 DEFECTIVE MATERIALS, EQUIPMENT, OR IN-PLACE CONSTRUCTION
- 11-21 QUALITY ASSURANCE/QUALITY CONTROL (QA/QC)
- 11-22 SAFETY DATA SHEET
- 11-23 SATURDAY OR CITY HOLIDAY INSPECTIONS
- 11-24 WORK PERFORMED WITHOUT BENEFIT OF INSPECTIONS
- 11-25 MONTHLY ESTIMATE
- 11-26 OWNER NOTIFICATION
- 11-27 SIGNS FOR BUSINESSES
- 11-28 PROJECT SIGNS

11-29 QUANTITIES  
11-30 CONTRACTOR SELF-PERFORMANCE

**SECTION NO. 11**

**SPECIAL PROVISIONS – GENERAL ADMINISTRATION SPECIFICATIONS**

**11-01 PURPOSE OF SPECIAL PROVISIONS:**

- A. Paving and Drainage improvements shall be in accordance with the latest version of the STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS FOR PUBLIC WORKS CONSTRUCTION STANDARDS as issued by The North Central Texas Council of Governments (NCTCOG); Water and Sanitary Sewer improvements shall be in accordance with the latest version of the CITY OF ARLINGTON STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS FOR WATER & SANITARY SEWER CONSTRUCTION; hereinafter collectively referred to as “Standard Specifications”.
- B. All Special Provisions included in this contract document are for the purpose of adapting the Standard Specifications to the particular project which is subject to this agreement and of adding thereto such further provisions as may be necessary to state the contract in its entirety.
- C. The work shall conform to the requirements of the Special Provisions and the details as shown on the drawings. These contract documents are intended to be complementary. The intent of the contract documents, including the Standard Specifications, Special Provisions, and other instruments, documents, drawings and maps comprising the Plans and Specifications, is to describe the completed work to be performed by the Contractor under the contract as an independent Contractor. Requirements of any of the contract documents are as binding as if called for by all. Any provision of the agreement vesting in the City or the engineer the right of inspection is understood by all the parties to be for the purpose of ensuring that the plans and specifications are complied with and that the completed work is obtained and described, and no such provision shall be interpreted as vesting the City or engineer the right to control the details of work.
- D. In the event of conflict between documents, Special Provisions shall take priority over drawings, and drawings shall govern over Standard Specifications.
- E. References made to TxDOT Items in this contract shall mean items in the latest version of the Standard Specifications for Construction and Maintenance of Highways, Streets, and Bridges as published by the Texas Department of Transportation. Further technical requirements contained in other publications are referenced in sections where they apply and are hereby incorporated.
- F. References made to “City” shall mean the City of Arlington.

**11-02 SCOPE OF WORK:**

- A. The work governed by these specifications is located in the City of Arlington, Texas and consists of **2022 NATHAN LOWE AND DOWNTOWN SIDEWALK IMPROVEMENTS**, City of Arlington Project No. **PWSW22001**, including all necessary appurtenances.

- B. The Contractor shall provide, at his/her own expense, all construction staking required to perform the work as described in the plans and specifications. For City capital projects, control monuments may be verified by the City. The Contractor shall set excavation and fill stakes on or near the right-of-way, all stakes necessary for water or sewer relocation and storm drain placement, 4-foot off-set back of curb stakes for subgrade stabilization and paving, and intermediate grade stakes (i.e. blue topping, fill, or cut stakes) on the centerline. All staking shall be subjected to inspection by the City. While the City shall have the right to inspect, it shall have no duty to inspect. The Contractor will be responsible for any discrepancies from the plan alignment and/or grade. Calendar days will not be adjusted due to the lack of available crews or due to the negligence of the Contractor or vandalism that causes the replacement of stakes.
- C. Work shall be accomplished between the hours of 7 a.m. to 6 p.m. (Central Standard Time) and 7 a.m. to 8 p.m. (Central Daylight Savings Time), Monday through Friday unless otherwise approved by the City. For Saturday and holiday inspections, see Section 11-22.
- D. Contractor is responsible to stay informed of all events involving the AT&T (Cowboys) Stadium, Globe Life Field (Texas Rangers) and any other major events at other venues in the Entertainment District. Contractor shall not work in the Entertainment District unless approved by the City's Traffic Engineering division. Upon approval to proceed with construction, the Contractor must complete work and remove all traffic control devices two (2) days prior to the next event, or as directed by the City. It will be the responsibility of the Prime Contractor to see that Subcontractor(s) is in compliance with requirement.

**11-03 MINORITY/WOMEN BUSINESS ENTERPRISE (MWBE) CONTRACT**

**SPECIFIC GOAL:** The City's Minority/Woman Business Enterprise (MWBE) utilization goal, for this project is 25%.

The contractor's MWBE commitment percentage is based on the total value of the contract including any change orders and modifications throughout the contract agreement.

**11-04 MINORITY/WOMEN BUSINESS ENTERPRISE (MWBE) POST AWARD COMPLIANCE:**

- A. The Contractor shall report all subcontractor payment activity with the Contractor's monthly estimate in accordance to Section 11-25. If change orders, amendments or any contract modification are issued by the City, the Contractor has a contractual commitment to meet and/or exceed their MWBE utilization goal. Contractor is obligated to immediately notify the City, in writing, of any agreed increase or decrease in the scope of work that will impact the MWBE participation in the contract.
- B. The Contractor cannot terminate, substitute, or change the terms of the MWBE Utilization Plan prior to or after Contract award without prior written consent from the City. If the Contractor is unable to meet its MWBE commitment with certified MWBE companies, the Contractor shall satisfy its commitment, as it relates to the scope of work changes, modifications, and/or amendments by soliciting new certified MWBE companies.

Contractor shall submit a Request for Approval of Change to MWBE Utilization Plan for review and written approval from the City.

If the City observes any MWBE subcontractor other than those listed on the MWBE Utilization Plan are performing work or providing materials and/or equipment for those MWBE Subcontractors listed on the MWBE Utilization Plan, the Contractor will be notified in writing that an apparent violation is taking place and payments may be withheld in addition to any other sanctions included in the MWBE Policy and Procedures Manual. The Contractor will be given an opportunity to meet with the City prior to a finding of noncompliance

- C. Contractor shall pay its subcontractors no later than the 5th business day after the date the prime contractor receives payment from the City. The prime contractor also agrees to promptly request the release of any retainage withheld from subcontractors within five (5) business days after the subcontractor's work is satisfactorily completed and receives partial acceptance, substantial completion or final completion/final acceptance as defined in the General Provisions of the contract. Furthermore, the prime contractor agrees to pay the subcontractor its retainage within five (5) business days after the date the prime contractor receives the subcontractor's retainage payment from the City.

A finding of non-payment shall be a material breach of this contract. The City may withhold progress payments until the Contractor demonstrates timely payment due all subcontractors. The City also reserves the right to exercise other breach of contract remedies.

- D. During the performance of this Contract, the Contractor or Subcontractor agrees that it will not discriminate on the basis of on race, age, color, religion, sex, sexual orientation, gender identity, national origin, ancestry, gender, disability, or place of birth in the award. Failure by the Contractor to ensure non-discrimination is a material breach of this Contract, which may result in the termination of this Contract or such other remedy, as the City deems appropriate. The Contractor must insert the substance of this clause in all Subcontracts and purchase orders.

- E. The failure by the Contractor to carry out the requirements of the Program is a material breach of the Contract and may result in the termination of the Contract or such other remedies as the City deems appropriate. Violation of MWBE Policies and Procedures, or Contractual obligations, may result in any one or more of the following sanctions:

1. Administrative Warning: Issued for first-time violations or minor violations.
2. Withholding of funds payable under the Contract, including, but not limited to, funds payable for work self-performed by the Contractor or applicable retainage.
3. Temporarily suspending, at no cost to the City, Contractor's performance under the Contract.
4. Termination of the Contract.
5. Suspension/debarment of a Contractor for a period of time from participating in any solicitations issued by the City.



**11-05 PREVAILING WAGE RATES:**

- A. The Contractor shall comply with V.T.C.A., Government Code, Chapter 2258, in performing this project. In accordance with V.T.C.A., Government Code, Chapter 2258, the prevailing wage rates as set forth in Section 2 of the contract documents shall be paid on this project. For overtime work and legal holidays, the hourly rate shall be one and one-half (1½) times the basic hourly rate set forth in Section 2. The City will require Contractor to execute an affidavit affirming that all wages are in strict compliance with the established prevailing wages rates as described in the contract documents and all wages have been or will be paid accordingly. The City reserves the right to conduct interviews with the Contractor's employees to ensure compliance with Section 2 of the contract documents in accordance with applicable State and Federal Laws.
  
- B. Upon written request by the City, the general Contractor shall be responsible for submitting payroll information to the City for all employees performing work on the project, whether employed by the general Contractor or a subcontractor to the general Contractor. Each submittal shall be certified by the general Contractor as to completeness and accuracy.
  
- C. A Contractor or subcontractor in violation of V.T.C.A., Government Code, Chapter 2258 is liable for a penalty. That Contractor or subcontractor shall pay to the City sixty dollars (\$60.00) for each laborer, workman, or mechanic employed for each calendar day, or portion thereof, such laborer, workman, or mechanic is paid less than the said stipulated rates for work done under the contract.
  
- D. The Contractor or subcontractor violating a requirement of this Special Provision may be determined ineligible to bid on or receive any additional work during the calendar year following the year in which the violation of this Special Provision occurred.

**11-06 BONDS, INSURANCE AND AFFIDAVITS:**

- A. The following bonds and proof of insurance shall be filed with the City of Arlington as a condition of the contract, together with appropriate powers of attorney.
  - 1. Performance, Payment, And Maintenance Bonds: Performance, payment and maintenance bonds in the amount of not less than one hundred percent (100%) of the contract price conditioned upon the faithful performance of the contract, and upon payment of all persons supplying labor or furnishing materials, will be required upon the forms which are a part of the Contract Documents. Bonds shall be executed by a surety company authorized to do business in the State of Texas and acceptable to and approved by the City. The period of the Maintenance Bond shall be two (2) years from the date of acceptance of all work done under the contract, to cover the guarantee as set forth in the Special Provisions.
  
  - 2. Performance Bonds And Payment Bonds In Excess Of \$100,000: In addition to all other requirements set forth with regard to performance bonds and payment bonds, any performance bond or payment bond in an amount exceeding One Hundred Thousand Dollars (\$100,000) must be issued by a surety that is qualified as a surety on obligations permitted or required under federal law as indicated by publication of

the surety's name in the current U.S. Treasury Department Circular 570. In the alternative, an otherwise acceptable surety company that is authorized and admitted to write surety bonds in Texas must obtain reinsurance on any amounts in excess of One Hundred Thousand Dollars (\$100,000) from a reinsurer authorized and admitted as a reinsurer in Texas who qualifies as a surety or reinsurer on obligations permitted or required under federal law as indicated by publication of the surety's or reinsurer's name in the current U.S. Treasury Department Circular 570.

3. Insurance: Contractor shall, at his/her own expense, purchase, maintain and keep in force during the term of this contract such insurance as set forth below. Contractor shall not commence work under this contract until he/she has obtained all the insurance required under the contract and such insurance has been approved by the City, nor shall the Contractor allow any subcontractor to commence work on his/her subcontract until all similar insurance of the subcontractor has been obtained and approved. All insurance policies provided under this contract shall be written on an "occurrence" basis. The policy limits stated below are at a minimum:

Liability Insurance

Commercial General Liability                    \$1,000,000 Per Occurrence/  
 (No standard coverages are to                    \$2,000,000 Aggregate  
 be excluded by endorsement. XCU  
 and contractual liability are not to be excluded)

Automobile Liability Insurance

Commercial Auto Liability Policy                    \$ 1,000,000 Combined Single Limit  
 (Any Auto, including hired, and  
 non-owned autos)

Umbrella Liability

(Following Form and Drop Down                    \$2,000,000 Each Occurrence  
 Provisions Included)

Workers' Compensation Insurance

Workers' Compensation                    Statutory Limit  
 Employer's Liability                    \$1,000,000 Each Occurrence  
    \$1,000,000 Disease - Each Employee  
    \$1,000,000 Disease – Policy Limit

Professional Liability – required for Contractor or subcontractor performing CCTV services and report

Or Errors & Omissions coverage                    \$1,000,000 per claim  
    \$2,000,000 Aggregate (Rev. 1/2020)

- B. It is agreed by all parties to this contract that the insurance policies required under this contract shall be endorsed to provide:

1. The City, its officials, employees and volunteers shall be named as an additional insured on the Commercial General Liability, Automobile Liability and Umbrella Liability insurance policies. These insurance policies shall contain the appropriate additional insured endorsement to cover premises/operations and products/completed operations, including materials, equipment or supplies provided by the City. (Rev. 9/2019)
2. The General Liability policy shall be endorsed as primary and non-contributory with other insurance carried by the City, and aggregate policy limits shall apply “per project”;
3. Provide for thirty (30) days notice of cancellation to the City, ten (10) days notice of cancellation is acceptable for nonpayment of premium;
4. Be written through companies duly authorized to transact that class of insurance in the State of Texas with an A.M. Best rating of A:VII or better; and,
5. Waive subrogation rights for loss or damage so that insurers have no right to recovery or subrogation against the City of Arlington, it being the intention that the required insurance policies shall protect all parties to the contract and be primary coverage for all losses covered by the policies.
6. Provide one copy of a Certificate of Insurance on an Acord form or other State-approved form evidencing the required coverages to:

Department of Public Works and Transportation, MS01-0220  
Attention: Amy Powell, Contract Coordinator  
City of Arlington  
P.O. Box 90231  
Arlington, TX 76004-3231

- C. Neither final payment nor any remaining retained percentage shall become due until the Contractor submits to the City (1) an affidavit that payrolls, bills for materials and equipment, and other indebtedness connected with the work for which the City or the City’s property might be responsible or encumbered (less amounts withheld by City) have been paid or otherwise satisfied, (2) a certificate evidencing that insurance required by the contract documents to remain in force after final payment is currently in effect and will not be canceled or allowed to expire until at least thirty (30) days prior written notice has been given to the City, (3) a written statement that the Contractor knows of no substantial reason that the insurance will not be renewable to cover the period required by the contract documents, (4) consent of Surety, if any, to final payment and (5) if required by the City, other data establishing payment or satisfaction of obligations, such as receipts, releases and waivers of liens, claims, security interests or encumbrances arising out of the contract, to the extent and in such form as may be designated by the City. If a subcontractor refuses to furnish a release or waiver required by the City, the Contractor may furnish a bond satisfactory to the City to indemnify the City of Arlington against such lien. If such lien

remains unsatisfied after payments are made, the Contractor shall refund to the City all money that the City may be compelled to pay in discharging such lien, including all costs and reasonable attorneys' fees.

D. In addition to the requirements contained above, the Contractor shall comply with the following in its provision of workers' compensation insurance.

1. Definitions:

Certificate of coverage ("certificate") - A copy of a certificate of insurance, a certificate of authority to self-insure issued by the commission, or a coverage agreement (TWCC-81, TWCC-82, TWCC-83, or TWCC-84), showing statutory workers' compensation insurance coverage for the person's or entity's employees providing services on a project, for the duration of the project.

Duration of the project - includes the time from the beginning of the work on the project until the Contractor's/person's work on the project has been completed and accepted by the governmental entity.

Persons providing services on the project ("subcontractor" in §406.096) - includes all persons or entities performing all or part of the services the Contractor has undertaken to perform on the project, regardless of whether that person contracted directly with the Contractor and regardless of whether that person has employees. This includes, without limitation, independent Contractors, subcontractors, leasing companies, motor carriers, owner-operators, employees of any such entity, or employees of any entity which furnishes persons to provide services on the project. "Services" include, without limitation, providing, hauling, or delivering equipment or materials, or providing labor, transportation or other service related to a project. "Services" does not include activities unrelated to the project, such as food/beverage vendors, office supply deliveries and delivery of portable toilets.

2. The Contractor shall provide coverage, based on proper reporting of classification codes and payroll amounts and filing of any coverage agreements, which meets the statutory requirements of Texas Labor Code, Section 401.011(44) for all employees of the Contractor providing services on the project, for the duration of the project.
3. The Contractor must provide a certificate of coverage to the governmental entity prior to being awarded the contract.
4. If the coverage period shown on the Contractor's current certificate of coverage ends during the duration of the project, the Contractor must, prior to the end of the coverage period, file a new certificate of coverage with the governmental entity showing that coverage has been extended.
5. The Contractor shall obtain from each person providing services on a project, and provide to the governmental entity:

- a. a certificate of coverage, prior to that person beginning work on the project, so the governmental entity will have on file certificates of coverage showing coverage for all persons providing services on the project; and
  - b. no later than seven (7) days after receipt by the Contractor, a new certificate of coverage showing extension of coverage, if the coverage period shown on the current certificate of coverage ends during the duration of the project.
6. The Contractor shall retain all required certificates of coverage for the duration of the project and for two (2) year thereafter.
7. The Contractor shall notify the governmental entity in writing by certified mail or personal delivery, within ten (10) days after the Contractor knew or should have known, of any change that materially affects the provision of coverage of any person providing services on the project.
8. The Contractor shall post on each project site a notice, in the text, form and manner prescribed by the Texas Workers' Compensation Commission, informing all persons providing services on the project that they are required to be covered, and stating how a person may verify coverage and report lack of coverage.
9. The Contractor shall contractually require each person with whom it contracts to provide services on a project, to:
  - a. provide coverage, based on proper reporting of classification codes and payroll amounts and filing of any coverage agreements, which meets the statutory requirements of Texas Labor Code, Section 401.011(44) for all of its employees providing services on the project, for the duration of the project;
  - b. provide to the Contractor, prior to that person beginning work on the project, a certificate of coverage showing that coverage is being provided for all employees of the person providing services on the project, for the duration of the project;
  - c. provide the Contractor, prior to the end of the coverage period, a new certificate of coverage showing extension of coverage, if the coverage period shown on the current certificate of coverage ends during the duration of the project;
  - d. obtain from each other person with whom it contracts, and provide to the Contractor:
    1. a certificate of coverage, prior to the other person beginning work on the project; and
    2. a new certificate of coverage showing extension of coverage, prior to the end of the coverage period, if the coverage period shown on the current certificate of coverage ends during the duration of the project;

e. retain all required certificates of coverage on file for the duration of the project and for one (1) year thereafter;

f. notify the governmental entity in writing by certified mail or personal delivery, within ten (10) days after the person knew or should have known, of any change that materially affects the provision of coverage of any person providing services on the project; and

g. contractually require each person with whom it contracts, to perform as required by paragraphs 1 – 7 above, with the certificates of coverage to be provided to the person for whom they are providing services.

10. By signing this contract or providing or causing to be provided a certificate of coverage, the Contractor is representing to the governmental entity that all employees of the Contractor who will provide services on the project will be covered by workers' compensation coverage for the duration of the project, that the coverage will be based on proper reporting of classification codes and payroll amounts, and that all coverage agreements will be filed with the appropriate insurance carrier or, in the case of a self-insured, with the commission's Division of Self-Insurance Regulation. Providing false or misleading information may subject the Contractor to administrative penalties, criminal penalties, civil penalties, or other civil actions.

11. The Contractor's failure to comply with any of these provisions is a breach of contract by the Contractor which entitles the governmental entity to declare the contract void if the Contractor does not remedy the breach within ten (10) days after receipt of notice of breach from the governmental entity.

A. It is understood and acknowledged by both parties that the minimum amounts for insurance, as provided for herein may be adjusted from time to time due to changing conditions to cover City's needs as determined by its Risk Manager.

B. Any of the insurance policies required under this section may be written in combination with any of the others, where legally permitted, but none of the specified limits may be lowered thereby.

**11-07 INDEMNIFICATION:** Contractor does hereby agree to waive all claims, release, indemnify, defend and hold harmless the City of Arlington and all of its officials, officers, agents, employees, in both their public and private capacities, from and against any and all liability, claims, losses, damages, suits, demands or causes of action including all expenses of litigation and/or settlement, court costs and attorney fees which may arise by reason of injury to or death of any person or for loss of, damage to, or loss of use of property occasioned by error, omission, or negligent act of Contractor, his or her officers, agents, employees, subcontractors, invitees or any other persons, arising out of or in connection with the performance of this contract, and Contractor will at his or her own cost and expense defend and protect City of Arlington from any and all such claims and demands. Contractor does hereby agree to waive all claims, release, indemnify, defend and hold harmless City of

Arlington and all its officials, officers, agents, and employees, from and against any and all claims, losses, damages, suits, demands or causes of action, and liability of every kind including all expenses of litigation and/or settlement, court costs and attorneys fees for injury or death of any person or for loss of, damage to, or loss of use of any property, arising out of or in connection with the performance of this contract. Such indemnity shall apply whether the claims, losses, damages, suits, demands or causes of action arise in whole or in part from the negligence of the City of Arlington, his or her officers, officials, agents or employees. It is the express intention of all the parties that the indemnity provided for in this paragraph is indemnity by Contractor to indemnify and protect City of Arlington from the consequences of City of Arlington's own negligence, whether that negligence is a sole or concurring cause of the injury, death or damage and whether said negligence is characterized as sole, contractual comparative, concurrent, joint, gross, active, passive, or any other form of negligence.

In any and all claims against any party indemnified hereunder by any employee of the Contractor, any subcontractor, anyone directly or indirectly employed by any of them or anyone for whose acts any of them may be liable, this indemnification obligation shall not be limited in any way by any limitation on the amount or type of damages, compensation or benefits payable by or for the Contractor or any subcontractor under workmen's compensation acts or other employee benefit acts.

**11-08 RIGHT TO AUDIT:**

- A. Contractor agrees that City shall, until the expiration of three (3) years after final payment under this contract, have access to and the right to examine any directly pertinent books, documents, papers and records of Contractor involving transactions relating to this contract. Contractor agrees that City shall have access during normal working hours to all necessary Contractor facilities and shall be provided adequate and appropriate work space in order to conduct audits in compliance with the provisions of this section. City shall give Contractor reasonable advance notice of intended audits.
  
- B. Contractor further agrees to include in subcontract(s), if any, a provision that any subcontractor agrees that City shall have access to and the right to examine any directly pertinent books, documents, papers and records of such subcontractor involving transactions to the subcontract, and further, that City shall have access during normal working hours to all subcontractor facilities, and shall be provided adequate and appropriate work space, in order to conduct audits in compliance with the provisions of this paragraph.

**11-09 SALES TAX EXEMPTION:** The Contractor is responsible for understanding Texas law regarding tax exemption for City projects and bidding accordingly. The latest information can be obtained from the State Comptroller's Office and/or other appropriate entities.

**11-10 CONTRACTOR PERSONNEL:**

- A. The Prime Contractor shall provide phone number(s) of superintendent(s) available twenty-four (24) hours a day to handle any emergencies that may occur. (Rev. 3/2019)

B. The Prime Contractor shall provide a superintendent authorized to receive and fulfill instructions from the Inspector at all times on the job site. Superintendent must: (Rev. 3/2019)

1. Serve as the Contractor's primary point of contact.
2. Be a permanent staff employee.
3. Be knowledgeable of the specifications herein and common construction practices.
4. Be responsible for the performance of the crew(s).
5. Be responsible for the day to day operations in accordance to the service requirements throughout the term of the contract.
6. Make decisions and receive, follow, give, and understand written and verbal instructions in English, and inspect the work site with City upon request.
7. Provide copy of the monthly pay estimate/quantity to the Inspector on the spreadsheet provided by the City.
8. Upload MWBE Reporting to the City's Diversity Management System (B2Gnow).

C. The City recognizes that events beyond the control of the Contractor (such as death, physical or mental incapacity, long-term illness, or the voluntary termination of employment of the on-site supervisor) will require the Contractor to propose a replacement. In the event that such replacement is necessary, the Contractor agrees that no personnel shall begin work on the project without written approval from the City.

D. The Contractor shall employ only competent, efficient workmen and shall not use any unfit person or one that is not skilled in the work assigned to him. The Contractor shall at all times maintain good order among his/her employees.

E. Whenever the City informs the Contractor in writing that, in his/her opinion, any employee is unfit, unskilled, disobedient or is disrupting the orderly progress of the work, such employee shall be removed from the project. The City may orally require immediate removal of an employee for cause, to be followed by written confirmation.

**11-11 MOBILIZATION AND BONDS:** A lump sum bid item in the amount designated in the PROPOSAL has been included for compensation for mobilization and bonds. This item is a one-time pay item per project and will not be paid per location unless otherwise stated in the PROPOSAL. Upon presentation of a paid invoice for the required bonds, the Contractor will be paid that amount from the amount stated in the PROPOSAL. However, a monthly pay estimate will not be processed solely for paying these items. Work on other pay items must be initiated prior to processing the first monthly pay estimate. The remaining amount of the lump sum will be paid when ten percent (10%) of the amount for the original construction items is earned.



**11-12 SUBMITTALS:**

- A. Contractor shall submit plans or product data to City for review and approval prior to the purchase or fabrication of any equipment or material for use on this project.
- B. Submittals shall include but not limited to the following:
- Streetlight Pole Assemblies, including Luminaires
  - Signal Pole Assemblies
  - Pedestrian Pole Assemblies
  - Concrete Design
  - Asphalt Design
  - Pipe Or Box Culvert Material
  - Any Pre-Cast Structures (If Approved)
  - Turf Reinforced Matting (TRM)
  - Water/Sanitary Sewer Products
  - Trench Safety
  - Concrete Formliners
  - Specialty Concrete/Brick Pavers
  - Modular Block Walls And Tie-Backs
  - Traffic Control Plans (1 hard copy)
  - SWPPP (2 hard copies)
  - Street Marker Blades
- C. Submittal shall include all appropriate catalog cut sheets, shop drawings, product specifications, and other product documentation as requested by the City. Shop drawings and other necessary data for all non-catalog or custom-made items, shall be sealed or certified accordingly. Unless otherwise noted, submittals should be in electronic format.
- D. In order to facilitate review, the Contractor shall clearly label each item of submittal data with the bid item number which it applies to. Each submittal shall contain sufficient information and details to permit full evaluation of the item and its interrelationship with other items. Submittals that, in the judgment of the City, are insufficient to permit proper evaluation, will not be reviewed.
- E. Items that are "rejected" are judged to be basically unacceptable and the Contractor shall proceed immediately to identify new items or redesign said items and resubmit them for review.
- F. The Contractor shall allow a fourteen (14) business day review period for each package of submittal information. No time extensions will be granted to the Contractor as a result of re-occurring incomplete or unacceptable submittals or resubmittals.
- G. Review and acceptance of the submittal data by the City shall not relieve the Contractor of his/her obligation to furnish and install the work in accordance with the contract documents.

**11-13 CONSTRUCTION MEETING:** A pre-construction meeting will be held prior to the issuance of the Notice to Proceed. The purpose of this meeting is to cover all aspects of the project. Issues will be discussed related to the chain-of-command, areas of special concern, and coordination expectations. Weekly or bi-weekly project construction meetings may be held for this project. The City will schedule the time and location, and determine the frequency of these meetings. A representative of the Contractor, knowledgeable of the project, shall attend these construction meetings.

**11-14 PUBLIC MEETING:** Prior to start of construction, a public meeting will be held for this project. The purpose of the meeting will be to explain the project and answer questions to affected citizens and/or businesses. A representative of the Contractor, knowledgeable of the project, shall attend the public meeting. The representative will be introduced and will be called on as necessary to assist in answering questions. (Rev 9/2019)

**11-15 TIME FOR COMPLETION AND LIQUIDATED DAMAGES:** Since time is of the essence, the City has seen fit to establish the time required to complete this project. The time, as set out in SECTION 6 of this contract, will be the maximum number of **calendar** days allowed to substantially complete this project. Substantially complete is defined as having completed all bid items included in the contract to allow the facilities to function as designed. Failure of the Contractor to complete the work within this time will result in damages being sustained by the City. Such damages are, and will continue to be, impracticable and extremely difficult to determine. The Contractor will pay the City five hundred dollars (\$500) for each **calendar** day of delay (including Sundays and holidays) in finishing the work in excess of time specified for completion, plus any authorized time extensions. Execution of the contract under these specifications shall constitute agreement by the City and Contractor that five hundred dollars (\$500) is the minimum value of the costs and actual damage caused by failure of the Contractor to complete the work within the allotted time, that such sum is liquidated damages and shall not be construed as a penalty, and that such sum may be deducted from payments due the Contractor if such delay occurs.

**11-16 BONUS:** N/A

**11-17 COMPUTATION OF CONTRACT TIME FOR COMPLETION & DELAYS:**

- A. Time will be charged for all calendar days regardless of weather conditions, material shortages, supplies, or other conditions not under the control of the Contractor, which could impede the progress of the work. Time will also be charged for Sundays and holidays.
- B. Prior to beginning construction operations, the Contractor shall submit to the City a critical path method (CPM) chart progress schedule showing the manner of prosecution of the work that he intends to follow in order to complete the contract within the allotted time. The purpose for this schedule is to assure adequate planning and execution of the work. The progress schedule must present a reasonable approach to completing the work within the allotted time.
- C. Payment of partial monthly estimates will not be processed until the CPM chart progress schedule has been approved by the City.

D. The Contractor shall be entirely responsible for maintaining the progress of the work in accordance with the approved schedule. Should it become evident, in the opinion of the City, any time during the construction that the progress of the work has not been maintained in accordance with the approved schedule, the Contractor shall, upon written request by the City, promptly submit a revised schedule. This revised schedule shall set out operations, methods, equipment, added labor, and additional work shifts by which time lost shall be made up. At the end of each estimate period, the City will determine whether the Contractor is in compliance with the approved schedule, or the approved revised schedule. In the event the Contractor is determined not to be in compliance, he/she will be notified immediately in writing. If the Contractor does not correct the work progress to comply with the approved revised schedule by the end of the month of notification, payment for work performed during the period of non-compliance will be reduced according to the following:

- 1st Month - Reduction = 30% X work performed (Month Only)
- 2nd Month - Reduction = 40% X work performed (Month Only)
- 3rd Month - Reduction = 50% X work performed (Month Only)
- Subsequent Month - Reduction = 50% work performed (Month Only)

E. The first month (the month of notification) is that month in which notification is made. Each month's reduction will be assessed only for that work performed during that specific month. The reduction will be cumulative for the entire period of non-compliance; i.e., thirty percent (30%) payment reduction for the work performed during the first month, plus forty percent (40%) payment reduction for work performed during the second month, plus fifty percent (50%) payment reduction for work performed during the third month, and plus fifty percent (50%) payment reduction for work performed in each succeeding month of non-compliance thereafter. When the work progress becomes in compliance with the approved schedule, or the approved revised schedule, all withheld monies will be paid to the Contractor with the next regular estimate.

F. The Contractor shall anticipate possible delays and shall be prepared to supplement and revise his/her construction methods accordingly. The Contractor assumes the risk of all suspensions of or delays in performance of the contract, regardless of length thereof, arising from all causes whatsoever, whether or not relating to this contract, including wrongful acts or omissions of the City or its Contractors or subcontractors except only to the extent, if any, that compensation or an extension of time may be due as expressly provided for elsewhere in this contract for such suspension or delays, and, subject only to such exception, the Contractor shall bear the burden of all costs, expenses and liabilities which he/she may incur in connection with such suspensions or delays, and all such suspensions, delays, costs, expenses and liabilities of any nature whatsoever, whether or not provided for in this contract, shall conclusively be deemed to have been within the contemplation of the parties.

G. Notwithstanding any provisions of this contract, whether relating to time of performance or otherwise, City makes no representation or guarantee as to when the construction site or

any part thereof will be available for the performance of the contract, or as to whether conditions at the construction site will be such as to permit the contract to be performed thereon without interruption or by any particular sequence or method or as to whether the performance of the contract can be completed by the time required under this contract or by any other time.

H. Wherever in connection with this contract it is required, expressly or otherwise, that City shall perform any act relating to the contract, including making available or furnishing any real property, materials or other things, no guarantee is made by the City as to the time of such performance and the delay of City in fulfilling such requirement shall not result in liability of any kind on the part of City except only to the extent, if any, that an extension of time or compensation may be due as expressly provided for in this contract.

I. If the contract requires unforeseen work or work and materials in greater amounts than those set forth in the contract, then additional calendar days may be considered at the discretion of the City. However, the completion time can only be changed by the execution of a signed agreement. An extension of time will only be considered when a claim for such extension is submitted to the City in writing by the Contractor within fourteen (14) calendar days from the time when any alleged cause of delay occurs.

**11-18 CONSTRUCTION CONTINGENCY ALLOWANCE:** A construction contingency allowance, in the amount designated in the PROPOSAL, is provided to allow for expeditious handling of unforeseen conditions that may arise during the course of the Project and may only be used with the concurrence of the City. Before contingency work is performed, the Contractor shall submit a proposed price for the work to the City and shall obtain written approval before proceeding with the additional work. Any balance of funds remaining in the construction contingency allowance at the close of the project belong to and shall remain with the City.

**11-19 MATERIALS AND WORKMANSHIP: WARRANTIES AND GUARANTEES:** Under the terms of the warranties which arise from these contract documents and/or by the terms of any applicable special warranties required by the contract documents, if any of the work in accordance with this contract is found to not be in accordance with the requirements of the contract documents, the Contractor shall correct such work promptly after receipt of written notice from the City or other entity as the contract documents may provide. This obligation shall survive acceptance of the work under the contract and termination of the contract. If Contractor fails within a reasonable time after written notice to correct defective work or to remove and replace rejected work, or if Contractor fails to perform the work in accordance with the contract documents, or if Contractor fails to comply with any provision in the contract document, either the City or its designee may, after seven (7) days written notice to Contractor, correct and remedy any such deficiency at the expense of the Contractor.

**11-20 DEFECTIVE MATERIALS, EQUIPMENT OR IN-PLACE CONSTRUCTION:**  
A. Materials and equipment not conforming to the requirements of these specifications will be rejected and shall be removed immediately from the site of the work, unless permitted

to remain by the Inspector. Rejected materials, the defects of which have been subsequently corrected, shall be considered as new material.

- B. In-place construction not conforming to the requirements of these specifications will be removed and replaced/reworked at the Contractor's expense as deemed appropriate by the City. Tests made on in-place construction which has been replaced or reworked due to failure to meet project specifications will be authorized by the City and the cost of such tests will be the expense of the Contractor. Testing will be performed by testing company under contract with the City at the rates specified by that contract.

**11-21 QUALITY ASSURANCE/QUALITY CONTROL (QA/QC):**

- A. The City shall have the authority to test materials, equipment and in-place construction to verify compliance with project specifications. Unless otherwise noted within these Special Provisions, the expense of testing shall be paid for by the City.
- B. If there are any failing tests, the Contractor shall be responsible for all cost of additional testing until compliant. The failure of the City to make any tests shall in no way relieve the Contractor of his/her responsibility to provide materials, equipment, and in-place construction which comply with project specifications.
- C. The Contractor shall provide such facilities as the City may require for collecting and forwarding samples and shall not, without specific written permission of the City, use the materials represented by the samples until tests have been made and materials approved for use. The Contractor will furnish adequate samples without charge to the City.
- D. All testing shall be coordinated through the Inspector. Results of tests shall be based on findings by the City's contracted testing facility.

**11-22 SAFETY DATA SHEET:** Contractor shall provide a copy of Safety Data Sheets (SDS), product specifications, Manufacturer's warranty, and application instructions to City for approval prior to commencing work, if applicable. (Rev 9/2019)

**11-23 SATURDAY OR CITY HOLIDAY INSPECTION:**

- A. In an effort to limit face-to-face contact and maintain continuing operations, the City will accept credit card payments over the phone for Saturday/Holiday Inspection fees. (Rev. 4/2020)
- B. Any Contractor requiring the services of an Inspector on Saturdays will be charged a flat rate of \$40.00 per hour for inspection services. In addition, the Contractor will also be required to pay a non-refundable \$100.00 deposit to the City. Contractors will notify the Department of Public Works and Transportation by 4:30 PM on the preceding Thursday at 817-459-6550 to request Saturday/Holiday Inspection Services. If the request is not submitted by the deadline, the Contractor will not be able to work on the requested Saturday/Holiday. City Staff from the Planning and Development Department will contact the Contractor Friday by 10:00 AM to process a credit card over the telephone. For each

transaction, there is a 2.75% third party credit card processing fee. This is not a city fee. A receipt will be emailed to the Contractor. (Rev. 4/2020)

C. Following the performance of inspection services, an invoice will be prepared and mailed to the Contractor. The \$100.00 deposit will be deducted from the total invoice amount. All invoices must be paid in order for the Contractor to receive the retained funds at the termination of a project, and/or to receive a final project acceptance.

D. The Contractor will be charged only for the hours worked. If the Contractor works only 2.5 hours, no invoice will be generated (2.5 hours x \$40 = \$100 deposit already received). If an Inspector watches several projects and the remitted deposits equal or surpass the amount needed to pay for his or her hours, no invoices will be delivered. However, if the \$100.00 deposit is delivered and the Contractor is unable to work for any reason, including weather, the \$100.00 fee will not be refunded.

E. Construction Services management will determine the appropriate number of Inspectors necessary and which Inspectors will work on each Saturday.

F. No money will be exchanged in the field.

G. Overtime during the work week is not subjected to the required process listed above. Night time tie-ins are also exempt from these rules when they are done in an effort to reduce the impact of water outages to customers.

H. No work will be permitted on Sundays without prior approval from the Construction Services Manager. If approved to work on Sunday, the Saturday inspection rates will apply.

I. Holiday Schedule

1. Below are holidays observed by the City of Arlington. Actual date/day that the holiday is observed changes yearly based on the calendar. No work will be permitted except in the most extreme circumstances and with prior approval from the Construction Services Manager. If approved to work on a holiday, the Saturday inspection rates will apply.

- » Martin Luther King Day
- » President's Day
- » Good Friday
- » New Year's Day
- » Memorial Day
- » Juneteenth
- » Independence Day
- » Labor Day
- » Thanksgiving Day
- » Thanksgiving Friday
- » Christmas Eve

» Christmas Day

(Rev. 1/2022)

2. In addition to the above, no work will be permitted on the weekend adjoining a holiday that falls on Friday or Monday.

(Rev. 1/2022)

**11-24 WORK PERFORMED WITHOUT BENEFIT OF INSPECTION:**

- A. **Contractor shall provide the City 24 hours notice prior to any construction.** Any time work is being performed on bid items, work that supports bid items, or work that requires lane closures, an Inspector must be present. Work performed without the proper inspection will be consider unauthorized, and at the option of the Construction Services Manager may not be measured and paid for and may require removal at the Contractor's expense.
- B. If the Contractor fails to satisfactorily repair, replace or remove the unauthorized work or materials immediately upon receipt of written notice, the City will have authority to cause such remediation to be performed and to deduct the cost thereof from any monies due or to become due to the Contractor.
- C. If there is ever any question as to what requires inspection, please check with the assigned Inspector, Inspector Supervisor, or Construction Services Manager. General clean-up and similar items of work that have no direct pay can be performed without the benefit of inspection.

**11-25 MONTHLY ESTIMATE:**

- A. Monthly pay estimates will be processed at the beginning of each month for work performed during the prior month. Monthly pay estimates shall be submitted no later than the 1<sup>st</sup> day of each month. Assuming there are no issues encountered during the standard process, payment will be processed within thirty (30) days from the end of the prior month.  
(Rev. 9/2020)
- B. Where multiple locations are included in the contract, City may require measurements to be performed on a daily basis. The Contractor is required to be present whenever (monthly or final) quantities are measured by the Inspector. The Inspector will coordinate with the Contractor to schedule a mutually agreeable date and time (including Saturdays) to perform the measuring. If the Contractor chooses not to be present when quantities are measured by the Inspector, the Contractor agrees to accept the Inspector's measurements. Invoices shall be submitted for the actual work performed.
- C. Submittal of monthly pay estimate shall include:
  - » Spreadsheet of itemized request (form provided by City)
  - » SWPPP Report
  - » Invoices
  - » Tickets
  - » Other supporting documentation (where applicable or as required by the City)
- D. Submittal of monthly pay estimate to the City's Diversity Management System (B2Gnow), including all payments to subcontractors on the Contract no later than 5 business days after City has agreed on quantities in monthly estimate.

- E. Failure to submit by the deadline or without the required documents will result in the pay estimate being processed in the following month.

**11-26 OWNER NOTIFICATION:**

- A. When work performed has the potential of disrupting businesses or homestead, including but not limited to water cutoff or driveway reconstruction, Contractor shall notify the business owners, occupants and residents in writing forty-eight (48) hours prior to commencing work. It is incumbent upon the Contractor to provide and place door hangers by the required time. Cost for producing the door hangers shall be subsidiary to various bid items.
- B. Door hangers shall be printed in color, in English & Spanish, on 65 pound, white card stock paper and be designed as indicated below. Any deviation will require prior approval from the City. The City will provide a full scaled colored pdf version of the doorhangers to the successful contractor for production.

(Rev 1/2019)



## LIMITED STREET PARKING



## LIMITED STREET PARKING



### *Hello!*

We are making progress on your street's project and need your help to finish it!

### How does this construction affect me?

The City of Arlington is making improvements in your neighborhood. With that improvement comes construction. This construction may at times affect access in and around your street.

### What do I need to do?

To help ensure that this project is completed in a timely fashion with minimal interruptions and to prevent damage to your personal vehicles, please remove any vehicles, trailers, etc. that may interfere with the construction process and avoid parking on the street, Monday through Friday from 7:00 a.m. to 5:00 p.m. on

Date	To Date

Please remember to tell any guest visiting you about this parking limitation.

### What happens if I am unable to move my vehicles?

If vehicles are not moved, the towing of vehicles will be at the owner's expense of at least \$200 (Article XIV, Section 14.04 Streets and Sidewalks).

### Who can I talk to?

For any additional information or questions, please contact the following contractor or City staff member.

Contractor Name	
Contractor Phone Number	
City Inspector	
City Inspector Phone Number 817-459-6550	Date

We appreciate your cooperation and apologize for any inconvenience this may cause. The City of Arlington appreciates your help in moving this project forward!

### *Hello!*

We are making progress on your street's project and need your help to finish it!

### How does this construction affect me?

The City of Arlington is making improvements in your neighborhood. With that improvement comes construction. This construction may at times affect access in and around your street.

### What do I need to do?

To help ensure that this project is completed in a timely fashion with minimal interruptions and to prevent damage to your personal vehicles, please remove any vehicles, trailers, etc. that may interfere with the construction process and avoid parking on the street, Monday through Friday from 7:00 a.m. to 5:00 p.m. on

Date	To Date

Please remember to tell any guest visiting you about this parking limitation.

### What happens if I am unable to move my vehicles?

If vehicles are not moved, the towing of vehicles will be at the owner's expense of at least \$200 (Article XIV, Section 14.04 Streets and Sidewalks).

### Who can I talk to?

For any additional information or questions, please contact the following contractor or City staff member.

Contractor Name	
Contractor Phone Number	
City Inspector	
City Inspector Phone Number 817-459-6550	Date

We appreciate your cooperation and apologize for any inconvenience this may cause. The City of Arlington appreciates your help in moving this project forward!



## ESTACIONAMIENTO LIMITADO EN LA CALLE

**¡Hola!**

Estamos progresando en el proyecto de su calle y necesitamos su ayuda para terminar.

### ¿Como me afecta la construcción?

La City of Arlington esta mejorando su barrio. Con el mejoramiento viene construcción. Esta construcción puede afectar el acceso de su calle y las calles alrededor.

### ¿Que necesito hacer?

Para garantizar que este proyecto se termine a tiempo con minimas interrupciones y para prevenir los daño a su vehículo, por favor de mover sus vehículos, trailas, etc. que puede interferir con el proceso de construcción y evitar estacionar en el calle, Lunes a Viernes de las 7:00 AM a 5:00PM

Fecha	Hasta Fecha
-------	-------------

Por favor recuerda informar a sus visitantes de el estacionamiento limitado.

### ¿Que pasa si no puedo mover mi vehículo?

Si los vehículos no se han movido, vehículos estacionados seran remolcados y será la responsabilidad financiera de el dueño de los gastos con minimo de \$200 (Article XIV, Section 14.04 Streets and Sidewalks).

### ¿A quien puedo hablar?

Para información adicional o preguntas, por favor llama al siguiente contratista o personal de la ciudad.

Nombre de contratista	
Telefono de contratista	
Inspector de la ciudad	
Telefono de Inspector 817-459-6550	Fecha

Apreciamos su cooperación y nos disculpamos por la inconveniencia que esto puede causar. La City of Arlington apreciamos su ayuda en el avance del proyecto!



## ESTACIONAMIENTO LIMITADO EN LA CALLE

**¡Hola!**

Estamos progresando en el proyecto de su calle y necesitamos su ayuda para terminar.

### ¿Como me afecta la construcción?

La City of Arlington esta mejorando su barrio. Con el mejoramiento viene construcción. Esta construcción puede afectar el acceso de su calle y las calles alrededor.

### ¿Que necesito hacer?

Para garantizar que este proyecto se termine a tiempo con minimas interrupciones y para prevenir los daño a su vehículo, por favor de mover sus vehículos, trailas, etc. que puede interferir con el proceso de construcción y evitar estacionar en el calle, Lunes a Viernes de las 7:00 AM a 5:00PM

Fecha	Hasta Fecha
-------	-------------

Por favor recuerda informar a sus visitantes de el estacionamiento limitado.

### ¿Que pasa si no puedo mover mi vehículo?

Si los vehículos no se han movido, vehículos estacionados seran remolcados y será la responsabilidad financiera de el dueño de los gastos con minimo de \$200 (Article XIV, Section 14.04 Streets and Sidewalks).

### ¿A quien puedo hablar?

Para información adicional o preguntas, por favor llama al siguiente contratista o personal de la ciudad.

Nombre de contratista	
Telefono de contratista	
Inspector de la ciudad	
Telefono de Inspector 817-459-6550	Fecha

Apreciamos su cooperación y nos disculpamos por la inconveniencia que esto puede causar. La City of Arlington apreciamos su ayuda en el avance del proyecto!

## LIMITED DRIVEWAY ACCESS



## LIMITED DRIVEWAY ACCESS



### *Hello!*

We are making progress on your street's project and need your help to finish it!

### **How does this construction affect me?**

The City of Arlington is making improvements in your neighborhood. With that improvement comes construction, which may at times affect access in and around street.

### **What do I need to do?**

To help ensure that this project is completed in a timely fashion with minimal interruptions and to prevent damage to your personal vehicles, please remove any vehicles, trailers, etc. that may interfere with the construction process of your driveway and avoid parking on the street, Monday through Friday from 7:00 a.m. to 5:00 p.m. on

Date	To Date

### **Your driveway will be closed during this time.**

Please remember to tell any guest visiting you about this parking limitation.

### **What happens if I am unable to move my vehicles?**

If vehicles are not moved, the towing of vehicles will be at the owner's expense of at least \$200 (Article XIV, Section 14.04 Streets and Sidewalks).

### **Who can I talk to?**

For any additional information or questions, please contact the following contractor or City staff member.

Contractor Name	
Contractor Phone Number	
City Inspector	
City Inspector Phone Number 817-459-6550	Date

We appreciate your cooperation and apologize for any inconvenience this may cause. The City of Arlington appreciates your help in moving this project forward!

### *Hello!*

We are making progress on your street's project and need your help to finish it!

### **How does this construction affect me?**

The City of Arlington is making improvements in your neighborhood. With that improvement comes construction, which may at times affect access in and around your street.

### **What do I need to do?**

To help ensure that this project is completed in a timely fashion with minimal interruptions and to prevent damage to your personal vehicles, please remove any vehicles, trailers, etc. that may interfere with the construction process of your driveway and avoid parking on the street, Monday through Friday from 7:00 a.m. to 5:00 p.m. on

Date	To Date

### **Your driveway will be closed during this time.**

Please remember to tell any guest visiting you about this parking limitation.

### **What happens if I am unable to move my vehicles?**

If vehicles are not moved, the towing of vehicles will be at the owner's expense of at least \$200 (Article XIV, Section 14.04 Streets and Sidewalks).

### **Who can I talk to?**

For any additional information or questions, please contact the following contractor or City staff member.

Contractor Name	
Contractor Phone Number	
City Inspector	
City Inspector Phone Number 817-459-6550	Date

We appreciate your cooperation and apologize for any inconvenience this may cause. The City of Arlington appreciates your help in moving this project forward!



## ACCESO LIMITADO EN LA ENTRADA DE VEHÍCULO

## ACCESO LIMITADO EN LA ENTRADA DE VEHÍCULO

**¡Hola!**

Estamos progresando en el proyecto de su calle; necesitamos su ayuda para terminar.

**¡Hola!**

Estamos progresando en el proyecto de su calle; necesitamos su ayuda para terminar.

### ¿Como me afecta la construcción?

La City of Arlington esta mejorando su barrio. Con el mejoramiento viene construcción. Esta construcción puede afectar el acceso de su calle y las calles alrededor.

### ¿Como me afecta la construcción?

La City of Arlington esta mejorando su barrio. Con el mejoramiento viene construcción. Esta construcción puede afectar el acceso de su calle y las calles alrededor.

### ¿Que necesito hacer?

Para garantizar que este proyecto se termine a tiempo con minimas interrupciones y para prevenir daño a su vehículo, por favor de mover sus vehículos, trailas, etc. que puede interferir con la construcción de su entrada de vehículo y evitar estacionar en el calle, Lunes a Viernes de las 7:00 AM a 5:00PM.

### ¿Que necesito hacer?

Para garantizar que este proyecto se termine a tiempo con minimas interrupciones y para prevenir daño a su vehículo, por favor de mover sus vehículos, trailas, etc. que puede interferir con la construcción de su entrada de vehículo y evitar estacionar en el calle, Lunes a Viernes de las 7:00 AM a 5:00PM.

Fecha	Hasta Fecha
-------	-------------

Fecha	Hasta Fecha
-------	-------------

**No tendrá acceso a su entrada de vehículos durante este tiempo.**

Por favor recuerda informar a sus visitantes de el estacionamiento limitado.

**No tendrá acceso a su entrada de vehículos durante este tiempo.**

Por favor recuerda informar a sus visitantes de el estacionamiento limitado.

### ¿Que pasa si no puedo mover mi vehículo?

Si los vehículos no se han movido, vehículos estacionados, seran remolcados y será la responsabilidad financiera de el dueño de los gastos con mínimo de \$200 (Article XIV, Section 14.04 Streets and Sidewalks).

### ¿Que pasa si no puedo mover mi vehículo?

Si los vehículos no se han movido, vehículos estacionados, seran remolcados y será la responsabilidad financiera de el dueño de los gastos con mínimo de \$200 (Article XIV, Section 14.04 Streets and Sidewalks).

### ¿A quien puedo hablar?

Para información adicional o preguntas, por favor llamar al siguiente contratista o personal de la ciudad.

Nombre de contratista	
Telefono de contratista	
Inspector de la ciudad	
Telefono de Inspector 817-459-6550	Fecha

### ¿A quien puedo hablar?

Para información adicional o preguntas, por favor llamar al siguiente contratista o personal de la ciudad.

Nombre de contratista	
Telefono de contratista	
Inspector de la ciudad	
Telefono de Inspector 817-459-6550	Fecha

Apreciamos su cooperación y nos disculpamos por la inconveniencia que esto puede causar. La City of Arlington apreciamos su ayuda en el avance del proyecto!

Apreciamos su cooperación y nos disculpamos por la inconveniencia que esto puede causar. La City of Arlington apreciamos su ayuda en el avance del proyecto!

## UPCOMING WATER SHUTOFF



## UPCOMING WATER SHUTOFF



The City of Arlington is working to improve water services to your neighborhood and will be performing necessary utility work that requires turning off your water.

The City of Arlington is working to improve water services to your neighborhood and will be performing necessary utility work that requires turning off your water.

### When will my water be turned off?

From	To
On	
Comments	

### When will my water be turned off?

From	To
On	
Comments	

### How can I get updates?

Go to [www.arlingtontx.gov/wateroutages](http://www.arlingtontx.gov/wateroutages) or sign up for email notifications by registering your account at [www.arlingtontx.gov/wateronline](http://www.arlingtontx.gov/wateronline).

### How can I get updates?

Go to [www.arlingtontx.gov/wateroutages](http://www.arlingtontx.gov/wateroutages) or sign up for email notifications by registering your account at [www.arlingtontx.gov/wateronline](http://www.arlingtontx.gov/wateronline).

### Who can I talk to?

For any additional information or questions, please contact the following contractor or City staff member.

Contractor Name	
Contractor Phone Number	
City Inspector	Time
City Inspector Phone Number 817-459-6550	Date

### Who can I talk to?

For any additional information or questions, please contact the following contractor or City staff member.

Contractor Name	
Contractor Phone Number	
City Inspector	Time
City Inspector Phone Number 817-459-6550	Date

We appreciate your cooperation and apologize for any inconvenience this may cause. This work is necessary for the enhancement of your neighborhood and the City of Arlington.

We appreciate your cooperation and apologize for any inconvenience this may cause. This work is necessary for the enhancement of your neighborhood and the City of Arlington.



## APAGADO PROGRAMADO DE AGUA

La City of Arlington esta mejorando el servicio de agua en su barrio y estaremos haciendo las necesarias instalaciones que requiere apagar el servicio de agua.

### ¿Cuándo se apagará mi servicio de agua?

Desde	Hasta
En	
Comentarios	

### ¿Como recibo actualizaciones?

Se puede recibir actualizaciones en [www.arlingtontx.gov/wateroutages](http://www.arlingtontx.gov/wateroutages) o se puede registrarse en [www.arlingtontx.gov/wateronline](http://www.arlingtontx.gov/wateronline) para recibir notificaciones por correo electronico.

### ¿A quien puedo hablar?

Para información adicional o preguntas, por favor llamar al siguiente contratista o personal de la ciudad.

Nombre de contratista	
Telefono de contratista	
Inspector de la ciudad	
Telefono de Inspector 817-459-6550	Fecha

Apreciamos su cooperación y nos disculpamos por la inconveniencia que esto puede causar. ¡La City of Arlington apreciamos su ayuda en el avance del proyecto!



## APAGADO PROGRAMADO DE AGUA

La City of Arlington esta mejorando el servicio de agua en su barrio y estaremos haciendo las necesarias instalaciones que requiere apagar el servicio de agua.

### ¿Cuándo se apagará mi servicio de agua?

Desde	Hasta
En	
Comentarios	

### ¿Como recibo actualizaciones?

Se puede recibir actualizaciones en [www.arlingtontx.gov/wateroutages](http://www.arlingtontx.gov/wateroutages) o se puede registrarse en [www.arlingtontx.gov/wateronline](http://www.arlingtontx.gov/wateronline) para recibir notificaciones por correo electronico.

### ¿A quien puedo hablar?

Para información adicional o preguntas, por favor llamar al siguiente contratista o personal de la ciudad.

Nombre de contratista	
Telefono de contratista	
Inspector de la ciudad	
Telefono de Inspector 817-459-6550	Fecha

Apreciamos su cooperación y nos disculpamos por la inconveniencia que esto puede causar. ¡La City of Arlington apreciamos su ayuda en el avance del proyecto!

**11-27 SIGNS FOR BUSINESSES:**

- A. Weatherproof signs directing motorists to adjacent business entrances shall be provided by the Contractor and used during construction at locations directed by the City. The signs shall be approved by the City prior to fabrication and installation.
- B. The sign shall include the business name, shall be at a minimum of 18-inches by 24-inches and have a minimum of 3-inches tall by 2-inches wide lettering. The sign shall be placed such that it is visible from the street to help direct patrons to adjacent businesses but shall not obstruct traffic visibility for vehicles exiting the driveway.
- C. It will be the Contractor's responsibility to maintain the signs until such time as the City agrees they can be removed. A bid item has been included which shall cover all costs related to fabricating, installing, and maintaining the signs.

**11-28 PROJECT SIGNS:**

- A. Contractor shall provide and install a minimum of four (4) project signs. Fewer signs may be allowed upon approval by the City.
- B. Generally, project signs shall be located at the beginning and end of the project and on major intersecting streets. Locations of signs and specific information on signs shall be approved by the City prior to fabrication of signs.
- C. Signs shall be in accordance with the appropriate sign detail for the project. Construction shall be on 3/4-inch weatherproof (marine), 4-foot x 8-foot plywood and the painting/graphics shall be accomplished with good quality paint which will not weather or fade during the life of the contract. A jpeg file of the graphics is available on the City's web page, <http://www.arlingtontx.gov/details>. Color shall be similar in nature. Any deviation will require prior approval from the City. (Rev 4/2019)
- D. Signs shall be placed in prominent locations and maintained in good condition until the completion of the project. Damaged or defaced signs will be repaired or replaced within two (2) calendar days at the Contractor's expense. The cost of the plywood sign(s) shall be considered subsidiary to the unit prices bid on this project.

**11-29 QUANTITIES:**

- A. Quantities provided in the plans are superseded by quantities included in this contract. Quantities shown on plan sheets are for guidance only. (Rev. 8/2021)

**11-30 CONTRACTOR SELF-PERFORMANCE:**

- A. The contractor shall use its own personnel and equipment to perform the primary work type identified in this contract. Primary work includes: Sidewalks. Qualified subcontractors may be used to perform any other work types in this contract. (Rev. 8/2021)

END OF SECTION

**SECTION NO. 12**

**SPECIAL PROVISIONS – GENERAL CONSTRUCTION SPECIFICATIONS**

**NUMERICAL LISTING**

Section No.	
12-01	STORMWATER MANAGEMENT CONTROLS
12-02	FILTER FABRICS
12-03	DETOURS AND BARRICADES
12-04	TEMPORARY TRAFFIC SIGNALS
12-05	PROTECTION OF THE PUBLIC
12-06	PROTECTION OF FLOODPLAIN
12-07	PROTECTION OF ADJACENT PROPERTY
12-08	PROTECTION OF ADJACENT LANDSCAPING IMPROVEMENTS
12-09	PROTECTION & CLEANING OF EXISTING STORM OR SANITARY SEWERS
12-10	MAINTENANCE OF ADEQUATE DRAINAGE
12-11	TEMPORARY ACCESS TO PRIVATE PROPERTIES
12-12	CRUSHED STONE BAD WEATHER PROTECTION
12-13	USE OF PRIVATE PROPERTY
12-14	USE OF CITY PARKS
12-15	CONSECUTIVE STREET CONSTRUCTION
12-16	TOWING OF VEHICLES
12-17	CONSTRUCTION WATER
12-18	DAILY CLEANUP & REMOVAL ITEMS
12-19	DUST CONTROL
12-20	MOWING DURING CONSTRUCTION
12-21	EXISTING UTILITIES
12-22	SITE PREPARATION
12-23	TREE REMOVAL
12-24	TREE TRIMMING
12-25	SITE GRADING
12-26	BORROW
12-27	FILLING
12-28	SELECT FILL



- 12-29 SPRINKLER RELOCATIONS
- 12-30 CRUSHED STONE CUSHION
- 12-31 BACKFILL & BACKFILL MATERIAL
- 12-32 MECHANICALLY COMPACTED BACKFILL
- ~~12-33 TRENCHLESS TECHNOLOGY - N/A~~
- 12-34 BACKFILL AND CLEANUP
- ~~12-35 FLOWABLE BACKFILL - N/A~~
- 12-36 TEMPORARY STREET REPAIR
- 12-37 VERTICAL ADJUSTMENT OF WATER VALVES, MANHOLES, ACCESS CHAMBERS AND CLEANOUTS
- 12-38 GREEN CEMENT
- 12-39 REINFORCING STEEL
- 12-40 RESTORATION OF EXISTING PAVED SURFACES
- ~~12-41 GALVANIZED GABIONS WITH PVC COATING - N/A~~
- 12-42 CONDUIT
- 12-43 SLOPE EROSION CONTROL
- 12-44 TOPSOIL
- 12-45 HYDRO-MULCH SEEDING
- 12-46 SODDING/TURFGRASS PLANTING
- 12-47 FINAL CLEANUP
- 12-48 FINAL INSPECTION

## SECTION NO. 12

### SPECIAL PROVISIONS – GENERAL CONSTRUCTION SPECIFICATIONS

#### **12-01 STORMWATER MANAGEMENT CONTROLS:**

- A. This project is subject to the Texas Commission on Environmental Quality's (TCEQ) Construction General Permit under the Texas Pollutant Discharges Elimination System (TPDES) Program as well as the City's Ordinances. The City is a Municipal Separate Storm Sewer System (MS4) Operator.
- B. The Contractor is considered the Primary Operator and is responsible for the Erosion Control Plan, Stormwater Pollution Prevention Permit (SWPPP), and or Notice of Intent/Notice of Termination (NOI/NOT) as well as ongoing compliance throughout construction. The Contractor shall provide adequate erosion, sedimentation and pollution controls, and shall be solely responsible for day to day operations, inspections, and maintenance of stormwater controls. It shall be the Contractor's responsibility to ensure no sediment leaves the site.
- C. The City is considered the Secondary Operator and has control over specifications, plans and the Erosion Control Plan and/or SWPPP. The Contractor shall comply with all requests by the City for maintenance of stormwater controls or general site maintenance to prevent erosion, sedimentation, or pollution.
- D. The information contained in the Erosion Control Plan, SWPPP, NOI and/or Site Notices shall be in accordance with the TPDES Construction General Permit and City's Ordinances. All plans, permits, and notices shall be submitted to the City for review at least fifteen (15) calendar days prior to commencement of construction activities. Final plans, permits and notices shall be submitted to the City and TCEQ (if applicable). Notices must be posted on site prior to commencement of construction activities.
- E. All plans and permits shall be prepared and certified by a Licensed Professional Engineer or other professional, approved by the City, certified in a discipline that includes erosion and sediment control principles appropriate for the site in accordance with City Ordinances.
- F. For projects that disturb less than twelve thousand (12,000) square feet that are not part of a Larger Common Plan of Development, no submittals are required. Installation, inspection and maintenance of stormwater controls shall be in accordance with standards set forth in the TPDES Construction General Permit.
- G. For projects that disturb between twelve thousand (12,000) square feet and 1-acre that are not part of a Larger Common Plan of Development, the Contractor shall prepare an Erosion Control Plan (if it is not provided in the construction plans). Inspection and maintenance of stormwater controls shall be in accordance with standards set forth in the TPDES Construction General Permit.

H. For projects that disturb between 1-acre and 5-acres, the Contractor shall provide a site specific SWPPP and two (2) separate Site Notices (one to be signed by the Contractor and one to be signed by the City). The SWPPP shall be prepared and certified by a licensed professional civil engineer or by a certified professional who is familiar with the TCEQ TPDES Construction General Permit requirements. The SWPPP shall be subject to approval by the City and/or TCEQ and shall contain information as required by the TPDES General Permit Regulations and the City's checklist included in the City's Design Criteria Manual.

I. For projects larger than 5-acres, the Contractor shall provide a site specific SWPPP and two (2) separate Site Notices (one to be signed by the Contractor and one to be signed by the City). The SWPPP shall be prepared and certified by a licensed professional civil engineer or by a certified professional who is familiar with the TCEQ TPDES Construction General Permit requirements. The SWPPP shall be subject to approval by the City and/or TCEQ and shall contain information as required by the TPDES General Permit Regulations and the City's checklist included in the City's Design Criteria Manual. The Contractor shall submit a NOI to TCEQ and obtain a site specific TPDES authorization number prior to the commencement of construction activities. The Contractor shall submit a NOT within thirty (30) days of project completion to TCEQ. Copy of the NOI and NOT must be submitted to the City.

J. The following shall be maintained on the project site by the Contractor at all times:

1. Post near main entrance to project site or at project site office:
  - a. Site Notices (signed by the Contractor and the City) depending on project size.
  - b. Local contact person with phone number.
  - c. Brief description of project.
  - d. Location of SWPPP (if applicable)
2. SWPPP including any revisions (if applicable).

K. **The stormwater controls must be in place on the project prior to any construction activity. Any stockpiles of unusable items and/or excavated materials shall be removed from the project site within seven (7) days.** In case of failure on the part of the Contractor to control soil erosion, pollution and/or siltation, the City reserves the right to employ outside assistance or to use City forces to provide the necessary corrective measures. Such incurred direct costs plus project engineering costs will be billed to the Contractor. Contractor shall not begin work to the detriment of work already begun. Contractor shall conduct operations so as to impose a minimum interference to traffic. Monthly pay estimates to the Contractor may be withheld until Contractor is in compliance.

- L. A lump sum bid item in the amount designated in the PROPOSAL has been to pay the Contractor for SWPPP preparation as well as providing, installing, and maintaining the physical stormwater control measures throughout construction and removal of all items and structures constructed for stormwater pollution protection once vegetation is established. Twenty five percent (25%) of this amount will be paid on the first monthly pay estimate with the remainder amount prorated equally to the remainder months of the contract time.
- M. Contractor shall provide an electronic file in pdf format of the final SWPPP, including all revisions, inspections and NOT (if applicable) with the final payment estimate.

**12-02 FILTER FABRICS:**

- A. The filter fabric shall be of a synthetic material that will allow stormwater to freely flow through while trapping sediment and debris. The geotextile shall be non-biodegradable and resistant to degradation by ultraviolet exposure and resistant to contaminants commonly encountered in storm water.
- B. When applicable, the applications and uses of the filter fabric include but are not limited to the selection listed below. The filter fabrics have the following Minimum Average Roll Values (MARV) for physical properties:

			Applications/Uses				
			Silt Fence	Sub-Drain, French Drain	Dewatering	Separation, Pipe Embedment, Concrete Channels, Concrete Slope Protection, Weepholes	Construction Access
Tensile Strength	ASTM D-4632	LBS	100x100	120	200	250	300
CBR Puncture	ASTM D-6241	LBS	250	300	600	700	850
Apparent Opening Size (max)	ASTM D-4751	US Sieve (max)	30	70	70	80	80
Apparent Opening Size (min)	ASTM D-4751	US Sieve (min)	80	80	80	100	100
Water Flow Rate	ASTM D-4491	GAL/MIN/	8	120	85	75	75

UV Resistance	ASTM: D-4355	% (500 HRS)	80	70	70	70	70
Woven / Nonwoven			Woven	Nonwoven	Nonwoven	Nonwoven	Nonwoven

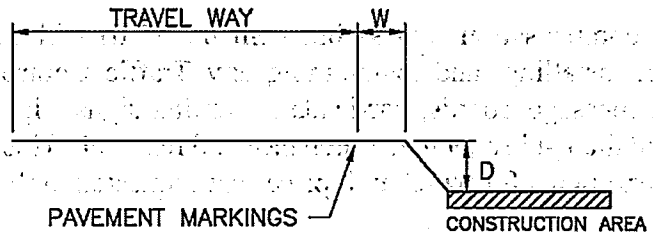
**12-03 DETOURS AND BARRICADES:**

- A. After coordinating and discussing plans with the Project Manager and Inspector the Contractor shall submit one (1) copy of a Traffic Control Plan, together with the Temporary Traffic Control Permit two (2) weeks prior to closing any street or causing any obstruction to traffic on any street to the Department of Public Works and Transportation. The Contractor shall not proceed with the implementation of the Traffic Control Plan until notified by the City that the plan has been accepted. The Traffic Control Plan shall be drawn at a scale not less than 1"=200' unless approved by the Traffic Engineer; and such that it is legible; and shall include proposed street closings, detours, barricade placements, and sign placement, including advance warning signs, temporary signals, portable message boards and pavement markings, if necessary. (Rev. 9/2021)
- B. The Contractor shall furnish and erect suitable barricades, signs, signals and appropriate pavement markings to protect motorists and pedestrians, as set forth in the latest edition of the TEXAS MANUAL ON UNIFORM TRAFFIC CONTROL DEVICES. However, vertical panels will not be allowed unless approved by the Traffic Engineer. The barricades, signs, signals and pavement markings shall be constructed, placed, and adequately maintained as set forth in the Traffic Control Plan or as directed by the City.
- C. Unless otherwise approved by the City two-way traffic shall be maintained on all roadways under construction at all times. If it becomes necessary to detour traffic off the existing paved roadway for more than seven (7) days, a hard surface driving lane, such as asphalt, shall be properly constructed and maintained by the Contractor throughout the duration of the detour. All temporary tie-ins shall be constructed to a minimum of 4-inches Type "B" asphalt over a compacted subgrade (standard compaction). Subsequent maintenance of all detours and tie-ins shall be considered subsidiary to the unit prices bid for temporary asphalt. Cutting, removing, and replacing the asphalt for utility installations, excavation, and/or liming operations shall be considered subsidiary to the initial placement of asphalt and will not be paid for each re-installation. Asphalt shall be replaced within seven (7) days of removal for these activities. A bid item is included for furnishing, installing, maintaining and final removal of the asphalt.
- D. Where pavement drop-offs occur, traffic control plans shall be in accordance as illustrated on the following "Traffic Control Device Detail," which is enclosed as part of these specifications. These guidelines are applicable to construction work where continuous pavement edges or drop-offs exist parallel and adjacent to a lane used for traffic.
- E. When performing maintenance on major arterials or as directed by the Traffic Engineer, Contractor shall use portable message boards to inform the public of the construction date,

length of project, and to expect delays. The signs shall be operational twenty-four (24) hours a day. Portable message boards shall be erected at minimum three (3) calendar days prior to beginning work or as directed by the City, and all verbiage shall be approved by the City Traffic Engineer.

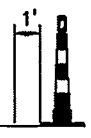
- F. No direct compensation (unless bid item included) will be made to the Contractor for furnishing, installing, and maintaining any Traffic Control Devices, including but not limited to message boards, barricades, warning signs, signals, pavement markings, and detours and their subsequent maintenance and removal. This is to be considered subsidiary to the several items for which unit prices are requested in the PROPOSAL.
- G. Should it be necessary for the City to provide and/or maintain signs, barricades, signals, and markings due to Contractors lack of response to correct deficiencies, Contractor shall be billed for the work performed by the City.

1. The width of the travel way shall be determined by the width of the travel way to be closed. The width of the travel way shall be determined by the width of the travel way to be closed. The width of the travel way shall be determined by the width of the travel way to be closed.



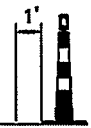
"W" GREATER THAN OR EQUAL TO 30' NO DEVICE NEEDED

"W" LESS THAN 30' BUT GREATER THAN OR EQUAL TO 12' WITHOUT CURB OR 2' WITH CURB



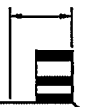
"W" LESS 12' WITHOUT CURB OR 2' WITH CURB AND:

(A) "D" = 2" TO 6"

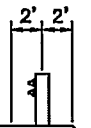


4' MIN. (6' DESIRED)

(B) "D" GREATER THAN 6" TO 24"



(C) "D" GREATER THAN 24"




MBGF, CONCRETE MEDIAN BARRIER OR "W" SECTION ON DRUMS FOR SLOPES STEEPER THAN 2:1 (IF SLOPE IS 2:1 OR FLATTER DETAIL B MAY BE USED)

## TRAFFIC CONTROL DEVICE DETAIL

ALL TRAFFIC CONTROL SHALL COMPLY WITH THE LATEST EDITION OF THE TEXAS MANUAL OF UNIFORM TRAFFIC CONTROL DEVICES

REV: 03/31/16

 CITY OF ARLINGTON, TEXAS		
<b>Traffic Control Device</b>		
DATE	SCALE	REVISION
DESIGNED BY	DRAWN BY	CHECKED BY

**12-04 TEMPORARY TRAFFIC SIGNALS:**

A. **DESCRIPTION:** Traffic signals at signalized intersections are required to remain operational at all times throughout the duration of the project. Temporary traffic signals shall be considered for all existing signalized intersections within the limits of this project. This section describes furnishing, installing, maintaining, and removing intersection temporary traffic signals. Temporary traffic signals are considered a part of the Traffic Control Plan and no additional pay will be made to the Contractor for this work.

B. **GENERAL:**

1. Contractor shall furnish, install, maintain, reconfigure, and remove temporary traffic signals in accordance with the latest TxDOT Standard Specifications. All traffic signals shall conform to the latest Texas Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices (TMUTCD)
2. Contractor shall provide temporary striping to compliment the temporary traffic signals. The temporary striping plans shall be part of the Traffic Control Plans submitted for approval.
3. City will supply signal controller cabinet and signal controller. Contractor shall contact the Traffic Operations Division to arrange for pickup of equipment.
4. Contractor shall furnish and install a temporary VIVDS system for the temporary signal. Contractor will be responsible for providing all materials necessary to make it operational.
5. The Contractor is responsible for providing connection between the temporary signal and the City's Signal Network. The Contractor shall coordinate with the City to facilitate the connection by providing three (3) business days notice to the Inspector prior to making the connection.
6. Contractor will be responsible for furnishing and installing the temporary electrical service for temporary traffic signals according to the requirements of the City. Contractor will also be responsible for all necessary permits, inspection, and coordination as needed between the City and the utility regarding billing.
7. A signal inspection of the completed temporary traffic signal installation will be performed by the City. Contractor shall provide three (3) business days notice to the Inspector to request for an inspection. The City will not approve activation until the Contractor corrects all discrepancies identified in the inspection.
8. Contractor will be responsible to verify the span heights throughout the project duration.
9. Signal faces shall be placed as directed by the City. Make every effort to give maximum visibility to all signals intended for view by the motoring public.



10. The name and telephone number of the persons qualified and assigned to maintain the temporary traffic signal shall be provided to the City. Ensure this personnel will be available twenty-four (24) hours a day; seven (7) days a week; from the start of the project until the temporary traffic signal is no longer needed. Emergency calls must be received by an individual and not by an answering machine.
11. Upon completion of new signal installation, the Contractor shall switch control of the intersection over to the new permanent cabinet. Upon deactivation of the temporary signal, Contractor will need to call the electrical utility immediately for disconnection of the temporary electrical service.
12. Upon acceptance of new signal, completely remove poles and other supports used for temporary signals. Remove the temporary traffic signal faces the same day the permanent traffic signal is turned on. Removal of remaining temporary signal components shall be completed within three (3) days of activation of the permanent signal. With approval, concrete foundations may be left 2-feet or more below finish grade. Backfill and surface restoration is the responsibility of the Contractor.
13. Any equipment furnished by the city shall be returned to the city, unless the city desires to use the equipment in the permanent signal system. All other temporary signal components shall be completely removed and retained by the Contractor.

**C. MAINTENANCE:**

1. Contractor shall immediately correct lamp/LED outages within twenty-four (24) hours of the reported outage.
2. Contractor shall respond within one (1) hour of notification to provide corrective action to any emergency such as but not limited to signal cable problems and equipment failures. If equipment becomes damaged or faulty beyond repair, replace it within one (1) working day. It will be the Contractor's responsibility to ensure sufficient amounts of materials and equipment are in stock to provide immediate repairs.
3. The City of Arlington Field Operations Division will make every effort to have permanent signals relocated, in place, and in working order as required by the time the project is accepted. If this does not occur, it will not delay project acceptance; and a separate agreement between the general Contractor, subcontractor, and the City may be written so the City takes over responsibility of payments to the traffic control subcontractor for on-going maintenance and removal of the temporary signals.

**12-05 PROTECTION OF THE PUBLIC:**

- A. The Contractor shall at all times conduct the work in such manner as to ensure the least possible obstruction to public traffic and protect the safety of the public. Any provisions necessary for the work being performed to provide public safety and convenience shall be the direct responsibility of the Contractor and shall be performed at his/her expense.

- B. Materials placed on the site, materials excavated and construction materials or equipment shall be located so as to cause as little obstruction to the public as possible.
- C. The City reserves the right to remedy any neglect on the part of the Contractor in regard to public convenience and safety which may come to our attention. The cost of such work done or material furnished by the City shall be billed to the Contractor.

**12-06 PROTECTION OF FLOODPLAIN:**

- A. No dumping will be allowed in floodplains or below the 100-year flood elevation of drainage ways. Areas in the floodplain or near drainage ways shall be protected and be undisturbed unless otherwise noted in the construction plans. No items shall be placed in the floodplain or drainage ways unless approved by the City, including but not limited to temporary stockpiling and/or material storage.
- B. Contractor is responsible for ensuring all applicable local, state and federal permits are approved prior to any land disturbance in floodplains or drainage ways. Construction activity shall not divert or obstruct the natural flow of surface water in a manner that damages surrounding properties.

**12-07 PROTECTION OF ADJACENT PROPERTY:**

- A. The Contractor shall be responsible for the protection of all fences, trees, curb and gutter, and other improvements on the property adjoining the construction sites from damage by the Contractor's equipment and personnel. The Contractor shall be responsible for notifying the property owners in advance of any trimming to be done on trees. The Contractor will notify the City of any trees, shrubs, or bushes that are not identified on the plans that must be removed by the construction. Trees not identified on the plans shall not be removed until permission is granted by the City. The Contractor will not be allowed to place excess material, forms, equipment, or any other material outside the street right-of-way without written permission of the property owner and approval of the City.
- B. For documentation purposes, the Contractor will be responsible to video the job site prior to commencing work and to provide the Inspector with a date stamped copy of the video. To avoid any dispute of damages caused, it is strongly recommended the video be of good quality and capture as much detail as possible. Contractor will be responsible for any damages caused by the Contractor or his/her subcontractors. Damages shall be repaired or resolved promptly upon notification by the Inspector. Damages to irrigation by negligence of the Contractor shall be repaired by a licensed irrigator within forty-eight (48) hours of being damaged. Contractor will be responsible for any cost incurred if City forces or City's contractor repairs the damages due to lack of response from the Contractor. Such cost shall be billed to the Contractor.

**12-08 PROTECTION OF ADJACENT LANDSCAPING IMPROVEMENTS:**

- A. The Contractor shall be responsible for the protection of any existing landscaping improvements in the medians and parkways adjacent to the project including but not limited to trees, shrubs and irrigation from damage by Contractor's equipment or personnel.

- B. If the Contractor damages any of the landscaping improvements, the Contractor shall be responsible for replacing and/or repairing the improvements at his/her expense. Monthly pay estimates may be withheld until the replacement or repair has been fully performed. If the Contractor feels any of the landscaping improvements are in conflict with the project and must be removed or have prior damage, the Contractor shall notify the City prior to removal of any landscaping improvements.

**12-09 PROTECTION & CLEANING OF EXISTING STORM OR SANITARY SEWERS:**

- A. If the Contractor, through carelessness or negligence, obstructs the flow of or deposits any materials into any existing storm or sanitary sewer lines, the Contractor shall provide the necessary equipment and labor (or hire a subcontractor approved by the City) to clean and televise the affected lines. The limits of the lines to be cleaned and televised will be determined by the Inspector.
- B. The identified lines shall be cleaned within forty-eight (48) hours of notification. In emergency situations, timeline for cleaning the lines will be determined by the Inspector. After cleaning, the Contractor shall televise and videotape the lines. Video tapes shall be delivered to the Inspector so they can be reviewed and approved for acceptance of the cleaning work.

**12-10 MAINTENANCE OF ADEQUATE DRAINAGE:** Contractor shall maintain adequate drainage at all times during construction. Changing of natural runoff flow locations or concentrating flows to a point of potential harm to the adjacent property will not be allowed.

**12-11 TEMPORARY ACCESS TO PRIVATE PROPERTIES:**

- A. The Contractor shall maintain all private drives in an accessible condition to allow residents ingress and egress before leaving the job site, except during the placing and curing of drive approaches. All commercial drives and other locations with high traffic volumes, as directed by the City, shall be a minimum of 4-inches Type "B" asphalt over a compacted subgrade (standard compaction). Subsequent maintenance of drives shall be considered subsidiary to the unit prices bid. Cutting, removing, and replacing the asphalt for utility installations, excavation, and/or liming operations shall be considered subsidiary to the initial placement of asphalt and will not be paid for each re-installation. Asphalt shall be replaced within seven (7) days of removal for these activities.
- B. Should a vehicle become damaged or stranded due to an inaccessible condition, any legitimate claims arising from such conditions shall be the sole responsibility of the Contractor. The City reserves the right to withhold monthly pay estimates until all claims are resolved.

**12-12 CRUSHED STONE BAD WEATHER PROTECTION:**

- A. During periods of bad weather, the Contractor shall put in place, on excavated streets, 1½-inches to 2-inches crushed stone or crushed concrete sufficient to provide temporary access to private property. All material will be removed and stockpiled for future use at other locations as necessary. Any material removed and hauled off the project site without

approval from the City will be replaced by an equal quantity at the Contractor's expense. Special care will be taken by the Contractor during placement and removal of the material, not to unnecessarily combine it with native material on the project. If special care is not taken by the Contractor, an equal quantity of material will be replaced at the Contractor's expense.

- B. Weight tickets shall be submitted to the Inspector or his/her representative no later than one (1) week after delivery. Any tickets not submitted within this time frame or signed by the Inspector shall not be paid.
- C. NOTE: The use of crushed stone or crushed concrete as a means to detour traffic or maintain two-way traffic will not be paid under this item.
- D. The tons in the bid quantity are rough estimates. The actual amount used will be determined by the need for temporary and/or emergency access during construction.

**12-13 USE OF PRIVATE PROPERTY:**

- A. The Contractor shall not at any time use private property to park or turn around construction vehicles or store equipment and/or materials without the written permission of the property owner.
- B. The Contractor shall not at any time use water metered by meters set for the property owner's use without written permission of the property owner. Contractor is responsible for any and all damages caused to private property or additional cost incurred by property owner due to use of property for construction purposes.

**12-14 USE OF CITY PARKS:**

- A. The Contractor shall obtain written permission from the Parks and Recreation Department prior to the use of City park property for access or for the storage of machinery, equipment, materials, and/or supplies.
- B. Any damage incurred to City park property, by unauthorized use by the Contractor will be the responsibility of the Contractor to repair in an equal or better condition. Monthly pay estimates to the Contractor may be withheld until the damage is repaired and/or payment for the damages has been made.

**12-15 CONSECUTIVE STREET CONSTRUCTION:** The rate of progress shall be such that at no time shall more than three (3) streets be under construction at the same time without prior approval by the City.

**12-16 TOWING OF VEHICLES:** The Contractor shall follow applicable City Ordinances should it be determined that vehicles parked upon a City street must be moved in order to perform street maintenance or construction. Contractor shall provide ample notice to the City if any vehicle is to be towed.

**12-17. CONSTRUCTION WATER:**

- A. Contractor is responsible to provide all water necessary for the construction of this project. All construction water will be metered by City owned meters. A fee and a deposit must be paid before the meter is released to the Contractor. Payment and meter pick up locations are the South Service Center, 1100 S.W. Green Oaks, or City Hall Customer Care, 101 W. Abram. The meter readings will be submitted online by the Contractor and billed each month in accordance with the current Customer Care and Business Services Policy.
- B. Any damage that occurs to the meter during this time will be repaired by the City at the expense of the Contractor. The cost of the repairs will be deducted from the deposit and the remaining deposit will be returned to the Contractor. This procedure will be followed wherever construction water is needed.
- C. If the meter is set on a fire hydrant, the meter assembly shall be provided with an approved backflow prevention device, provided by the Contractor in accordance with the standard detail and the Fire Hydrant Meter Agreement requirements located under <http://www.arlingtontx.gov/details>. (Rev 4/2019)

**12-18 DAILY CLEANUP & REMOVAL ITEMS:**

- A. The removal of existing concrete curb and gutters, concrete valley gutters, concrete drive, and existing drainage features; shall be at the locations indicated by the City and shall be paid for under the right-of-way preparation pay item (See Special Provision Section 12-22, Right-of-way/Easement Preparation) unless a separate bid item is included in the PROPOSAL.
- B. All concrete curb and gutter and drive approaches removed will be broken out at existing construction expansion joints if possible. Where existing concrete is removed, the slab will be sawed in a neat straight line the full depth of the slab. The cost for sawing and breaking shall be considered subsidiary to the unit price bid for concrete removal. The Contractor shall make every effort to protect all concrete surfaces that will remain. Any remaining surfaces damaged during removal operations by the Contractor will be replaced at the Contractor's expense.
- C. Disposal of excess materials and debris resulting from construction, including but not limited to concrete, excess soil, forms, and rebar shall be removed and disposed of on a daily basis, unless other disposal schedule is approved by Inspector. Depending on type of material or debris, dump trucks should be the primary source of disposal. Contractor will be responsible for providing the necessary equipment or vehicle for such task.
- D. Dump trucks must be tarped while in transit to disposal sites. Tarps must be secured and not torn or tattered. All applicable State and local laws and ordinances relating to hauling, handling, and disposal of such materials shall be complied with. Use of Roll Off Box shall meet the City's Ordinances.

- E. The responsibility of locating suitable disposal sites for removal items on this project will be solely a function of the Contractor. The City will in no way be responsible for the actions of the Contractor if he disposes of excess material in locations that are not approved.

**12-19 DUST CONTROL:** Contractor will be responsible for minimizing dust on a daily basis and when instructed by the City. Dust control shall include, but is not limited to operations such as watering stockpiles, subgrade, pavement, sawing (including brick pavers), concrete joint sealing, routing, and crack sealing. Equipment necessary for capturing particulate matter during the process of routing, cleaning & sealing cracks & joints shall be considered subsidiary. The necessary application of water for dust shall be considered subsidiary to the other bid items.

(Rev. 10/2020)

**12-20 MOWING DURING CONSTRUCTION:** Contractor shall maintain existing parkways and medians at all times during construction by providing periodic mowing to meet the applicable City Ordinances. Any code violation or citation issued for not maintaining these areas will be the responsibility of the Contractor. Contractor will also be responsible for any cost incurred if City forces or City's contractor performs the mowing due to lack of response from the Contractor. Such cost will be billed to the Contractor.

**12-21 EXISTING UTILITIES:**

- A. In the preparation of plans and specifications, the engineer has endeavored to indicate the location of existing underground utility lines which are known to the engineer. It is not guaranteed that all lines or structures have been shown on the plans. Prior to the start of construction, the Contractor shall communicate with the local representative of all utility companies and advise said representatives of the route of the proposed construction in order to obtain the assistance of the utility companies in the location of and in the avoidance of the conflicts with utility lines.
- B. The Contractor should not assume the City has Surface Utility Engineering (SUE) maps for any of the proposed locations. Contractor will be responsible for calling for ALL locates (1-800-DIGTESS) in a timely matter to ensure utility issues are addressed and resolved within the allotted contract time. Contractor will also be responsible for complying with all State regulation and requirements.
- C. For the City's Streetlights, Storm Water, Signals, Fiber Optics, Water and Sewer line locates, request must be made online through the City's web site or through the "Ask Arlington" App. For emergency locates, as defined as a situation that endangers life, health, or property; or a situation in which the public need for uninterrupted service and immediate re-establishment of service, or if services are interrupted compels immediate action, call (817) 459-5900. If a request is falsely called in as an emergency, Contractor will be liable for payment of the emergency line locate service call.
- D. The Contractor shall contact the proper utility representative for questions or coordination of construction related to existing utilities. It is the Contractor's responsibility to uncover and determine the elevation and location of all potential conflicts well ahead of the excavation.

- E. The Contractor shall make every effort to protect existing utilities and other lines or structures. The Contractor shall not adjust, remove, or operate existing utilities unless specifically requested to do so in these specifications or authorized to do so by the City.
- F. Contractor shall protect all utility pole(s) impacted by the construction. Protection shall include temporary bracing of the utility poles where adjacent excavation could reasonably compromise the stability of the utility pole(s). Contractor shall coordinate the utility pole bracing with the owner of the utility pole(s) and the City. Unless there is a specific pay item for temporary pole bracing of utility pole(s), bracing of utility poles shall be incidental to other pay items included in the contract. Any utility damaged by the Contractor during the construction shall be suitably replaced at the Contractor's expense.
- G. Where excavation endangers adjacent structures and utilities, the Contractor shall, at his/her own expense, carefully support and protect such structures and/or utilities so that there will be no failure or settlement. Where it is necessary to move services, poles, guy wires, pipe lines, or other obstructions, the Contractor shall notify and cooperate with the utility owner.
- H. Should damage to any existing structure or utility occurs, whether from failure or settlement, the Contractor shall restore the structure or utility to its original condition and position without compensation from the City. All costs of temporarily or permanently relocating the conflicting utilities shall be borne by the Contractor without extra compensation from the City.

**12-22 SITE PREPARATION:**

- A. Site preparation shall consist of preparing the right-of-way, designated easements, and additional areas made available for construction of this project by the removal and disposal of all obstructions. Such obstructions shall be considered to include: remains of houses not completely removed by others, foundations, floor slabs, concrete, brick, lumber, plaster, septic tanks, basements, abandoned utility pipes and conduits, equipment and other foundations, fences, retaining walls, outhouses, shacks, sheds, curb and gutters, driveways, paved parking areas, miscellaneous stone, brick, concrete sidewalks, concrete and asphalt pavement, drainage structures, manholes, inlets, abandoned railroad tracks, scrap iron, trees, stumps, bushes, vegetation, roots, shrubs, brush, logs, limbs, rubbish, and other debris, whether above or below ground except live utility facilities. Clearing and grubbing shall be done in a matter that will not damage adjacent property. (Rev 7/2021)
- B. It is the intent of this specification to provide for the removal and disposal of all obstructions and objectionable materials not specifically provided for elsewhere in the plans and specifications. (Rev 7/2021)
- C. Site preparation construction methods shall be in accordance with the NCTCOG Standard Specifications for Public Works Construction – North Central Texas, Section 203.1.2. The contractor shall leave the construction site and disturbed areas in a neat and presentable condition. (Rev 7/2021)

- D. The lump sum bid for this item shall not exceed ten percent (10%) of the total amount bid for the entire project. A prorated portion of the lump sum bid shall be paid monthly until such work is completed. The Contractor should take special precautions to avoid damaging any trees outside the construction limits and any other trees which the City may designate to remain.

**12-23 TREE REMOVAL:**

- A. All trees to be removed shall be tagged and approved by the City prior to removal. (Rev. 7/2021)
- B. All trees and bushes that are cut down shall be hauled off the same day. (Rev. 7/2021)
- C. Contractor will fully comply with any and all federal, State and local laws related to the removal of trees including but not limited to the Migratory Bird Treaty Act. Contractor will be responsible for any fines, penalties, or damages due to any such violations of law and any such fines, penalties, or damages will be subject to the indemnification provision of this contract.
- D. Payment for tree removal is included in the Site Preparation bid item. Measurement and payment shall be made in accordance with the Site Preparation specification. (Rev. 7/2021)

**12-24 TREE TRIMMING:**

- A. All trees shall be trimmed back to avoid damage by construction equipment. All cuts shall be clean and smooth, with the bark intact with no rough edges or tears. Tree trimming shall be done in accordance with the International Society of Arborists or National Association of Arborists Standards. Trees shall also be protected to avoid damage by construction activities. (Rev 1/2019)
- B. Prior to initial acceptance of the project, Contractor shall trim the lower branches of all trees that overhang the sidewalk to a minimum height of 7-feet above the sidewalk. (Rev 1/2019)
- C. Payment for tree trimming and protection is considered subsidiary to the contract unless a separate pay item has been included in the Proposal. (Rev 1/2019)

**12-25 SITE GRADING:**

- A. All vegetation shall be removed from areas where fill is to be placed. Topsoil shall be grubbed, removed, and stockpiled. After the fill has been placed and compacted, the topsoil shall be spread to a thickness of 4-inches in all proposed areas that require it. The topsoil shall be free from grass, roots, sticks, stones, or other foreign materials. After placement is complete, the surface of the topsoil shall be finished to a reasonably smooth surface so grass may be planted and maintained.
- B. Site grading will be based on the elevations and grades shown on the Grading and Paving Drawings. Filling, construction of embankments, removal, stockpiling, and spreading



topsoil and offsite disposal of excess material will be considered incidental and subsidiary to excavation and shall not be a separate pay item.

C. No extra payment shall be made for rock excavation or crushing rock material for placement in fill areas. This work shall be considered incidental to site grading and shall not be a separate pay item.

**12-26 BORROW:**

A. It is the Contractor's responsibility to locate a suitable source of select borrow material for completing the fills on the project if there is insufficient material from the street excavation to complete all fills as shown on the construction plans. Prior to using any offsite borrow material, the material must be approved by the City. The following will be required prior to approval:

1. The Contractor must obtain a written, notarized certification from the landowner of each proposed borrow source stating that to the best of the landowner's knowledge and belief there has never been contamination of the borrow source site with hazardous or toxic materials.
2. The Contractor shall provide adequate testing to determine that the borrow source material is not contaminated with hazardous or toxic materials. The geotechnical engineer performing the testing for the Contractor shall notify the City in writing of his/her approval of the material.
3. Based on geotechnical testing performed on existing soil from the project site, a lime/cement application rate has been determined for subgrade stabilization as set forth in these Special Provisions. The quantities included in the PROPOSAL are based on the determined application rate. Before using any offsite borrow material for subgrade purposes, the Contractor shall provide necessary testing to determine the lime/cement application rate for the proposed borrow material. The results of these tests shall be submitted to the City in writing by the geotechnical engineer performing the testing for the Contractor. If the lime/cement application rate required for the offsite borrow material is greater than the rate specified in these Special Provisions, the Contractor shall be responsible for the cost of the additional lime/cement required or locate an alternative borrow source. If the application rate required for the borrow material is less than the rate specified in these Special Provisions, the Contractor will be paid for the actual quantity of lime/cement used on the project.
4. The Contractor shall provide testing (ASTM D 698) to determine the optimum density and moisture content for the borrow material if used as treated subgrade.
5. The borrow material shall be tested for the presence of soluble sulfates. Any soil with a content of soluble sulfate in excess of 2000 ppm will not be approved.
6. No organic material, trash, debris, trees, clippings or other deleterious material will be allowed in offsite borrow material.

7. Payment for Borrow is based on plan quantity. Contractor shall verify excavation/fill quantities and shall notify City in writing of concurrence or disagreement with plan quantities prior to start of construction. Any discrepancies in quantities shall be resolved prior to beginning excavation. No adjustments to plan quantities shall be allowed once excavation/fill activities have begun.

**12-27 FILLING:**

- A. Fills shall be constructed at the locations and to the lines and grades indicated on the drawings. When rock excavation is used, it shall be broken or crushed so that the maximum dimension is 4-inches. No rock will be allowed in the upper 12-inches of the fill.
- B. Equipment for compacting fills shall be sheep foot rollers, rubber-tired rollers, and other approved equipment capable of obtaining required density.
- C. The combined excavation and fill placing operation shall be blended sufficiently to secure the best practicable degree of compaction. Fill shall be compacted to at least ninety-five percent (95%) Density per ASTM D698, +/- two percent (2%) optimum moisture content. The suitability of the materials shall be subject to approval of the City's laboratory. Dump, then spread and mix successive loads of material to give a horizontal layer of not more than 8-inches in depth, loose measurement. After each layer of fill has been spread to the proper depth, it shall be thoroughly manipulated with a disc plow or other suitable and approved equipment until the material is uniformly mixed, pulverized, and brought to a uniform approved moisture content.
- D. No fill material shall be rolled until the layer of material has a uniform moisture content which will permit the proper compaction under that degree of moisture content which is the optimum for obtaining the required compaction.
- E. Dry any material having moisture content too high for proper compaction by aeration until the moisture content is lowered to a point where satisfactory compaction may be obtained. If the moisture of the fill material is too low, add water to the material and thoroughly mix by blading and discing to produce a uniform and satisfactory moisture content.
- F. If, in the opinion of the City's laboratory or Inspector, the rolled surface of any layer or section of the fill is too smooth to bond properly with the succeeding layer or adjacent section, roughen by discing or scarifying to the satisfaction of the City's laboratory before placing succeeding layer or adjacent sections.

**12-28 SELECT FILL:**

- A. Select fill shall be in accordance with the construction plans. Contractor shall provide laboratory test reports for each soil select fill source used to supply general select fill and select fill materials. Contractor shall provide a test load to the project site for testing purposes. Once material has been tested and has passed all requirements, the Contractor shall then be permitted to deliver material for the project.

B. Payment shall be in cubic yards in its final position using the average end area method as indicated on the plans. The bid price shall include transporting or hauling the material, furnishing, placing, compacting, proof rolling, disposal of excess or waste material, and reworking or replacement of undercut material. No additional compensation will be made for rock or shrinkage/swell factors.

**12-29 SPRINKLER RELOCATIONS:**

A. Sprinkler relocations may be required on this project. The City will be responsible for sprinkler relocations. Prior to construction, the Contractor and Inspector shall identify and document the sprinkler systems that will be affected by the construction of the project. The Contractor shall contact the owner of each sprinkler system and arrange to test each system. In the presence of the Inspector, the Contractor shall:

1. determine if the system functions properly.
2. identify the layout of the system and
3. document in writing the layout and function of the system. The work described above is required by the Contractor for all projects and should be considered subsidiary to the unit prices bid for other items.

B. When construction activity approaches a sprinkler system, the Contractor shall provide the Inspector seven (7) days notice to allow for relocation of the sprinkler system. Should the Contractor damage any sprinkler system, it will be the Contractor's responsibility to repair or replace the same at no additional charge to the City.

**12-30 CRUSHED STONE CUSHION:**

A. When in the opinion of the City the subgrade material encountered at grade is soft spongy, and unsuitable, it shall be removed to a depth necessary below the barrel of the pipe to achieve stable layers and replaced with a crushed stone cushion so as to provide an unyielding stable foundation. The stone used in cushion shall be 1-inch washed crushed stone and shall be free from silt, loam, or vegetable matter and shall be of a gradation of from 3/4-inch to 1-inch.

B. Crushed stone cushion will be paid for at the contract unit price per ton in place and shall be the total compensation for furnishing all labor, materials, tools, and equipment for performing this particular phase of work. Crushed stone cushion shall be paid for the amount of stone placed at a depth greater than 6-inches below the bottom of the pipe.

C. Subgrades that have been allowed to become unstable by neglect or fault of the Contractor, by improper drainage or lack of drainage, the City shall order the Contractor to remove the unstable subgrade and replace the same with crushed stone cushion at the expense of the Contractor.

**12-31 BACKFILL & BACKFILL MATERIAL:**

- A. Backfill operations shall begin immediately following removal of the forms on the permanent improvements. All loose concrete, rocks, roots, trash, and other debris shall be removed from the excavation prior to any backfill being placed.
- B. Backfill material shall consist of the native material obtained from excavation unless in the opinion of the City, this material is unsuitable for use. The material shall not contain trash, rocks, concrete, asphalt, gravel, roots, or other debris. Sand shall not be used for backfill material unless the native soil in the construction area is sandy in nature. All backfill material will be considered subsidiary.

**12-32 MECHANICALLY COMPACTED BACKFILL:**

- A. Areas shall be backfilled with native material and compacted by mechanical methods. Compaction must be achieved with equipment specifically designed for compaction only. If hand pneumatic tampers are used, the backfill shall be placed in layers not exceeding 6-inches in loose thickness and thoroughly compacted to at least ninety-five percent (95%) density per ASTM D698, +/- two percent (2%) optimum moisture content.
- B. Backfill shall be placed in uniform layers completely across the area, and compaction shall proceed in an orderly, uniform manner. If compaction is performed by the use of heavy tamping (sheep's foot) rollers, backfill shall be placed in layers not exceeding 9-inches in loose thickness and compacted to at least ninety-five percent (95%) density per ASTM D698, +/- two percent (2%) optimum moisture content. The use of walk behind and remote compacting rollers will not be permitted.
- C. Payment for backfill shall be subsidiary to unit prices bid for pipe.

**12-33 TRENCHLESS TECHNOLOGY: N/A**

**12-34 BACKFILL AND CLEANUP:**

- A. Backfill and cleanup shall be done daily. This work shall progress immediately behind pipe laying and shall be within 50-feet of the pipe laying operation at all times. It shall also include the disposal of all excess material on a daily basis. Ditch lines, storm drains, inlets, bar ditches, and other drainage facilities shall be maintained and cleaned on a daily basis so they will function for their intended purposes.
- B. Where lines or services are laid in, along, or across the street pavement, the ditch line shall be backfilled and an approved all weather surface, such as flexbase or CTB shall be installed upon the completion of that day's work. Approved barricades shall be erected at these locations and shall be maintained by the Contractor until the permanent pavement is replaced. No later than the second day following the installation of a line, the specified asphalt shall be placed in the ditch and the street repair shall be completed. In the event these procedures are not followed, pipe laying shall cease immediately and not resume until the cleanup is completed and the roadway is safe for traffic.

- C. Particular care shall be taken during inclement weather to ensure that driveways are backfilled with an approved all weather surface. No driveway shall be blocked for longer than two (2) hours and only after notifying the affected property owner.
- D. All concrete shall be backfilled as soon as possible. If "honeycomb" appears, the Contractor shall grout back side to smooth out the surface within twenty-four (24) hours of form removal.
- E. Where lines or services are laid in, along, or across street pavement the pavement shall be left in a clean and acceptable condition. At the end of each work day the Contractor shall sweep and/or wash the pavement to leave the roadway completely clean of dirt and debris. Dirt, debris, and/or wash water shall be collected for appropriate disposal and shall NOT be washed into waterways or storm drains. Other suitable methods of maintaining the pavement in a clean, unobstructed condition may be utilized by the Contractor. No additional payment will be made for cleaning of pavement. Backfill and clean-up shall be considered subsidiary to the work performed under this contract.

**12-35 FLOWABLE BACKFILL: N/A**

**12-36 TEMPORARY STREET REPAIR:**

- A. A temporary driving surface will be required on all street cut openings. It shall be composed of permanent type paving material, specifically excluding gravel or flexbase as the surface material, unless approved by the City.
- B. A minimum of 4-inches hot mix asphaltic concrete (Type "D") over a minimum of 6-inches flexbase on compacted native material shall be used for all streets regardless of classification.
- C. All flexbase shall be in accordance with the latest TxDOT Standard Specifications and shall be Type "A" Grade 1 material. An acceptable alternative to Type "A" Grade 1 flexbase is crushed concrete. Crushed Concrete shall be categorized as Type "D" Grade 1 Flexbase. Flexbase shall be thoroughly compacted and placed to a depth specified on the City's detail and shall be subsidiary to the temporary street repair items.
- D. Installation of temporary street repairs will be completed by the Contractor as soon as possible after completing the backfill, but always within five (5) business days after completion of the work involving the cut.
- E. Road plates may not be used for more than five (5) business days. Any temporary driving surface that fails to provide an acceptable driving surface shall be removed and replaced at the Contractor's expense, as directed by the Inspector.

**12-37 VERTICAL ADJUSTMENT OF WATER VALVES, MANHOLES, ACCESS CHAMBERS AND CLEANOUTS:**

- A. Contractor shall identify, verify, and mark locations of all water valves, manholes, access chambers, and cleanouts. It is the Contractor's responsibility to maintain their functionality

at all times during construction. Any damage through carelessness or negligence will be the contractor's responsibility to repair or replace the same at no additional charge to the City.

- B. For concrete pavement, all water valves, manholes, access chambers, and cleanouts shall be brought to the final grade before placement of concrete. Valve boxes shall be adjusted to the final grade by adjustment of the screw type valve box.
- C. For asphalt pavement reclamation, all new water valves, manholes, access chambers, and cleanouts shall be adjusted to approximately 1-foot below the bottom of the proposed subgrade prior to the application of cement or lime slurry. Adjustment to the final grade and installation of the concrete pad per details shall be made after placement of the top layer of surface course. The valve boxes shall be adjusted to the final grade by adjustment of the screw type valve box.
- D. For asphalt pavement mill & overlay, ductile iron valve box extension for valve box and grade ring for manholes and access chamber may be used for adjustment to the final grade.
- E. The existing lids for water valves, manholes, access chambers, and cleanouts may be reused if instructed by the City. All grade rings, frames and covers, and cones (if cone replacement is instructed by the City) for adjustments shall be furnished and installed by the contractor and subsidiary to other unit prices bid in the PROPOSAL. (Rev. 2/2021)
- F. This paragraph is only applicable to the City's Asphalt Pavement Maintenance Projects. All the ductile iron valve box extensions, grade rings, frames and covers for adjustments will be furnished by the City. Contractor shall provide a minimum of two (2) weeks notice to the Inspector prior to picking up from the South Service Center Warehouse, 1100 SW Green Oaks Boulevard, and transporting to the job site. Any damage to the materials once they leave the warehouse will be the contractor's responsibility to replace the same at no additional charge to the City. The valve boxes shall be adjusted to the final grade by adjustment of the screw type valve box.

**12-38 GREEN CEMENT:**

- A. In striving to improve air quality in the North Texas area, an alternate bid item to add the additional cost of "green" cement above the cost of cement supplied from an unspecified source will be considered as part of this project. Utilization of "green" cement will be considered for raw cement and for items where concrete is placed or cast-in-place (examples: pavement, driveways, cement for stabilization, sidewalk, barrier free ramps, curb inlets, curb and gutter, flumes, and channel lining).
- B. "GREEN" cement is defined as cement that is generated from a kiln whose emission rates:
  - 1. Are in compliance with all applicable state and federal environmental standards relating to the emission of NOx, including all applicable TCEQ and EPA rules and regulations; and

2. Operate kilns that exceed the standards for NOx emissions set out in 30 Tex. Admin. Code § 117.3110(a)(1)-(4) (as provided presently and as may be amended in the future) by the following percentage amounts:

- a. For each long wet kiln, ten percent (10%) lower than the standard for long wet kilns located in Ellis County, Texas as set out in 30 Tex. Admin. Code § 117.3110(a)(1)(B);
- b. For each long dry kiln, twenty percent (20%) lower than the standard for long dry kilns, as set out in 30 Tex. Admin. Code § 117.3110(a)(2);
- c. For each preheater kiln, twenty percent (20%) lower than the standard for preheater kilns, as set out in 30 Tex. Admin. Code § 117.3110(a)(3); and
- d. For each preheater-precalciner kiln or precalciner kiln, thirty-five percent (35%) lower than the standard for preheater-precalciner or precalciner kilns, as set out in 30 Tex. Admin. Code § 117.3110(a)(4).

C. Should the City award the contract with this alternate, the Contractor and the material supplier will need to sign a certified compliance statement. Form will be provided by the City. No payment on the alternate item for utilizing "green" cement will be made unless this statement is executed and returned to the City.

**12-39 REINFORCING STEEL:**

- A. All reinforcing steel used on this project shall comply in all respects to TxDOT Item 440, "Reinforcing Steel".
- B. Rebar that requires bending in the field shall be Grade 40 reinforcing steel. Payment for reinforcing steel shall be considered subsidiary to the various bid items.

**12-40 RESTORATION OF EXISTING PAVED SURFACES:**

- A. The Contractor shall be responsible for maintenance of existing paved roadway surfaces within the project limits throughout the duration of the project. The Contractor shall perform daily inspections and restoration work required to provide an acceptable driving surface, as determined by the City.
- B. Restoration of paved surfaces shall be of asphalt, unless otherwise approved by the City. Should the Contractor be notified of unacceptable roadway conditions, the Contractor shall restore the surface within twenty-four (24) hours. Should it become necessary for the City to provide for the restoration of the surface, the cost of such will be billed to the Contractor. All asphalt for restoration of existing paved surfaces shall be considered subsidiary to the various bid items on this contract.

**12-41 GALVANIZED GABIONS WITH PVC COATING: N/A**

**12-42 CONDUIT:**

**A. MATERIAL:**

Conduits for installation of City's fiber optics shall be purple High Density Polyethylene (HDPE) Standard Dimension Ratio (SDR) 13.5 plastic conduits. All other conduits shall be schedule 40, polyvinylchloride (PVC), certified to UL Standard 651.

**B. CONSTRUCTION METHODS:**

1. Prior to the installation of conduits, the City shall be notified so that a representative may be present to inspect the installation of the conduit. Failure to contact the City shall constitute grounds for rejecting conduit which has been installed without the presence of a representative of the City.
2. All conduits shall be placed in accordance with line and grade, details and dimensions as shown on the plans, or as directed by the City. All ends of pipe shall be reamed to remove burrs and fitted with appropriate sized bell end. All splicing of conduit shall be done by using standard couplings manufactured for this purpose. All bare ends of conduit for future connections by others shall be capped with standard conduit caps. The location of ends of all conduit for future electric circuits in structures shall be marked by a "Y" at least 3-inches high, cut into the face of curb, gutter or wall directly above the conduit.
3. All conduits shall be placed a minimum depth of 36-inches below the top of curb. Conduit shall extend 6-inches behind back of curb unless otherwise called for on the plans. Installation under existing pavement may be accomplished by jacking, tunneling, or drilling.
4. Where pullboxes or junction boxes are required in medians which are to be surfaced, they shall be installed by the Contractor at the location and grade as shown on the plans or as directed by the City. Unless otherwise indicated on the plans, Type "C" pull boxes shall be used for signals and fiber; and Type "A" for streetlights.
5. All necessary fittings for proper installation of conduit in the pull-box shall be furnished and installed by the Contractor. Where it is required that pull-boxes be installed, the conduit shall be fitted with standard ninety degree (90°) ell fittings to enter the pull-box from the bottom. A nipple shall be attached to the ell of sufficient length so that the distance from the top of the pull-box to the end of the nipple shall be 8-inches.
6. A mule tape shall be placed in all conduits. Prior to the placement of paving, the tape shall be moved back and forth to ensure that the conduit is free from obstructions. Before final acceptance of the conduit work, this method of checking shall again be incorporated to ensure that the paving operations have not rendered the conduit useless. It shall be the Contractor's responsibility to remove and replace all damaged conduit at his/her own expense.
7. All plastic conduit shall have factory bends.



8. Conduit locations shown on the plans are for bidding purposes only and may be changed with permission of the City to avoid underground obstacles. If necessary, the Contractor shall furnish and install conduit to an electrical service point as determined by the City prior to the beginning of construction.

**C. MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT:**

1. Conduit of the size specified on the plans shall be measured by the linear foot along the main line of conduit. Fittings shall not be measured directly but shall be considered subsidiary to this item.
2. Conduit, as measured in this item, shall be paid for at the unit price bid for "conduit" of the size specified, excavation, backfill, labor, tools, equipment, materials, fittings and all incidentals necessary to complete the work.

**12-43 SLOPE EROSION CONTROL:**

- A. Erosion control material shall be "Curlex Blanket" heavy jute netting, such as "AMXCO Curlex Blanket," or approved equal (no plastic meshes are allowed), and shall be applied after seeding is complete. Heavy jute mesh shall be open plain weave of unbleached single jute yarn, averaging one hundred and thirty (130) pounds per spindle of 14,400 yards. Jute mesh shall be furnished in approximately ninety (90) pound rolled strips.
- B. Other criteria for jute mesh shall be as follows:
- Length - approximately 75-yards.
  - Width - 48-inches (+/- 1-inch).
  - 0.78 warp ends per width of cloth.
  - Forty-one (41) weft ends per yard.
  - Weight of cloth - 1.22 pounds per linear yard (+/- 5%).
- C. Staples shall be of No. 11 gauge steel wire formed into a "U" shape 6-inches long.
- D. To install erosion control material on channel slopes, bury the up-channel end in a trench 6-inches deep. After the jute is buried, the trench shall be tamped firmly closed. Using a steel tube or 3/4-inch pipe through the paper core of the roll with a rope on each end will enable the operator to lower the roll down the slope. The material should be applied without stretching. The material should lie smoothly, but loosely on the soil surface. In order to keep the area as smooth as possible, workers should avoid, as much as possible, walking directly on the seed bed, either before or after the jute is applied. In cases where one roll ends and another is needed, the up-channel piece should overlap the second roll by at least 18-inches. Where two or more widths are applied side by side, an overlap of at least 4-inches shall be maintained. The material shall be brought to level area before terminating. The end shall be across the fold on 12-inches centers. Outside edges, centers, and overlaps on banks shall be stapled on 2-foot intervals. Each width of cloth will have a row of staples down the center as well as along each edge. On soft or sandy soil or windy areas, apply staples in alternate slanting position and space at closer intervals (12-inches to

18-inches). For extra hard soil or shale areas, use sharp pointed, hardened steel 3-inches fence-type staple. Outside edges shall have loose topsoil spread over them to allow for smooth entry of water. The entire jute covered area should be rolled with a smooth roller weighing fifty (50) to seventy-five (75) pounds per foot of length.

- E. Any clumps, debris, etc., which hold the jute off the ground, shall be tamped into the soil. The netting shall completely cover all areas to be protected from erosion. Overlaps must be ample and well stapled so that no gapping can occur. The material shall be in intimate contact with the surface at all points. If some areas experience severe erosion, two layers shall be in intimate contact with the surface at all points.
- F. The quantity shown in the PROPOSAL is a rough estimate as the actual amount and location of the jute mesh will be determined in the field as directed by the City in areas where excessive slopes exist. Overlapping of material will not be paid for double.
- G. Heavy jute netting will be paid for at the unit price bid per square yard, which price will be full compensation for furnishing and placing all materials, including all labor, tools, equipment, and incidentals necessary to complete the work.

**12-44 TOPSOIL:**

- A. A minimum of 4-inches of topsoil shall be placed on all disturbed areas within and adjacent to permanent improvements within the project limits. Topsoil shall be approved by the City prior to application. The topsoil shall be free from stone, rock, lumps, clods of hard earth, plants or their roots, sticks and other foreign material and shall be brought to the lines and grades as established by the City. Under no circumstances will topsoil be accepted unless it is free from the aforementioned contaminants. (Rev. 9/2019)
- B. Contractor may use approved means of treating the topsoil to ensure its acceptability. This item shall be considered subsidiary to the other items in this project and shall not be a separate pay item.
- C. The existing topsoil from the project limits may be used if Contractor stockpiles and protects it properly. No trash, lime shavings or other foreign material, shall be added to this stockpile. All topsoil including existing topsoil that is stockpiled shall meet the following specification:
- D. The soil texture shall be classified as loam or sandy loam according to the following criteria:

	(% Passing) <u>Loam</u>	(% Passing) <u>Sandy Loam</u>
Sand (0.074 to 4.76 mm diameter)	25-50%	45-85%
Silt (0.002 to 0.074 mm diameter)	30-50%	Less than 50%

Clay (Smaller than 0.002 mm) 5-25% Less than 20%  
(Hydrometer analysis)  
Soil texture shall be determined by utilizing processes as prescribed in ASTM D 422.

Topsoil material shall be stockpiled at locations approved by the City. After completion of the permanent improvements, topsoil shall be placed on all disturbed areas so as to provide a minimum 4-inches depth of topsoil. Clumps shall be reduced to less than 1-inch diameter.

**12-45 HYDRO-MULCH SEEDING:**

**A. DESCRIPTION:** This item shall consist of preparing ground, providing, and planting seed, or a mixture of seeds, of the kind specified along and across such areas as are designated by the City.

**B. MATERIALS:** The type seed used shall be in accordance with COG Specification, Section 202.6, and approved by the City. All seed must carry a Texas Seed Label showing purity and germination, name and type of seed, and that it meets all requirements of the Texas Seed Law. Seed furnished shall be of the previous season's crop and the date of analysis shown on each tag shall be within nine (9) months of the time of delivery to the project. Each variety of seed shall be furnished and delivered in separate bags or containers. The City may require a sample of each variety of seed to be furnished for analysis and testing. Grass seed shall equal or exceed ninety-five percent (95%) purity and ninety percent (90%) germination.

**C. PLANTING SEASON:** Planting of hulled bermuda grass seed shall be done between the months of April through September. The density of seeds planted shall be eighty (80) pounds per acre. A blend of thirty (30) pounds Rye grass and forty (40) pounds unhulled bermuda may be used between the months of September through April.

**D. CONSTRUCTION METHODS:** The designated areas shall be raked, leveled and fine graded as necessary to provide a smooth uniform grade, free of ruts, depressions, humps and objectionable soil clods, prior to seeding. The area shall also be free of weeds, rubbish, and building materials. Any low areas shall also be filled to prevent ponding. All particles in the seed bed shall be reduced to less than 1-inch in diameter or they shall be removed. The areas to be seeded shall be moisture conditioned prior to placement of seed. In areas that appear to be overly compacted or to destroy existing vegetation, the soil shall be loosen or disked, at the direction of the City. The cost of any chemical treatment to the soil in order to establish a uniform stand of grass will be subsidiary to "Hydro-mulch Seeding." Seeding of the type specified shall be performed in accordance with the requirements in COG Specification 202.6 except as hereinafter described:

- 1. Watering:** The seeded areas shall be watered as necessary to establish grass as described in Establishment and Acceptance of Seeding.

2. Hydro-Mulch Seeding: In accordance with COG Specification 202.6.4.4 alternate methods for placement of seed may be used if approved by the City
- E. MEASUREMENT: Work and acceptable material for "Hydro-mulch Seeding" will be measured by the unit bid, complete in place.
- F. ESTABLISHMENT AND ACCEPTANCE OF SEEDING: Regardless of unseasonable climatic conditions or other adverse conditions affecting planting operations and the growth of the grass, it shall be the sole responsibility of the Contractor to establish a uniform stand of grass as herein specified. When adverse conditions such as drought, cold weather, high winds, excessive precipitation, or other factors prevail to such an extent that satisfactory results are unlikely, the City may, at his/her own discretion, stop any phase of the work until conditions change to favor the establishment of grass.
- G. MAINTENANCE: Maintenance shall begin immediately after each portion of grass area is planted. It will be the Contractor's responsibility to maintain the existing grades and leave them in a true and even condition after planting. All planted areas will be protected and maintained by watering, weed control, mowing, and replanting as necessary for at least thirty (30) days after initial planting and for as much longer as necessary to establish a uniform stand with complete coverage of the specified grass.
- H. FERTILIZER: (Subsidiary to Seeding Item)
1. Description: This item shall consist of providing and distributing fertilizer over the seeded areas.
  2. Materials: Shall be in accordance with COG Specification 202.4.1 and Special Provisions, Landscaping Specifications, Section 17.
  3. Construction Methods: The fertilizer shall be pelleted or granular fertilizer and shall be applied uniformly over the entire area specified to be fertilized and in the manner directed for the particular item of work. The fertilizer shall be dry and in good physical condition. Fertilizer that is powdered or caked will be rejected. Distribution of fertilizer for the particular item of work shall meet the approval of the City.

Unless otherwise indicated on the plans, fertilizer shall be applied uniformly at the average rate of four hundred (400) pounds per acre for all types of seeding.

- I. PAYMENT:
1. The work performed and materials furnished and measured as provided under "Measurement" will be paid for at the unit price bid for "Seeding" which price shall be full compensation for furnishing all materials and for performing all operations necessary to complete the work, including fertilizer. Once a "uniform stand of grass" is provided, the City will provide payment for the seeding. See definition of "uniform stand of grass" below.

12-42. Uniform Stand of Grass: A uniform stand with complete coverage of the specified grass shall be defined as not less than one hundred-fifty (150) growing plants per square foot seeded. Growing plants shall be defined as healthy grass plants of two blades or more at least 2-inches tall.

**12-46 SODDING/TURFGRASS PLANTING:** This work includes labor, material, and equipment for soil preparation, fertilization, planting, and other requirements regarding turfgrass planting areas. Payment for sodding shall include the cost of all fertilizer and water. Grass sod variety shall match existing and adjacent property.

A. SUBMITTALS: Samples and Producers' Specifications: Various samples, certificates, and specifications of seed, fertilizer, sand, compost, other soil amendments and other materials shall be submitted for approval as required by subsequent sections of this specification.

B. TURFGRASS:

1. Buffalograss Sod, Bermuda Sod or Saint Augustine: Turfgrass sod shall be "Buchloe dactyloides" (Buffalograss) 'Prairie Grass' variety, "Cynodon dactylon" Common Bermuda Grass, or "Stenotaphrum secundatum" Saint Augustine Grass. Sod shall consist of stolons, leaf blades, rhizomes, and roots with a healthy, virile system of dense, thickly matted roots throughout the soil of the sod for a thickness not less than ¾-inches. Sod shall be alive, healthy, vigorous, free of insects, disease, stones, and undesirable foreign materials and grasses. The grass shall have been mowed prior to sod cutting so that the height of the grass shall not exceed 2-inches. Sod shall have been produced on growing beds of clay or clay-loam topsoil. Sod shall not be harvested or planted when its moisture condition is so excessively wet or dry that its survival will be affected. All sod is to be harvested, delivered, and planted within a thirty-six (36) hour period of time. Sod shall be protected from exposure to wind, sun and freezing. If sod is stacked, it shall be kept moist and shall be stacked roots-to-roots and grass-to-grass.

2. Dimensions: All sod shall be machine cut to uniform soil thickness of 1-inch plus or minus ¼-inch. All sod shall be of the same thickness. Rectangular sections of sod may vary in length, but all shall be of equal width and of a size that permits the sod to be lifted, handled, and rolled without breaking. Broken pads and torn, uneven ends will be unacceptable.

3. Solid Sodding: Prior to laying the sod, the planting beds shall be raked smooth to true grade and moistened to a depth of 4-inches, but not to the extent causing puddling. The sod shall be laid smoothly, tightly butted edge to edge, and with staggered joints. The sod shall be pressed firmly into contact with the sod bed by rolling or by hand tamping with an approved tamper so as to eliminate all air pockets, provide a true and even surface, and insure knitting without displacement of the sod or deformation of the surfaces of sodded areas. Following compaction, fine screened soil of good quality shall be used to fill all cracks between sods. Excess soil shall be

worked into the grass with suitable equipment and shall be well watered. The quantity of fill soil shall be such that it will cause no smothering of the grass.

4. If sod is placed after September 15, final acceptance on the grass will not occur until after April 15. The grass shall not be over-seeded with rye. The Contractor shall water the grass until the grass is accepted.

C. FERTILIZER:

1. General: Fertilizer shall be an organic commercial product uniform in composition, free flowing, and suitable for application with approved equipment. Fertilizer shall be delivered to the site in fully labeled original containers. Fertilizer which has been exposed to high humidity and moisture, has become caked or otherwise damaged making it unsuitable for use, will not be acceptable.
2. Planting Application: Fertilizer shall be an organically based product (nutrients contained in the project shall be derived solely from the remains, part of the remains, or a by-product of a once-living organism) supplying nitrogen, phosphorus and potassium in a 1-1-1 to 5-5-5 analysis, such as Green Sense (3-1-2) or Sustane (5-4-2), or approved alternate formulation. The fertilizer shall contain a variety of cultures of soil-borne bacteria and trace elements, and be high (min. 18% each) in humus and humic acid. The Contractor shall submit a sample label or specification of the fertilizer proposed to be used for the City's approval. The specified fertilizer shall be applied at the rate of twenty (20) pounds per one thousand (1,000) square feet according to specific label. Fertilizer shall be applied over sodded areas after planting, but not more than two (2) days later.

D. HERBICIDES:

1. General: Herbicides will be applied as necessary for the eradication of weeds. The Contractor will choose an appropriate herbicide for application with respect to the kind of turfgrass being planted, climatic conditions, site conditions, and the state of work and the approved City chemical list available through the Parks Department. The applied herbicides shall not be detrimental to the establishment of turfgrass. Herbicides shall be approved for application by relevant U.S. Government agencies such as the U.S. Department of Agriculture and the Environmental Protection Agency. A pre-emergent that will not cause root pruning of new sod must be applied when sod is laid.
2. Application: The rates and methods of application shall be in strict conformance with local, state and federal laws and regulations. Applications shall follow the manufacturer's recommendations. All applications must be licensed by Texas Structural Pest Control Board or Texas Department of Agriculture.
3. Weed Control: The Contractor shall apply appropriate herbicides in the following situations:
  - a. Where weeds are present in the prepared soil, prior to the commencement of planting operations.

b. Where weeds are present in the planted turfgrass areas, prior to the establishment of the turfgrass to a uniform stand.

c. In the planted turfgrass areas, where the presence of weeds precludes the acceptability of the turfgrass as a uniform stand.

d. In other situations where the City judges that the presence of weeds is detrimental to the establishment or acceptability of the turfgrass.

**E. PLACEMENT:** All turfing operations shall be executed across the slope, parallel to finished grade contours.

**F. SOIL PREPARATION:**

1. Scarification: Scarification shall be accomplished to loosen the soil, destroy existing vegetation, and prepare an acceptable sod bed. Initial tillage shall be done in a crossing pattern for double coverage, then followed by a disc harrow. Depth of scarification shall be 1-inch to 1½-inches.

2. Cleaning: Soil shall be further prepared by the removal of debris, building materials, rubbish, weeds, and stones larger than 2-inches in diameter. During the soil preparation process, a "Rock Pick" or other approved piece of machinery shall be used to gather surface stones as small as 1-inch in diameter. The Contractor shall be responsible for the disposal of collected materials.

3. Fine Grading: After scarifying and cleaning, all areas to be planted shall be leveled, fine graded, and dragged with a weighted spike harrow or float drag. The required result shall be the elimination of ruts, depressions, humps, and objectionable soil clods. Unless specified by the City medians shall be crowned in the center with cross slopes of approximately two percent (2%). This shall be the final soil preparation step to be completed before the commencement of fertilizing and planting.

4. City shall approve bed preparation before grass planting begins.

**G. PROTECTION:** No heavy equipment shall be moved over the planted lawn area unless the soil is again prepared, graded, leveled and replanted. It will be the responsibility of this Contractor to protect all paving surfaces, curbs, utilities, plant materials, and any other existing improvements from damage. Any damage shall be repaired or replaced as soon as possible at no cost to the City. The City may repair emergency conditions or noncompliance hazards at the cost of the Contractor.

**H. ESTABLISHMENT AND ACCEPTANCE:** Regardless of unseasonable climatic conditions or other adverse conditions affecting planting operations and the growth of the turfgrass, it shall be the sole responsibility of the Contractor to ESTABLISH A UNIFORM STAND OF TURFGRASS AS HEREIN SPECIFIED. When adverse conditions such as drought, cold weather, high winds, excessive precipitation, or other factors prevail to such

an extent that satisfactory results are unlikely, the City may stop any phase of the work until conditions change to favor the establishment of turfgrass.

1. **Uniform Stand of Turfgrass:** A uniform stand with complete coverage of the specified grass shall be defined as not less than one hundred fifty (150) growing plants per square foot. Growing plants shall be defined as healthy grass plants of two blades or more at least 1½-inches tall. A uniform stand of turfgrass shall be free of weeds. No payment will be made for turfgrass until a uniform stand of grass has been established. Partial projects will not be accepted. A uniform stand of grass over 4-inches in height will not be accepted.
  2. Thirty (30) days following planting, the City will inspect the medians to verify establishment as described above. Contractor will be required to replant and/or maintain any areas of grass that are unacceptable to the City until they meet the standards above.
- I. **MAINTENANCE:** Maintenance shall begin immediately after each portion of grass area is planted. All planted areas will be protected and maintained by watering, weed control, and replanting as necessary to establish a **UNIFORM STAND WITH COMPLETE COVERAGE OF THE SPECIFIED GRASS**. The entire project will continue to be replanted and maintained by the Contractor until complete coverage and acceptance are achieved over one hundred percent (100%) of the area. Any water equipment deemed necessary by the Contractor will be provided by the Contractor.
1. **Watering:** Use a temporary irrigation system to irrigate the entire planted area daily for the first ten (10) days on which less than ½-inch of rain has fallen in the previous twenty-four hours and then two (2) times per week for the balance of the month following planting. Water trucks will be permitted as a means of irrigating the sodded areas.
  2. **Weed Control:** Appropriate herbicides shall be applied as necessary as previously specified.
  3. Grass shall be edged where it is adjacent to concrete areas.
  4. All concrete areas where weeds are growing in the joints must be trimmed or chemically sprayed. These areas must have all growth removed.
  5. Ant infestations must be treated with Award, Amdro or approved equivalent.
- J. **GRADING:** It is the Contractor's responsibility to maintain the existing grades and leave them in a true and even condition after planting turfgrass.
- K. **EROSION CONTROL:** Throughout the project and the maintenance period for turfgrass, it is the Contractor's responsibility to maintain the topsoil in place at specified grades.



Topsoil and turfgrass losses due to erosion will be replaced by the Contractor until establishment and acceptance is achieved.

**L. CLEAN-UP:** The Contractor shall remove any excess material or debris brought onto the site or unearthed as a result of his/her turfgrass operations.

**M. GUARANTEE:** The Contractor shall guarantee all materials used for this work to be type, quality, and quantity specified.

**12-47 FINAL CLEANUP:** The intent of this section is to ensure that an adequate cleanup job be performed by the Contractor. Prior to accepting the project by the City, Contractor shall sweep and remove all trash, debris and remnants from all locations or areas affected by construction activities. All necessary cleanup work shall be considered subsidiary to the various bid items on this contract.

**12-48 FINAL INSPECTION:** The City will make final inspection of all work included in the contract as soon as practicable after the work is completed and ready for acceptance. If the work is not acceptable at the time of such inspection, the City will inform the Contractor as to the particular defects to be remedied before final acceptance will be made.

END OF SECTION

**SECTION NO. 13**  
**SPECIAL PROVISIONS – PAVING SPECIFICATIONS**  
**NUMERICAL LISTING**

Section No.	
13-01	ROADWAY EXCAVATION
13-02	COMPACTED ROADWAY FILL & EMBANKMENT
13-03	CEMENT TREATED BASE (CTB)
<del>13-04</del>	<del>HYDRATED LIME – N/A</del>
<del>13-05</del>	<del>LIME AND CEMENT TREATED SUBGRADE – N/A</del>
<del>13-06</del>	<del>CEMENT TREATED SUBGRADE – N/A</del>
13-07	EPOXY BONDING AGENT
13-08	MISCELLANEOUS CONCRETE TESTING REQUIREMENTS
13-09	RECONSTRUCT DRIVES
13-10	CONCRETE CURB AND GUTTER
13-11	CONCRETE VALLEY GUTTERS
13-12	CONCRETE DRIVEWAYS
13-13	CONCRETE SIDEWALKS
13-14	BARRIER FREE RAMPS
<del>13-15</del>	<del>CONCRETE PANEL REPLACEMENT – N/A</del>
13-16	CONCRETE PAVEMENT
13-17	CONCRETE MEDIANS
13-18	MEMBRANE CURING
<del>13-19</del>	<del>ASPHALTIC PRIME COAT – N/A</del>
<del>13-20</del>	<del>TACK COAT – N/A</del>
<del>13-21</del>	<del>NON TRACKING TACK COAT – N/A</del>
13-22	HOT MIX ASPHALTIC CONCRETE
<del>13-23</del>	<del>PAVING FABRIC (PETRO-MAT) – N/A</del>
<del>13-24</del>	<del>STEEL GUARD RAIL – N/A</del>
13-25	GPS MONUMENT
13-26	TEMPORARY BATCH PLANT

**SECTION NO. 13**

**SPECIAL PROVISIONS – PAVING SPECIFICATIONS**

**13-01 ROADWAY EXCAVATION:**

- A. All roadway excavation on this project shall be unclassified and shall be performed in full accordance with the C.O.G. SPECIFICATIONS, Division 200, 203.4, "Unclassified Street Excavation."
- B. Payment for excavation is based on plan quantity. Contractor shall verify excavation/fill quantities and shall notify City in writing of concurrence or disagreement with plan quantities prior to start of construction. Any discrepancies in quantities shall be resolved prior to beginning excavation. No adjustments to plan quantities shall be allowed once excavation/fill activities have begun.
- C. The placement and compaction of fill material in roadway fill areas on this project shall be measured by the cubic yard in place and paid separately from roadway excavation as specified in the item "Compacted Roadway Fill & Embankment". It shall be the responsibility of the Contractor to locate a suitable disposal site outside the right-of-way limits to dispose of both excess and unsuitable material from roadway excavation not needed in roadway fill and embankment. No separate payment shall be made for disposal of excess or unsuitable material. Disposal shall be performed in accordance with appropriate laws and ordinances.
- D. If you are planning on taking fill material from projects to the City of Arlington landfill, please be aware that the landfill operator, Republic Services, has requirements to ensure fill material is acceptable. Please contact Republic Services at (817) 354-2300 directly to obtain details of the requirements.

**13-02 COMPACTED ROADWAY FILL & EMBANKMENT:**

- A. All compacted roadway fill and embankments constructed on this project shall be in accordance with the C.O.G. SPECIFICATIONS, Division 200, 203.7, "Embankment", except as amended herein or as shown on the plans.
- B. All fill material shall be compacted in lifts of loose depth not exceeding 8-inches and compacted to at least ninety-five percent (95%) density per ASTM D698, +/- two percent (2%) optimum moisture content. Each lift shall be tested before a subsequent lift is allowed to be placed. It shall be the responsibility of the Contractor to locate a suitable disposal site outside the right-of-way limits and to dispose of any excess material not needed for constructing embankments to the established grade, shape of the typical sections shown on the plans, and detailed sections or slopes. Disposal shall be performed in accordance with appropriate laws and ordinances.
- C. The placement and compaction of fill material in roadway and embankment areas on this project shall be measured and paid for separately from the "Roadway Excavation". However, no separate payment will be made for the disposal of excess materials as mentioned above. Measurement for compacted roadway fill and embankment shall be for

in-place embankment after compaction to the density specified on the plans. Measurement shall be in cubic yards as determined on the basis of the natural ground cross-section and the finished lines and grades as shown in the plans and computed by the method of average end areas from the project cross-section.

- D. The price bid per cubic yard for "Compacted Roadway Fill and Embankment" shall be full compensation for furnishing all labor, materials, tools, equipment, and incidentals necessary to complete the embankment, including cost of water, sprinkling, wetting, and rolling in accordance with the plans and specifications.

**13-03 CEMENT TREATED BASE (CTB):**

- A. Cement Treated Base shall be in accordance with TxDOT Standard Specification, Item 276. Use strength "L". In any areas where the City determines the subgrade is unstable or unsuitable, the subgrade material shall be removed and be replaced with CTB compacted to ninety-five percent (95%) of TEX-113E at optimum to plus four percent (4%). Unless a separate item is included in the PROPOSAL, CTB shall be subsidiary.
- B. In emergency situations, the City may approve flexible base in lieu of CTB. The flexible base shall be Type "A", Grade 1 Flex Base in accordance with TxDOT Standard Specification Item 247.

**13-04 HYDRATED LIME: N/A**

**13-05 LIME AND CEMENT TREATED SUBGRADE: N/A**

**13-06 CEMENT TREATED SUBGRADE: N/A**

**13-07 EPOXY BONDING AGENT:** Epoxy used shall be in accordance with TxDOT DMS-6100 Epoxies and Adhesives specifications.

**13-08 MISCELLANEOUS CONCRETE TESTING REQUIREMENTS:**

- A. The strength of the concrete shall be determined during the construction by taking a minimum of four (4) test cylinders during each fifty (50) cubic yards of continuous placement. These tests shall be conducted by an approved testing laboratory and the initial tests shall be paid for by the City. The cost of additional testing to isolate areas not complying with the specifications shall be paid for by the Contractor.
- B. Strength tests permitted by the specifications for early form removal shall be conducted by an approved testing laboratory and the cost shall be borne by the Contractor.

**13-09 RECONSTRUCT DRIVES:**

- A. Existing drives which will be affected by proposed construction and which will be reconstructed are specifically called out on the plans. After construction operations are completed in the street area, these drives shall be reconstructed to original or better condition than existed before construction and to satisfaction of the City. Existing surface and base materials and storm drain pipe may be reused if approved by the City.

- B. All work shall conform to the applicable standard and special project specifications. Work shall include all materials, labor, and supervision for the reconstructing the drives and be paid per unit price as stated in the PROPOSAL.

**13-10 CONCRETE CURB AND GUTTER:**

- A. Concrete curb and gutter shall be placed at locations along the project where portions of the existing curb and gutter is removed. Unless otherwise approved by the City, all curb and gutter shall be standard 30-inches curb and gutter sections and be replaced at a minimum thickness of 6-inches or match existing curb and gutter thickness, whichever is greater. Contractor shall remove additional 8-inches thick, 1-foot back of curb of existing material under new curb and gutter limits and replace with 8-inches CTB compacted to ninety-five percent (95%) TEX-113E at optimum to plus four percent (4%).
- B. All concrete used for curb and gutter in the City will have a cement content of not less than five and a half (5.5) sacks of cement per cubic yard of concrete, four and a half percent (4.5%) entrained air (+/- 1.5%), and a minimum compressive strength at twenty-eight (28) days of thirty-six hundred (3,600) pounds per square inch. The unit price bid for curb and gutter shall include all reinforcing steel, including No. 4 "L" bars at every 18-inches. Curb & gutter, including additional excavation and CTB will be paid by the linear foot.
- C. Expansion joints shall be placed at all intersections, P.Cs, P.Ts, driveways, inlets, other curb and gutter or every 200-feet. Tooled joints shall be placed at every 5-feet intervals. All expansion joints shall not be less than ½-inch in thickness with longitudinal dowels. Dowels shall be three No. 4 smooth bars, 24-inches in length. One-half of the dowel shall be coated with asphalt and terminated with an expansion cap.
- D. All work shall be in compliance with C.O.G. Section 305.1. All loose material between the forms will be removed and the grade wetted prior to the placing of the concrete. An approved curing compound shall be applied to the surface in accordance with the Curing Specification. All curbs shall be vibrated to eliminate "honeycomb" appearance.
- E. Locations where homeowners have installed drain pipes that run through the curb, curb opening casting will be required to discharge water through the curb. Drain outfall (R3262 Neenah Foundry or equivalent) shall be installed flush with the curb and the location be approved by the City prior to installation. It is the Contractor's responsibility to connect existing pipe to the curb opening casting and ensure connection is secure with no water leaks or dirt infiltration.
- F. Refer to Section 13-16 for additional concrete specifications. (Rev 1/2022)

**13-11 CONCRETE VALLEY GUTTERS:**

- A. All concrete valley gutters shall have a minimum thickness of 6-inches on residential streets and 8-inches on collector or larger streets. Contractor shall remove additional 8-inches of existing material under proposed valley gutter limits and replace with 8-inches CTB compacted to ninety-five percent (95%) TEX-113E at optimum to plus four percent (4%). Concrete valley gutters shall be reinforced with No. 4 bars on 12-inches spacing in both directions.

B. All concrete shall have a minimum cement content of five and a half (5.5) sacks per cubic yard of concrete, four and a half percent (4.5%) entrained air (+/- 1.5%) and a minimum compressive strength at twenty-eight (28) days of thirty-six hundred (3,600) pounds per square inch. All concrete shall be vibrated and an approved curing compound shall be applied to the surface.

C. Refer to Section 13-16 for additional concrete specifications. (Rev 1/2022)

**13-12 CONCRETE DRIVEWAYS:**

A. All concrete driveways shall have a minimum thickness of 5-inches for residential driveways and 6-inches for commercial driveways or shall match existing driveway thickness, whichever is greater.

B. Driveways shall be composed of concrete having a minimum cement content of five and a half (5.5) sacks per cubic yard of concrete, four and a half percent (4.5%) entrained air (+/- 1.5%) and a minimum compressive strength at twenty-eight (28) days of thirty-six hundred (3,600) pounds per square inch. The unit bid price shall also include No. 4 bars on 18-inches centers both ways. All concrete shall be vibrated and an approved curing compound shall be applied to the surface.

C. The City will replace only those existing driveways specified. Any new drives installed by the Contractor under criteria other than the above will be at his/her own expense.

D. Refer to Section 13-16 for additional concrete specifications. (Rev 1/2022)

**13-13 CONCRETE SIDEWALKS:**

**A. MATERIALS:**

1. Sidewalks shall have a minimum thickness of 4-inches and be constructed of concrete with a minimum cement content of five and a half (5.5) sacks of cement per cubic yard of concrete, four and a half percent (4.5%) entrained air (+/- 1.5%), and a compressive strength of not less than thirty-six hundred (3,600) pounds per square inch at twenty-eight (28) days. Reinforcing steel shall be No. 4 bars on 18-inches centers located 2-inches below the top surface of the sidewalk. All concrete shall be vibrated and as soon as the concrete has obtained its initial set, a white pigmented approved curing compound shall be applied to the surface. (Rev. 12/2020)

**B. CONSTRUCTION PROCEDURE:**

1. In general, the grade of the sidewalks shall be established with respect to the curb. Forms shall be set for all sidewalks and shall be true to line and grade. Forms shall be set to provide a cross slope of ¼-inch per foot (maximum) across the sidewalk toward the street. All forms shall remain in place at least twenty-four (24) hours.

2. The plane of all joints shall make a right angle with the surface of the pavement. No joints shall have an error in alignment of more than ½-inch at any point. The edges of the slab at all joints, except where the joints are sawed, shall be rounded with an edger having a radius of ¼-inch, except as otherwise shown on the plans. The edging shall also be done symmetrically on each section with the plane of the joint.

3. Longitudinal expansion joints, joints used to separate new from old concrete, and all joints around all fire hydrants shall be made of conventional ¾-inch asphalt expansion joint material extending completely through the concrete unless otherwise specified on the plans.
4. Transverse expansion joints shall be ¾-inch in width and be made of high grade redwood with removable ¾-inch wide by 1-inch deep cap strip or with asphalt expansion material with removable cap strip, sealed with self-leveling gray silicon sealant. Joints shall be placed through the concrete at a spacing not to exceed 40-feet. 24-inches, No. 4 smooth steel dowels shall be placed on 12-inches centers through each expansion joint, one end of each dowel being wrapped or otherwise prevented from bonding to the concrete.
5. Contraction joints shall be made in the sidewalk at regular intervals, such intervals generally being equal to the width of the sidewalk.
6. The Contractor shall grade or fill, as necessary, along the sidewalk to match the existing ground. Care will be used to ensure that adjacent property outside the right-of-way line is protected.
7. When sidewalks are constructed adjacent to retaining walls, the plans shall specify if the sidewalk and retaining wall are to be constructed as separate items or as a sidewalk with wall unit. The sidewalk with wall unit shall be constructed in accordance with the City typical details. When specified to be constructed as separate items, the limits of pay for the sidewalk shall be all of the sidewalks up to the face of the retaining wall. The retaining wall shall be paid under retaining wall on a cubic yard basis.
8. Unless otherwise approved by the City, nothing shall be installed in the sidewalks, including but not limited to meters, meter boxes, valves, fire hydrants, manholes, and sign poles.

C. Refer to Section 13-16 for additional concrete specifications.

(Rev 1/2022)

**13-14 BARRIER FREE RAMPS:**

- A. Sidewalks shall be constructed barrier free and fully accessible. Curb ramps are required at all intersections between sidewalks and streets. At driveways, the curb shall be laid down and the sidewalk section shall be maintained through the driveway. All concrete shall be vibrated and the ramps be constructed in accordance with the detail shown on the plans.
- B. Ramp slopes shall not exceed 8.33%. All ramps shall be constructed with current ADA standards, including Colonial Red (Federal Color No. 20109) Cast In Place Detectable/Tactile Warning Surface Tile as manufactured by Armor Tile or 4-inches x 8-inches x 2¼-inches ADA compliant detectable warning pavers in Antique (shade No. 32)

as manufactured by Whitacre-Greer or in River Red as manufactured by Pavestone, or approved equal.

C. All incidentals, including but not limited to, the transition, the landings, curb, pavers and sidewalks all the way to the tie-in as necessary to meet ADA compliance, the concrete below the detectable warning device, the bedding sand shall be subsidiary to the unit price bid for each ramp.

D. Refer to Section 13-16 for additional concrete specifications. (Rev 1/2022)

**13-15 CONCRETE PANEL REPLACEMENT: N/A**

**13-16 CONCRETE/CONCRETE PAVEMENT:**

A. DESCRIPTION:

1. This item shall consist of portland cement concrete payement, panel replacement, sidewalk, driveways, retaining walls, etc., with reinforcement as shown on plans, with or without monolithic curbs, constructed as herein specified on the prepared subgrade or other base course in conformity with the lines, grades, thickness and typical cross-sections shown on plans. Concrete shall be considered of satisfactory quality provided:

- a. it is made of materials accepted for the job,
- b. in the proportions approved by the City and
- c. mixed, placed, finished and cured in accordance with the requirements of this specification and meets the requirements herein specified.

B. MATERIALS:

1. Cement

a. The cement shall be Type 1 of a standard brand of portland cement. Type III cement shall be used when high early strength concrete is required by the plans or special provisions. If the use of high early strength cement is not specified, the Contractor desires to use it, he shall obtain written permission of the City and shall assume all additional costs incurred by the use of such cement. Type I and Type III cement shall conform to the requirements of ASTM Designation: C 150. When Type III cement is used, the average strength of briquettes at the age of seven (7) days shall be higher than that attained at three (3) days. Either the tensile or the compressive tests may be used for either type cement. In addition to the requirements of ASTM Designation C 150, the specific surface area of Type I cement shall not exceed two thousand (2,000) square centimeters per gram as measured by the Wagner Turbidimeter in accordance with Test Method Tex-310-D.

2. Admixtures

a. No admixtures shall be used in the concrete without prior approval, and all approved admixtures shall meet applicable AASHO, ASTM, and CSA requirements.



- b. Air-entraining agents shall have proven compatibility with all local concrete materials, including cement, and shall be capable of providing in the concrete the required air contents and an air-void system known to produce durable, scale-resistant concrete.
  - c. Admixtures other than air-entraining agents shall not be used until trial mixes with job materials have shown them to be compatible at job temperatures. Trial mixes must also show that desired properties will be imparted to the fresh concrete without any subsequent loss of strength or durability in the hardened concrete.
  - d. Air reducing agents will not be acceptable for use.
3. Coarse Aggregate
- a. Coarse aggregate shall consist of durable crushed limestone of reasonably uniform quality throughout, free from injurious amounts of salt, alkali, vegetable matter or other objectionable material, either free or as an adherent coating on the aggregate. It shall not contain more than a quarter percent (0.25%) by weight of clay lumps, nor more than one percent (1%) by weight of shale nor more than five percent (5%) by weight of laminated and/or friable particles when tested in accordance with Test Method Tex-413-A.
  - b. Coarse aggregate shall have a wear of not more than thirty-eight percent (38%) when tested according to Test Method Tex-410-A, and shall meet the grading requirements of TxDOT Standard Specification 421.2 Table 3 for 1-inch or 1½-inches.
  - c. Where the coarse aggregate is delivered on the job in two or more sizes or types, each type and/or size shall be batched and weighed separately.
  - d. A supply of aggregate adequate for two (2) days paving shall be stockpiled at the concrete plant. All aggregates shall be handled and stored in such a manner as to prevent size segregation and contamination by foreign substances. When segregation is apparent, the aggregate shall be remixed. At the time of its use, the aggregate shall be free from frozen material and aggregate containing foreign materials will be rejected. Coarse aggregate that contains more than half a percent (0.5%) free moisture by weight shall be stockpiled for at least twenty-four (24) hours prior to use.
  - e. Adequate storage facilities shall be provided for all approved materials. The intermixing of nonapproved materials with approved materials either in stockpiles or in bins will not be permitted. Aggregates from different sources shall be stored in different stockpiles unless otherwise approved by the City.
  - f. Each aggregate stockpile shall be reworked with suitable equipment at such times, as required by the City to remix the material to provide uniformity of the stockpile.

4. Fine Aggregate

- a. Fine Aggregate shall consist of sand or a combination of sands, and shall be composed of clear, hard, durable, uncoated grains. Fine aggregate shall be free from injurious amounts of salt, alkali or vegetable matter. Unless otherwise shown on plans, the acid insoluble residue of the fine aggregate shall be not less than twenty-eight percent (28%) by weight when tested in accordance with Test Method Tex-612-J.
- b. It shall not contain more than half a percent (0.5%) of weight of clay lumps. It shall contain no more than twenty percent (20%) manufactured sand. When subjected to the color test for organic impurities, Test Method Tex-408-A, the fine aggregate shall not show a color darker than the standard.
- c. When the fine aggregate is tested in accordance with Test Method Tex-317-D, it shall have tensile strength of mortar equal to or greater than the strength of standard Ottawa sand mortar.
- d. Unless specified otherwise, fine aggregate shall meet the grading requirements of TxDOT Standard Specifications 421.2, Table 4.
- e. Fine aggregate will be subjected to the Sand Equivalent Test (Test Method Tex-203-F). The sand equivalent value shall not be less than eighty (80), or less than the value shown on the plans, whichever is greater. The acid insoluble residue of fine aggregate used in concrete subject to direct traffic shall be not less than sixty percent (60%) by weight when tested in accordance with Test Method Tex 612-J.

5. Mixing Water

- a. Water for use in concrete and for curing shall be free from oil, acids, organic matter or other deleterious substances and shall not contain more than 1,000 parts per million of chlorides as Cl, nor more than 1,000 parts per million of sulfates as SO<sub>4</sub>.
- b. Water from municipal supplies approved by the State Health Department will not require testing. Water from other sources will not be allowed. A sample of approximately one gallon will be submitted to Materials and Tests Division, Camp Hubbard, Austin, for test and approval.
- c. Tests procedure shall be in accordance with AASHTO Designation: T 26.

6. Joint Filler

- a. Boards for expansion joint filler and for contraction joints shall be of the size, shape and type indicated on the details.
- b. Boards shall be obtained from redwood timber. They shall be sound heartwood and shall be free from sapwood, knots, clustered birdseye, checks and splits.

Occasional sound or hollow birdseye, when not in clusters, will be permitted provided the board is free from any other defects that will impair its usefulness as a joint filler.

7. Joint Sealing Material

a. Unless otherwise shown on the plans, joint sealing material shall conform to the requirements herein or as an approved equivalent. The material shall adhere to the sides of the concrete joint or crack and shall form an effective seal against infiltration of water and incompressibles. Joints shall not be overfilled. The material shall not crack or break when exposed to low temperatures.

i. **Hot Poured Rubber:** This sealer shall be a rubber asphalt compound which when heated shall melt to the proper consistency for pouring and shall solidify on cooling at atmospheric temperatures.

The material when tested in accordance with Test Method Tex-525-C shall meet the following requirements:

Penetration:

32°F, 200 grams, 60 seconds..... not less than 0.28 cm  
77°F, 150 grams, 5 seconds .....45 to 0.75 cm

Flow:

5 hours, 140°F, 75° incline..... not more than 0.5 cm

Bond and Extension:

15°F, 5 cycles      There shall be no cracking of the joint sealing material or break in the bond between the joint material and the mortar pieces.

8. Asphalt Board

a. Asphalt board when used in accordance with plans shall be of required size and uniform thickness and when used in transverse joints, shall conform approximately to the shape of the pavement crown as shown on plans. Asphalt board shall consist of two liners of 0.016-inch asphalt impregnated paper filled with a mastic mixture of asphalt and vegetable fiber and/or mineral filler.

b. Boards shall be smooth, flat and straight throughout, and shall be sufficiently rigid to permit easy installation. Boards that crack or shatter during installing and finishing operations will not be acceptable. Board shall be furnished in lengths equal to one-half (1/2) the pavement width or in lengths equal to the width between longitudinal joints and may be furnished in strips or scored sheet of the required shape. When tested in accordance with Test Method Tex-524-C the asphalt board shall not deflect from the horizontal more than 3/4-inch in 3 1/2-inches.

9. Steel Dowel Bars

a. Smooth steel bar dowels shall be of the size and type indicated on the details and shall be open-hearth, basic oxygen or electric-furnace steel conforming to the mechanical properties specified for grade 60 in ASTM Designations: A 615. The free end of dowel bars shall be smooth and free of shearing burrs.

b. One end of each dowel bar shall be encased in an approved cap having an inside diameter of one 1/16-inch greater than the diameter of the dowel bar. The cap shall be of such strength, durability and design as to provide free movement of the dowel bar and shall be approved by the City prior to use. One end of the cap shall be lubricated in order to permit free movement of the dowel bar for a distance equivalent to one hundred fifty percent (150%) of the width of the expansion joint used. The dowel caps and dowel bars shall be held securely in place by an approved dowel support basket, or an approved equivalent thereof.

10. Steel Reinforcement

Reinforcing steel shall be in accordance with DMS-7320, Item 440, "Qualification Procedure for Reinforcing Steel Producing Mills".

11. Membrane Curing Compound

The membrane curing compound shall be in accordance with "Membrane Curing," Type 2 white pigmented.

C. EQUIPMENT: All equipment and tools necessary for handling materials and performing all parts of the work shall be approved by the City and shall conform to Item 360.4 "Equipment" of the latest TxDOT Specs.

D. PROPORTIONING CONCRETE:

1. Concrete Control

a. The City shall furnish at its expense continuous plant control of the concrete by having full time a commercial laboratory at concrete plants to make the following test and inspection:

i. Check incoming aggregates, fine and coarse, for gradations, specific gravity, unit weight, abrasion wear, etc.

ii. Determine moisture contents of the aggregates to adjust bin weights to comply with designs.

iii. Make all concrete designs in accordance with Specifications.

iv. Check scales as needed for accuracy.

v. Help maintain proper slumps, as specified.

vi. Send inspection reports for each day's operations.

b. The laboratory shall cast field specimens and perform related tests for every one hundred (100) cubic yards of concrete manufactured for main lane paving

and, every fifty (50) cubic yards of concrete manufactured for hand placement or any portion thereof. (Rev. 8/2019)

2. Concrete Mix Design

- a. The concrete shall be composed of Normal Portland Cement or High-Early-Strength Portland Cement, coarse aggregate, fine aggregate and water. The coarse aggregate cannot be less than sixty percent (60%) of the total combination of aggregates by volume. High-Early-Strength Portland Cement may be used only when specifically approved by the City in writing and the concrete made therewith shall be subject to all applicable provisions of these specifications.
- b. Within a period of not less than ten (10) days prior to the start of concreting operations, the Contractor shall submit to the City a design of the concrete mix he proposes to use together with samples of all materials to be incorporated into the mix and a full description of the source of supply of each material component. The design of the concrete mix shall conform to the provisions and limitation requirements of these specifications. When the design mix has been approved by the City, there shall be no change or deviation from the proportions thereof or sources of supply except as hereinafter provided. No concrete may be placed on the job site until the mix design has been approved by the City.
- c. It is the intent of this specification to develop and use an economical mix design with the proportion of fine aggregate in the concrete mix near the upper limit of the range that permits proper placing, finishing, and texturing and which will fulfill all requirements of this specification when using acceptable materials as furnished by the Contractor. Where hand finishing is permitted, the addition of one-half sack of cement (6 sacks total) per cubic yard shall be required.
- d. The concrete mix design shall have an entrained air content of four and a half percent (4.5%), +/- one and a half percent (1.5%).
- e. After the mix proportions and water-cement ratio required to produce concrete of the specified strength have been determined, placing of the concrete may be started. The strength of the concrete in the completed pavement will be determined by compressive strength test specimens.
- f. All concrete shall be designed for a minimum compressive strength at twenty-eight (28) days of thirty-six hundred pounds per square inch (3,600 psi) or a minimum flexural strength of five hundred seventy-five pounds per square inch (575 psi) at the age of seven (7) days when Type I Portland Cement is used. If Type III cement is used, a flexural strength at seven (7) days of six hundred pounds per square inch (600 psi) will be required. Flexural strength will be determined as a simple beam with center point loading (A.S.T.M. Designation C 293). While concreting operations are in progress, beam or cylinder specimens shall be made by the City's independent laboratory according to the STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS FOR PUBLIC WORKS AND

TRANSPORTATION CONSTRUCTION, AS ISSUED BY THE NORTH CENTRAL TEXAS COUNCIL OF GOVERNMENTS (NCTCOG). All concrete having a minimum compressive strength at twenty-eight (28) days of thirty-six hundred (3,600) psi shall have a minimum cement content of five and a half (5.5) sacks per cubic yard.

3. Workability:

a. Concrete shall be uniformly plastic, cohesive and workable. Workable concrete is defined as concrete which can be placed without honeycomb and without voids in the surface of the pavement after the specified finishing machine has been over a given area twice. Workability shall be obtained without producing a condition such that free water appears on the surface of the slab when being finished as specified. Where water appears on the surface of the concrete after finishing and this condition cannot be corrected by reasonable adjustment in the batch design, the bleeding will be immediately corrected by one of the following measures or a combination of two or more of the following listed measures:

- i. Redesign of the batch.
- ii. Increase of cement content.
- iii. Use of an approved admixture.

b. The mix will be designed with intention of producing concrete which will have a slump of 1½-inches when tested in accordance with the STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS FOR PUBLIC WORKS AND TRANSPORTATION CONSTRUCTION AS ISSUED BY THE NORTH CENTRAL TEXAS COUNCIL OF GOVERNMENTS (NCTCOG). The maximum slumps shall be as follows.

- i. Machine placement – 4-inches maximum
- ii. Hand placement – 5-inches maximum

E. FORMS:

1. Placing and Removing Forms

a. The subgrade under the forms shall be firm and cut true to grade so that each form section when placed will be firmly in contact for its whole length and base width, and exactly at the established grade. Any subgrade under the forms below established grade shall be corrected, using suitable materials, place, sprinkled and rolled as directed. Forms shall be staked with at least three pins for each 10-foot section. A pin shall be placed at each side of every joint. Form sections shall be tightly joined and keyed to prevent relative displacement. Forms shall be cleaned and oiled each time they are used. Forms shall be set for sufficient distance in advance of the point where concrete is being placed to permit a finished and approved subgrade length of not less than 300-feet ahead of the mixer. Conformity of the grade and alignment of forms shall be checked immediately prior to placing concrete, and all necessary corrections made by

the Contractor. Where any form has been disturbed or any subgrade becomes unstable, the form shall be reset and rechecked.

- b. In exceptional cases, the City may require suitable stakes driven to the grade of the bottom of the forms to afford additional support. Sufficient stability of forms to support the equipment operated thereon and to withstand its vibration without springing or settlement shall be required. If forms settle and/or deflect over 1/8-inch under finishing operations, paving operations shall be stopped and the forms shall be reset to line and grade.
- c. Forms shall remain in place for not less than twelve (12) hours after the concrete has been placed. They shall be carefully removed in such a manner that no damage will be done to the edge of the pavement. Any damage resulting from this operation shall be immediately repaired. After the forms have been removed, the ends of all joints shall be cleaned, and any honeycombed areas shall be patched immediately with an approved mortar. In cases of severe honeycomb, the pavement will be removed.
- d. Immediately after patching, the form trench, if used, shall be filled immediately with earth from the shoulders in such a manner as to shed water from rainfall or curing away from the edge of the pavement. On completion of the required curing, the subgrade or shoulders adjacent to the pavement shall be placed in condition to maintain drainage.
- e. Any grade revisions shall be established by the City. No additional payment over the contract unit price will be made for any pavement of a thickness exceeding that required on the plans.

F. CONCRETE MIXING AND PLACING:

1. Mixing Methods

- a. The concrete shall be mixed in a mixer conforming to the requirements of the latest TxDOT Standard Specifications.
- b. Mobile batch trucks and/or volumetric trucks will not be permitted for use for any concrete. (Rev 1/2022)
- c. Central Mix: The aggregates, cement and water shall be measured separately, introduced into the mixer, and mixed for a period of not less than fifty (50) seconds nor more than ninety (90) seconds, measured from the time the last aggregate enters the drum to the time discharge of the concrete begins. The required water shall be introduced into the mixing drum during the first fifteen (15) seconds of mixing. The entire contents of the drum shall be discharged before any materials of the succeeding batch are introduced.
- d. The City may increase the minimum mixing time to that necessary to produce thoroughly mixed concrete based on inspection or appropriate uniformity tests.

The mixing time may be varied at any time as necessary to produce acceptable concrete.

The concrete shall be discharged into the specified hauling equipment and delivered to the road site. If truck agitators are used, the concrete shall be continuously agitated at not less than one (1) nor more than six (6) rpm as directed by the City.

f. The maximum size of the concrete batch, absolute volume, shall not exceed one hundred twenty percent (120%) of the rated size of the mixer (40.8 cubic feet maximum batch for the 34-cubic foot paver). Spilling of material from the mixer drum shall be corrected by reducing the size of the batch. Retempering or remixing of concrete will not be permitted.

g. The initial batch of concrete mixed after each time the mixer is washed out shall be enriched by additional mortar. The additional mortar shall be one (1) sack of cement and three (3) parts sand.

## 2. Weather Conditions

a. All weather temperatures will be based on readings forecasted by the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA).

b. Concrete shall not be placed until ambient temperature reaches thirty-five (35) degrees with a projected high of forty (40) degrees (minimum). Operations shall cease when temperature falls below forty (40) degrees. Temperature shall be taken in the shade and away from artificial heat.

c. The Contractor shall be responsible for the quality and strength of concrete under cold weather conditions and any concrete damaged by freezing shall be removed and replaced at his/her expense.

## 1. Mixing Verification

Before unloading and prior to concrete placement, delivery tickets shall be furnished for the batch of concrete containing the information required for TxDOT Form 596. The City will verify all required information is provided on the delivery tickets and may suspend concrete operations until the corrective actions are implemented if the delivery tickets do not provide the required information.

## 4. Placing Concrete

a. Moisture shall be applied to the subgrade prior to placement of concrete. Concrete shall be placed only on approved subgrade or subbase, and unless otherwise indicated on plans, the full width of the pavement shall be constructed monolithically. The concrete shall be rapidly deposited on the subgrade in successive batches and shall be distributed to the required depth and for the entire width of the pavement by shoveling or other approved methods.



Workmen will not be permitted to walk in the concrete with any foreign material on their boots or shoes.

- b. The placing operation shall be continuous. At the end of the day, or in case of unavoidable interruption or delay of more than thirty (30) minutes, work shall terminate at the nearest regularly established joint.
- c. When the concrete is to be placed in separate lanes, the junction line shall not deviate from the true line more than ½-inch at any point and shall be finished as shown on plans.
- d. Concrete shall be distributed to such depth that when consolidated and finished, the slab thickness required by plans will be obtained at all points and the surface shall not, at any point, be below the established grade. Special care shall be exercised in placing and spading concrete against forms and at all joints to prevent the forming of honeycombs and voids.
- e. If a central mixer is used, the Contractor shall provide a system satisfactory to the City for determining that concrete delivered to the road meets the specified requirements for mixing and time of placing.

5. Time

- a. Concrete shall not be placed before the time of sunrise and shall not be placed later than shall permit the finishing of the pavement during sufficient natural light in accordance with NCTCOG Specification 303.5.5 below.

<b>Temperature/Time Requirements</b>		
Concrete Temp (At Point of Placement)	Max Time (No Retarding Agent) Minutes	Max Time <sup>(1)</sup> (With Retarding Agent) Minutes
Non-Agitated Concrete		
All temperatures	30	45
Agitated Concrete		
Above 90F	45	75
Above 75F thru 90F	60	90
75F and Below	90	120

<sup>(1)</sup>Normal dosage of retarder

- b. Any concrete not placed as herein prescribed within the time limits specified will be rejected.

6. Hot Weather Concrete Placing

- a. Concrete with a temperature of 85°F or higher will require a retarding agent admixture.

b. The maximum temperature of concrete at the time of placement will not exceed 100°F. All concrete that exceeds this temperature will be rejected.

c. It shall be the Contractor's and/or his/her supplier's responsibility to take steps to control the temperature below 100°F.

7. Reinforcing Steel and Joint Assemblies

a. Reinforcement must be stored above the ground on platforms, skids, or other supports, and be protected from damage and deterioration. Reinforcement must be free from dirt, paint, grease, oil, and other foreign materials when placed in the work. Reinforcement shall be free from defects such as cracks and delamination. Rust, surface seams, surface irregularities, or mill scale will not be cause for rejection if the minimum cross-sectional area of a hand wire-brushed specimen meets the requirements for the size of steel specified.

b. Stainless reinforcing steel shall not be in direct contact with uncoated reinforcing steel, nor with galvanized reinforcing steel. This does not apply to stainless steel wires and ties. Stainless reinforcing steel shall be stored separately off the ground on wooden supports.

c. Lap-splice, weld-splice, or mechanically splice bars as shown on the plans. Additional splices not shown on the plans will require approval by the City. Splices not shown on the plans will be allowed in slabs no more than 15-inches in thickness, columns, walls, and parapets.

d. Unless otherwise approved, bars shall not be spliced less than 30-feet in plan length. For bars extending 30-feet in plan length, the distance center-to-center of splices must be 30-feet minimum 1 splice length, with no more than 1 individual bar length less than 10-feet. Lap splices not shown on plans, but otherwise permitted shall be in accordance with the following table. The specified concrete cover and spacing at splices must be maintained the lap-spliced bars placed in contact, and securely tied together.

Minimum Lap Requirements for Steel Bar Sizes through No. 11

Bar Size Number (inches)	Uncoated Lap Length	Coated Lap Length
3	1 ft. 4 in.	2 ft. 0 in.
4	1 ft. 9 in.	2 ft. 8 in.
5	2 ft. 2 in.	3 ft. 3 in.
6	2 ft. 7 in.	3 ft. 11 in.
7	3 ft. 5 in.	5 ft. 2 in.
8	4 ft. 6 in.	6 ft. 9 in.
9	5 ft. 8 in.	8 ft. 6 in.
10	7 ft. 3 in.	10 ft. 11 in.
11	8 ft. 11 in.	13 ft. 5 in.

- Do not lap No. 14 or No. 18 bars.

- Lap spiral steel at least 1 turn.
  - Splice WWR using a lap length that includes the overlap of at least two (2) cross wires plus 2-inches on each sheet or roll. Splices using bars that develop equivalent strength and are lapped in accordance with the above table will be allowed.
  - Lap the existing longitudinal bars with the new bars shown in the above table for box culvert extensions with less than 1-foot of fill. Lap at least 1-foot for extensions with more than 1-foot of fill.
  - Welded splices shall conform to the requirements of the plans and of TxDOT Item 448 “Structural Field Welding”. Field-prepare ends of reinforcing bars if they will be butt-welded. Delivered bars must be long enough to permit weld preparation.
  - Install mechanical coupling devices in accordance with the manufacturer’s recommendations at locations shown on the plans. Threaded male or female connections must be protected and the threaded connections cleaned when making the connection. Damaged or repaired threads will not be permitted.
  - Mechanical coupler alternate equivalent strength arrangements, to be accomplished by substituting larger sizes or more bars, will be considered if approved in writing before fabrication of the systems.
- e. All reinforcing steel, including tie bars, dowel bars, and dowel support baskets shall be accurately placed and secured in position in accordance with details shown on plans (use TxDOT latest approved Reinforcing Steel Mill List). Reinforcing bars shall be securely wired together at alternate intersections, following a pattern approved by the City, and at all splices, and shall be securely wired to each dowel intersected. Tie bars shall be installed in the required position by the method and device shown on plans or by approved method and device equivalent thereto. Bar coatings required by plans, and of material specified, shall be completed and the bars and coating shall be free of dirt or other foreign matter at the time of installation of the concrete.
- f. Tightly adhered scale or rust which resists removal by vigorous wire brushing need not be removed except that excessive loss of section to the reinforcement due to rust shall be cause for rejection. Excessive loss of section shall be defined as loss of section to the extent that the reinforcement will no longer meet the physical requirements for the size and grade of steel specified.
- g. Where plans require an assembly of parts of pavement joints, the assembly shall be completed, placed at required location and elevation, and all parts rigidly secured in required position by the method and devices shown on plans or by approved method and devices equivalent thereto. Dowel bars shall be accurately installed in joint assemblies in accordance with plans and details, each parallel to the pavement surface and to the center line of the pavement and shall be rigidly secured in required position by such means (as shown on plans, or approved equivalent thereto) that will prevent their displacement during placing and finishing of the concrete. Unless specifically authorized by the City

in writing, the dowel support baskets, shall be accurately installed in joint assemblies in accordance with plans and details, each unit vertical with its length parallel to the center line of the pavement, and all units shall be rigidly secured in required position by such means (as shown on plans, or approved equivalent thereof) that will prevent their displacement during placing and finishing of the concrete. Header boards, joint filler and other material used for forming joints shall be accurately notched to receive each dowel support basket. All dowel support baskets shall be free of rust and clean when installed in the concrete.

- h. Pre-set L bars shall not be straightened in new concrete before three (3) days of cure. Drilling for dowel or rebar installation shall not take place before three (3) days of cure on new concrete.

#### 8. Construction Joints

- a. Intentional stoppage of the concrete placement shall be at either an expansion joint or at a weakened plane joint. The following provisions shall govern for each type of joint at which the concrete placement is stopped.

- i. When the concrete placement is stopped at an expansion joint, the complete joint assembly shall be installed and rigidly secured in required position as shown on plans. A bulkhead of sufficient cross-sectional area to prevent deflection, accurately notched to receive the dowel support baskets or dowels and shaped accurately to the cross-section of the pavement shall be provided and installed as a back-up for the joint filler and rigidly secured in required position to permit accurate finishing of the concrete up to the joint. After the concrete has been finished to the joint, formation of the joint shall be executed as specified herein and in accordance with plan requirements. The back-up bulkhead shall remain in place until immediately prior to the time when concrete placing is resumed, when it shall be carefully removed in such manner that no element of the joint assembly will be disturbed. The exposed portion of the joint assembly shall be free to adhere concrete, dirt or other material at the time concrete placement is resumed.

- b. When concrete placement is stopped at a weakened plane joint, all applicable provisions of paragraph (a) above shall apply in addition to the following requirements:

- i. The Contractor shall have available a bulkhead shaped to the section of the pavement. This bulkhead must be drilled to permit the continuation of all longitudinal reinforcing steel through the construction joint and shall be of sufficient section and strength to prevent deflection.

- ii. Immediately upon the unintended stoppage of the concrete placement, the Contractor shall place the available concrete to a line and install the above described bulkhead at right angles to the centerline of the pavement, perpendicular to the surface and at the required elevation. Concrete shall be placed and finished to this bulkhead. Any concrete remaining on the subgrade ahead shall be removed and disposed of as directed. When concrete placement is resumed before the concrete has set to the extent that the concrete will stand on removal of the bulkhead, the new concrete shall be vibrated with the first. An edge created by a construction joint of this type shall have a tooled joint and shall be sealed as required for contraction joints.

G. JOINTS:

1. General

- a. All transverse and longitudinal joints when required in the pavement shall be of the type or alternate type shown on plans and shall be constructed at required location, on required alignment, in required relationship to tie bars and joint assemblies, and in accordance with details shown on the plans. Such stakes, braces, brackets or other devices shall be used as necessary to keep the entire joint assembly in true vertical and horizontal position.
- b. Joints shall be installed as shown on the plans. A rigid transverse bulkhead, for the reinforcing steel, shall be installed and shaped accurately to the cross-section of the pavement when concrete placement is stopped. (Rev 2/2020)
- c. Careful workmanship shall be exercised in the construction of all joints, to ensure that the concrete sections are completely separated by an open joint or by the joint materials and to ensure that the joints will be true to the outline indicated.

2. Expansion Joints

Transverse expansion joints shall be formed perpendicular to the centerline and surface of the pavement and shall be constructed in accordance with the sequence of operations shown on plans. After the transverse finishing machine and before the longitudinal finishing machine have passed over the joint, the Contractor shall test the joint filler for correctness of position and make any required adjustment in position of the filler and shall install the tooled joint form in accordance with plans. After removal of the joint seal form as required by plans, the tooled joint above the joint filler shall be thoroughly sandblasted or machine routed to remove all projecting concrete, laitance, dirt or foreign matter. The concrete faces of the tooled joint shall be left true to line and section throughout the entire length of the joint. On completion of curing of the pavement, the joint sealing filler of the type specified shall be placed in accordance with plans. The faces of the tooled joint shall be clean and surface dry at the time joint sealing filler is placed. On completion of the joint seal, the pavement adjacent to the joint shall be left free of joint sealing material. The tooled joint shall be exactly above and not narrower than the joint filler with no concrete over hangings.

**3. Weakened Plane Joints**

a. Weakened plane joints shall consist of transverse contraction joints and longitudinal joints and shall be sawed as specified on the plans. The saw shall be power driven; shall be manufactured especially for the purpose of sawing concrete, and shall be capable of performing the work. Saw blades shall be designed to make a clean smooth cut having a width and depth of cut as detailed on the plans. Tracks adequately anchored, chalk, string line or other approved methods shall be used to provide true alignment of the joints. The concrete saw shall be maintained in good operating condition and the Contractor shall keep a stand-by power saw on the project at all times when concrete operations are under way. No concrete shall be sawed without the use of water.

b. If membrane curing is used, the portion of the seal which has been disturbed by sawing operations shall be restored by the Contractor by spraying the areas with additional curing seal.

i. **Contraction joints:** Transverse contraction joints shall be sawed joints perpendicular to the centerline and the surface of the pavement and shall be constructed by the method, and in sequence of operations, as shown on plans. Where sawed joints are used, contraction joints at intervals shown on the plans shall be sawed as soon as sawing can be accomplished without damage to the pavement and before twenty-four (24) hours after the concrete has been placed. The remaining contraction joints shall be sawed in a uniform pattern as directed by the City, and they shall be completed before uncontrolled cracking of the pavement takes place. All joints shall be completed before placing concrete in succeeding lanes and before permitting traffic to use the pavement.

ii. **Longitudinal Joints:** Longitudinal joints shall be of the type or alternate types shown on plans and shall be constructed of specified materials in accordance with provisions of the plans. Longitudinal joints shall be constructed accurately to required lines, shall be perpendicular to the pavement surface at the joint, and the pavement surface over and adjacent to the joint shall be finished as specified.

Longitudinal joints shall be sawed as soon as sawing can be accomplished without damage to the pavement and before twenty-four (24) hours after the concrete has been placed, the exact time to be approved by the City. Sawing shall not cause damage to the pavement and the groove shall be cut with a minimum of spalling.

**4. Joint Sealers**

a. Joint sealants will not be required on concrete pavement that is to be overlaid with asphaltic materials. Excessive spalling of the joint saw groove shall be repaired using an approved method before installing the sealant. All joints shall be sealed before opening the pavement to all traffic. (Rev. 2/2020)

- b. Prior to sealing, joints shall be routed to the proper depth. Joints shall be cleaned and sealed in accordance with TxDOT Item 438 "Cleaning and Sealing Joints". All slurry waste shall be removed immediately. All joints shall be sealed no sooner than seven (7) days and no later than twenty-eight (28) days from time of placement, unless otherwise directed by the City. (Rev. 2/2020)
- c. Hot Poured Rubber: This material shall be melted in an approved oil-bath kettle equipped with temperature indicators and continuously operated mechanical agitators. The material shall not be heated above 450°F and any material heated above that temperature will be rejected.

5. Asphalt Board

Asphalt expansion materials, wherever used, shall be anchored to the concrete on one side of the joint by means of copper wire or nails not lighter than No. 12 B & S gage. Such anchorage shall be sufficient to overcome the tendency of the material to fall out of the joint.

6. Curbs

- a. The curb shall be constructed in lengths equal to the adjoining pavement slab lengths, and expansion joints shall be provided in the curb opposite each transverse expansion joint in the pavement. Expansion joint material shall be of the same thickness, as specified for the pavement and shall be of the section as shown for the curb. All expansion joints shall be carried through the curb.
- b. Transverse contraction joints shall be sawed across the curb at the same location and at the same time as sawing of the transverse contraction joints in the pavement are sawed.

H. SPREADING AND FINISHING:

1. Machine Finishing

- a. All concrete pavement shall be finished mechanically with approved power-driven machines, except as herein provided. Hand finishing will be permitted on the transition from a crowned section to a super-elevated section without crown on curves, and on straight line super-elevation sections less than 100-feet in length. Hand finishing will also be permitted on that portion of a widened pavement outside the normal pavement width, on sections where the pavement width is not uniform, or required monolithic widths are greater than that of available finishing machines.
- b. Machine finishing of pavement shall include the use of power-driven spreaders, power-driven vibrators, power-driven transverse strike-off, and screed, or such alternate equipment as may be substituted and approved under the latest TxDOT Standard Specifications. Further, any machine finishing equipment that rides on previously placed forms will be prohibited on any roadway with a total width of more than 28-feet, nor will they be allowed on any divided roadway of any width.

All concrete pavement shall be consolidated by a mechanical vibrator. As soon as the concrete has been spread between the forms, the approved mechanical vibrator shall be operated to consolidate the concrete and remove all voids. Hand-manipulated vibrators shall be used for areas not covered by the mechanical vibratory unit. A wet Burlap Drag will be required on all machine paving.

Concrete shall be of a consistency that allows completion of all finishing operations without addition of water to the surface. Minimal amount of water fog mist may be used to maintain a moist surface. If float or straightedge operations result in excess slurry, fogging shall be reduced.

After finishing is complete and the concrete is still workable, the surface shall be tested for trueness with an approved 10-foot steel straightedge. The straightedge shall be operated from the side of the pavement, placed parallel to the pavement centerline and passed across the slab to reveal any high spots or depressions. Straightedge operations shall begin with twenty-five percent (25%) of straightedge on new concrete and seventy-five percent (75%) on the existing concrete, advancing to no more than half its length. Practically perfect contact of the straightedge with the surface will be required; and the pavement shall be leveled to this condition, in order to ensure conformity with the surface test required below after the pavement has fully hardened. Any correction of the surface required shall be accomplished by adding concrete, if required, and by operating the longitudinal float over the area. The surface test with the straightedge shall then be repeated.

f. For one-lane pavement placement and uniform widening, the equipment for machine finishing of concrete pavement shall be as directed by the City but shall not exceed the requirements of these specifications.

g. After completion of the straightedge operation, the first pass of the baker broom shall be made as soon as construction operations permit and before the water sheen has disappeared from the surface. This shall be followed by as many passes as required to produce the desired uniform texture depth satisfactory to the City. There shall be no unnecessary delays between passes. The baker broom shall be free from encrusted mortar.

## 2. Hand Finishing

a. Hand finishing will only be permitted with prior authorization from the City. Six sacks of cement per cubic yard shall be required for all hand finish concrete.

b. When hand finishing is permitted, the concrete shall be struck off with an approved strike-off screed to such elevation that when consolidated and finished the surface of the pavement shall conform to the required section and grade.

## 3. Surface Testing



After the concrete has been placed twelve (12) hours or more, if necessary the City may test the surface of the pavement with a 10-foot straightedge. The surface shall not vary from the straightedge by more than 1/8-inch between any two (2) contacts, when measured longitudinally or transversely. Any high spots causing a departure from the straightedge in excess of that specified shall be ground down by the Contractor to meet the surface test requirements. Where the texture of the pavement is removed by extensive grinding, the texture shall be restored by grooving the concrete to meet the surface finishing requirements.

I. CURING:

1. All concrete pavement shall be cured by protecting it against loss of moisture for a period of not less than seventy-two (72) hours from the beginning of curing operations. After finishing operations have been completed and immediately after the water shown has dissipated from the surface, the entire surface of the newly laid concrete shall be covered and cured in accordance with the requirements specified. Failure to provide sufficient cover material or failure to maintain saturation in wet curing methods, lack of water to adequately take care of both curing and other requirements, or other failures to comply with curing requirements shall be cause for immediate suspension of concreting operations and removal of any sections which are improperly cured.
2. The covering material used in curing shall be removed as necessary to saw joints or to comply with the requirements for "Surface Test." The concrete surface shall be maintained wet with a water spray, if required, and the covering material replaced immediately on completion of sawing and testing and any required surface correction.

J. PROTECTION OF PAVEMENT AND OPENING TO TRAFFIC:

1. Weather Conditions

Contractor shall monitor the weather and be aware that paving that is rained upon is no longer compliant with specifications and must be removed and replaced at Contractor's expense. No topping of any kind will be allowed to serve as a riding surface. No concrete will be allowed to stay in place when:

- Water/cement ratio has been exceeded
- Curing compound has been placed on it and the subsequently finished
- Concrete has been covered with plastic for so long that normal finishing activities cannot provide the proper finish for the pavement surface

2. Protection of Pavement

- a. The Contractor shall erect and maintain the barricades required by plans and such other standard and approved devices as will exclude public traffic and traffic of his/her employees and agents from the newly placed pavement for the periods of time hereinafter prescribed. Portions of the roadway, or crossings of the roadbed required to be maintained open for use by traffic, shall not be obstructed by the above required barricades. Crossings of the pavement required by plans, or by construction sequence, during the period prior to opening to traffic as herein specified, shall be provided with an adequate and substantial bridge, approved by the City.

b. It shall be the responsibility of the Contractor to protect concrete finish from any type of damage. Any concrete finish that has been damaged will be removed and replaced at the Contractor's expense.

**3. Opening Pavement to Traffic**

a. The pavement shall be closed to all traffic, including vehicles of the Contractor, until the concrete is at least seven (7) days old but not before concrete has achieved seventy percent (70%) of design strength. This period of closure to all traffic may be extended if, in the opinion of the City, weather or other conditions make it advisable to provide an extension of the time of protection.

b. At the end of the seven (7) day period and as long thereafter as determined by the City, the pavement may be opened for use by vehicles of the Contractor provided the gross weight (vehicle plus load) of such vehicles does not exceed fourteen thousand (14,000) pounds. Such opening, however, shall in no manner relieve the Contractor from his/her responsibility for the work. On the sections of the pavement that will be opened to traffic, all joints shall first be sealed, the pavement cleaned and soil placed against the pavement edges. This seven (7) day policy shall also apply to other types of operations, such as sealing, backfill, etc., where traffic movements could affect results of the work performed.

c. After the concrete in any section is fourteen (14) days old, or as long thereafter as determined by the City, such section of pavement may be opened to all traffic as required by plans or when all other required work, as directed by City, has been performed for safety purposes.

d. When High Early Strength Concrete resulting from the use of Type III cement as required by plans or special provisions is used, the pavement may be opened to all traffic after the concrete is seven (7) days old, or as long thereafter as deemed necessary by the City, subject to the same provisions governing the opening after fourteen (14) days as above prescribed.

e. Where the Contractor desires to move any equipment not licensed for operation on public highways, on or across any pavement opened to traffic, he shall protect the pavement from all damage.

**4. Emergency Opening to Traffic**

a. The City may require the opening of pavement to traffic prior to the minimum time specified above under conditions of emergency which in his/her opinion require such action in the interest of the public. In no case, shall the City order the opening of the pavement to traffic within less than seventy-two (72) hours after the last concrete in the section is placed.

b. The Contractor shall remove all obstructing materials, place soil against the pavement edges and perform other work involved in providing for the safety of

traffic as required by the City in ordering emergency opening. Orders for emergency opening of the pavement to traffic will be issued by the City in writing.

K. PENALTY FOR DEFICIENT PAVEMENT THICKNESS:

1. Refer to The North Texas Council of Governments (NCTCOG) Specification 303.8.2.
2. No additional payment over the contract unit price will be made for any pavement of a thickness exceeding that required by the plans.

L. MEASUREMENT: When provided by plans and PROPOSAL, concrete pavement will be measured by the square yard of the surface area of completed and accepted work. The measurement shall include the portion of the pavement slab extending beneath the curb. When concrete pavement is to be measured by the square yard and monolithic curb is required, monolithic curb will be subsidiary to the item for reinforced concrete pavement.

M. PAYMENT:

1. The work performed and materials furnished as prescribed by this item and measured as provided under "Measurement" will be paid for at the unit price bid for Reinforced Concrete pavement, or the adjusted unit price for pavement for deficient thickness as provided under "Penalty for Deficient Pavement Thickness," which price shall be full compensation for shaping and fine grading the roadbed, including furnishing and applying all water required; for furnishing, loading and unloading, storing, hauling and handling all concrete ingredients, including all freight and royalty involved; for placing and adjusting forms, including supporting material or preparing track grade; for mixing, placing, finishing, sawing, cleaning and sealing joints, and curing all concrete; for furnishing and installing all reinforcing steel; for furnishing all materials for sealing joints and placing longitudinal, expansion and weakened plane joints, including all steel dowel caps and dowel support baskets required, and wire and devices for placing, holding and supporting the steel bars, dowel support baskets and joint filler material in proper position, for coating steel bars where required by plans, and for manipulations, labor, equipment, appliances, tools, traffic provisions and incidentals necessary to complete the work.
2. Excavation required by this item in the preparation of the subgrade and for the completion of the shoulders and slopes will be measured and paid for in accordance with the provisions governing the Items of "Unclassified Roadway Excavation."
3. Sprinkling and rolling required for the compaction of the rough subgrade in advance of fine grading will be measured and paid for as indicated in the governing items of excavation. Maintenance of a moist condition of the subgrade in advance of fine grading and concrete placing will not be paid for directly but shall be considered subsidiary work, as provided above.

**13-17 CONCRETE MEDIANS: N/A**

**13-18 MEMBRANE CURING:**

**A. DESCRIPTION:**

This item shall consist of curing concrete pavement, curbs, gutters, sidewalks, driveways, medians, islands, concrete channel/slope, concrete structures, and other concrete as indicated on the plans by impervious membrane method.

**B. MATERIALS:**

1. The membrane curing compound shall comply with the "Standard Specification for Liquid Membrane-forming Compounds for Curing Concrete," ASTM Designation: C 309, Type 1 clear or translucent, or Type 2 white pigmented. The material shall have a minimum flash point of 80°F when tested by the "Pensky-Martin Closed Cup Method."

2. It shall be of such consistency that it can be satisfactorily applied as a fine mist through an atomizing nozzle by means of approved pressure spraying equipment at atmospheric temperatures above 40°F.

3. It shall be of such nature that it will not produce permanent discoloration of concrete surfaces nor react deleteriously with the concrete or its components. Type 1 compound shall contain a fugitive dye that will be distinctly visible not less than four (4) hours nor more than seven (7) days after application.

4. The compound shall produce a firm, continuous, uniform moisture impermeable film free from pinholes and shall adhere satisfactorily to the surfaces of damp concrete. It shall, when applied to the damp concrete surface, at the rate of coverage specified herein, dry to touch in not more than four (4) hours and shall adhere in a tenacious film without running off or appreciably sagging. It shall not disintegrate, check peel or crack during the required curing period.

5. The compound shall not peel or pick up under traffic and shall disappear from the surface of the concrete by gradual disintegration.

6. The compound shall be delivered to the job only in the manufacturer's original containers, which shall be clearly labeled with the manufacturer's name, the trade name of the material, and a batch number or symbol with which test samples may be correlated.

7. The water retention test shall be in accordance with Test Method Tex-219-F. Percentage loss shall be defined as the water lost after the application of the curing material was applied. The permissible percentage moisture loss (at the rate of coverage specified herein) shall not exceed the following:

- 24 hours after application.....2 percent
- 72 hours after application.....4 percent

C. CONSTRUCTION METHODS:

1. The membrane curing compound shall be applied after the surface finishing has been completed, and immediately after the free surface moisture has disappeared. The surface shall be sealed with a single uniform coating of the specified type of curing compound applied at the rate of coverage recommended by the manufacturer and directed by the City, but not less than one (1) gallon per one hundred eighty (180) square feet of area. The Contractor shall provide satisfactory means and facilities to properly control and check the rate of applications of the compound.
2. The compound shall be thoroughly agitated during its use and shall be applied by means of approved power pressure sprayers. The sprayers shall be equipped with satisfactory atomizing nozzles. Only on small miscellaneous items will the Contractor be permitted to use hand-powered spray equipment.
3. The compounds shall not be applied to a dry surface and if the surface of the concrete has become dry, it shall be thoroughly moistened prior to application of membrane by fogging or mist application. Sprinkling or coarse spraying will not be allowed.
4. At locations where the coating shows discontinuities, pinholes, or other defects; or if rain falls on the newly-coated surface before the film has dried sufficiently to resist damage, an additional coat of the compound shall be applied immediately at the same rate of coverage specified herein.
5. To ensure proper coverage, the City shall inspect all treated areas after application of the compound for the period of time designated in the governing specification for curing, either for membrane curing or for other methods. Dry areas are identifiable because of the lighter color or dry concrete as compared to damp concrete. All suspected areas shall be tested by placing a few drops of water on the suspected areas. If the water stands in rounded beads or small pools which can be blown along the surface of the concrete without wetting the surface, the water-impervious film is present. If the water wets the surface of the concrete as determined by obvious darkening of the surface, or by visible soaking into the surface, no water-impervious film is present. Should the foregoing test indicate that any area during the curing period is not protected by the required water-impervious film, an additional coat or coats of compound shall be applied immediately, and the rate of application of the membrane compound shall be increased until all areas are uniformly covered by the required water-impervious film.
6. When temperatures warrant protection against freezing, curing by this method shall be supplemented with an approved insulating material capable of protecting the concrete for the specified curing period.
7. If at any time there is reason to believe that this method of curing is unsatisfactory or is detrimental to the work, the Contractor shall immediately cease the use of this method and shall change to curing by one of the other methods specified under this contract.

**D. MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT:**

Work and materials prescribed herein will not be paid for directly but shall be included in the unit price bid for the items of construction in which these materials are used.

**13-19 ASPHALTIC PRIME COAT: N/A**

**13-20 TACK COAT: N/A**

**13-21 NON-TRACKING TACK COAT: N/A**

**13-22 HOT MIX ASPHALTIC CONCRETE:**

**A. PLACEMENT:**

HMAC cannot be laid until ambient temperature reaches forty (40) degrees with a projected high of fifty (50) degrees (minimum). Operations shall cease when temperature falls below fifty (50) degrees.

**B. PAVING MIXTURES:**

1. Mixture Design

Mixture shall be in accordance with TxDOT Standard Specification, Item 340.

2. Stability and Density

The mixture shall be designed to produce an acceptable mixture within tolerance, at or near optimum density. The mixture molded in the laboratory in accordance with TXDOT Test Method Tex-206-F and the bulk specific gravity of the laboratory compacted mixture determined in accordance with TXDOT Test Method Tex-207-F should have the following percent of maximum theoretical density as measured by TXDOT Test Method Tex-227-F and stability conforming to TXDOT Test Method Tex-208-F:

<u>Optimum Density Range</u>	<u>Stability, Percent</u>
95 to 97 Percent	Not Less than 42

3. Sampling and Testing for Field Control

Extraction tests for bitumen content and aggregate gradation shall be made for each five hundred (500) tons produced or fraction thereof. Extraction tests shall conform to TXDOT Test Method Tex-210-F. Tests for stability of the asphalt mixture shall conform to TXDOT Test Method Tex-208-F. The mixture shall not vary from the grading proportions of the aggregate and the asphalt content by more than the respective tolerances and shall be within the limits specified for master grading.

4. Recycled Asphalt Pavement (RAP)

All RAP Material must meet TxDOT item number 340. Do not exceed fifteen percent (15%) RAP by weight in Type "B" mixtures; or five percent (5%) RAP by weight in Type "D" mixtures.

5. Recycled Asphalt Shingles (RAS): No RAS will be allowed in any mixtures.

C. IN-PLACE COMPACTION CONTROL:

1. In-place compaction control is required for all mixtures.
  - a. Asphaltic concrete should be laid and compacted to contain no more than eight percent (8%) nor less than three percent (3%) air voids unless otherwise indicated. The percent air voids will be calculated using the maximum theoretical specific gravity of the mixture determined according to TXDOT Test Method Tex-227-F. Roadway specimen, which shall either be cores or sections of asphalt pavement, will be tested according to TXDOT Test Method Tex-207-F. The same specimen shall be used for determining both the maximum theoretical density and field density. Specimens used for field density determinations shall be carefully crumbled, using heat, if necessary, and the maximum theoretical density determined as specified. If heating is necessary, the specimen shall be heated to the lowest temperature required for proper preparation of the sample. The use of nuclear field density determinations shall not be accepted as the basis for acceptance with respect to density. However, an approved nuclear gauge may be used to establish a rolling pattern.
  - b. The Contractor shall be responsible for assuring that the compaction of the asphaltic concrete being laid will attain between three (3) and eight (8) percent air voids. The Contractor's responsibility for the required compaction includes the selection of rolling equipment and the selection of rolling patterns to achieve the required compaction within the guidelines provided herein. The above selections of equipment and procedures must provide the required qualities of profile, smooth riding surface, and consistent workmanship in appearance.
2. Initial testing will be the responsibility of the City. Any retest will be the responsibility of the Contractor. Additional information is provided in Section 11-20 Quality Assurance/Quality Control (QA/QC).

D. ASPHALT TRANSITIONS:

Transitional asphalt shall have a minimum thickness of 4-inches Type "B" HMAC and 2-inches Type "D" HMAC or shall match existing pavement thickness, whichever is greater. Transition width shall be a minimum 2-feet for temporary and a minimum of 4-feet for permanent with 8-inches CTB. Unless a separate item is included in the PROPOSAL, asphalt transition shall be subsidiary.

13-23 PAVING FABRIC (PETRO-MAT): N/A

13-24 STEEL GUARD RAIL: N/A

13-25 GPS MONUMENT:

- A. Contractor shall Furnish and Install two (2) Berntsen Top Security Rod Monuments with logo # 200016 or two (2) Berntsen C35D - 3 1/2" Aluminum concrete markers with E logo #E432 or any combination of both (at the City Surveyor's discretion) complete and in

place. Location of said Monuments/Markers shall be marked by the City Surveyor. Contractor shall notify the City Surveyor two (2) weeks before planned installation date.

B. Contractor shall have a Registered Professional Land Surveyor survey the Berntsen Monuments/Markers, publish and certify GPS data sheets that meet and/or exceed Second Order Specifications using the Global Positioning System (GPS). Data Sheet horizontal coordinates shall be NAD 83 (2007 Adjustment) or be based on the latest adjustment of the City's GPS Monument Manual (located on Public Works & Transportation's web page). Please specify which adjusted datum is used for the project. Data Sheet vertical datum for the Berntsen Monuments/Markers shall be based on NAVD88 derived from calculating by applying vertical shifts derived from Geoid model 2012A or Geoid model 2003 or Geoid model 2009 to ellipsoid heights calculated from GPS/GNSS observations referenced to the North American Datum of 1983 (2007) or later datum or meet and/or exceed Third Order Specifications using conventional leveling methods.

C. Contractor shall notify City Surveyor beforehand of exact date of installation of Berntsen Monuments/Markers so City Surveyor can inspect procedures of the installation of Berntsen Monuments/Markers.

**13-26. TEMPORARY BATCH PLANT:**

A. If the Contractor chooses to construct a temporary batch plant, the following conditions (at a minimum) must be satisfied prior to approval from the City.

a. Batch plant must be permitted by the City. A copy of Notice of Intent (NOI) and approved Storm Water Pollution Prevention Plan must be on the premises.

b. Location map must be provided indicating routes for raw material delivery.

c. Location map must be provided indicating that the nearest recreational area, school, or residence is located at least 300-feet away.

d. Letter of Permission must be provided by the City of the property (on which the batch plant is to be constructed) requiring that the Contractor leaves the site in as good or better condition.

e. The start and stop dates for operation of the plant must be provided.

f. It must be stated that the batch plant will be used to provide concrete for no other project(s) without written approval from the City.

B. No additional pay will be made for the temporary batch plant.

END OF SECTION



## SECTION NO. 14

### SPECIAL PROVISIONS – WATER AND SANITARY SEWER SPECIFICATIONS

#### NUMERICAL LISTING

Section No.

- 14-01 POLY-VINYL CHLORIDE (PVC) WATER PIPE AND FITTINGS
- 14-02 EMBEDMENT REQUIREMENTS FOR WATER PIPE & FITTINGS
- 14-03 THRUST BLOCKINGS
- 14-04 VALVE OPERATIONS NOTIFICATION
- 14-05 INTERRUPTION OF WATER SERVICE
- ~~14-06 CLEANING OF NEW WATER MAIN – N/A~~
- 14-07 FIRE HYDRANTS
- 14-08 RELOCATION OF EXISTING FIRE HYDRANTS
- 14-09 REMOVE/SALVAGE EXISTING FIRE HYDRANTS
- 14-10 GATE VALVES
- 14-11 WATER SERVICES
- 14-12 WATER METER REPLACEMENT
- 14-13 WATER METER RELOCATION OR ADJUSTMENT
- 14-14 WATER METER BOX REPLACEMENT
- 14-15 ABANDONING EXISTING VALVE BOX AND MANHOLE
- ~~14-16 POLY-VINYL CHLORIDE (PVC) SANITARY SEWER PIPE & FITTINGS – N/A~~
- ~~14-17 EMBEDMENT REQUIREMENTS FOR SANITARY SEWER PIPE & FITTINGS – N/A~~
- ~~14-18 LOW PRESSURE AIR TEST OF SANITARY SEWER LINES – N/A~~
- ~~14-19 DEFLECTION TESTING OF FLEXIBLE SANITARY SEWER – N/A~~
- ~~14-20 SANITARY SEWER SERVICE – N/A~~
- ~~14-21 BYPASS PUMPING – N/A~~
- ~~14-22 CAST-IN-PLACE MANHOLES – N/A~~
- ~~14-23 CCTV INSPECTION OF SANITARY SEWER MAINS – N/A~~
- ~~14-24 DISPOSAL OF EXCESS MATERIAL – N/A~~
- ~~14-25 PIPE HANDLING – N/A~~
- ~~14-26 TYING INTO EXISTING LINES – N/A~~
- ~~14-27 PLUGGING EXISTING LINES TO BE ABANDONED – N/A~~
- ~~14-28 DUCTILE IRON PIPE – N/A~~
- ~~14-29 DUCTILE IRON FITTINGS – N/A~~
- ~~14-30 GPS DATA ON WATER & SANITARY SEWER INSTALLATION – N/A~~

## SECTION NO. 14

### SPECIAL PROVISIONS – WATER AND SANITARY SEWER SPECIFICATIONS

Water and Sanitary Sewer improvements shall be in accordance with the latest version of the CITY OF ARLINGTON STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS FOR WATER & SANITARY SEWER CONSTRUCTION located at the City's web page, [https://www.arlingtontx.gov/city\\_hall/departments/public\\_works\\_transportation/engineering/standard\\_specifications\\_special\\_provisions](https://www.arlingtontx.gov/city_hall/departments/public_works_transportation/engineering/standard_specifications_special_provisions), hereinafter referred to as "Standard Specifications". References in parentheses located in the heading of each section below correspond to sections of the Standard Specifications. (Rev. 4/2019)

**14-01 POLY-VINYL CHLORIDE (PVC) WATER PIPE & FITTINGS (B 4A and B 4B):** The poly-vinyl chloride (PVC) water pipe 4-inch through 60-inch shall in all respects comply with the latest revision of AWWA C900-16 (DR 18) Pressure Class 235 psi. All fittings shall be mechanical joint ductile iron fittings with polyethylene encasement. (Rev 11-2018)

**14-02 EMBEDMENT REQUIREMENTS FOR WATER PIPE & FITTINGS (B 19 & C 3.14):** Unless otherwise specified, all water pipes shall be in accordance with Class "C" embedment detail.

**14-03 THRUST BLOCKINGS (C 4.11 and C 6.10):**

- A. Thrust blocking shall be placed at fire hydrants, valves, tapping sleeves, bends, tees, wyes, crosses, plugs and bends of five (5) degree or greater in the main water line. Each block, except those for upward thrusts, shall be placed so as to rest against firm undisturbed foundation of trench bottom. The supporting area shall be sufficient to withstand the thrust, including water hammer which may develop. All concrete used for thrust blocking shall conform to the section "Thrust Blocking" of the Standard Specifications. This is not a separate pay item but will be considered subsidiary to the various bid items.
- B. Blocking at bends shall be computed based upon pipe thrust at bends, or tees, with internal pressure of one hundred fifty (150) psi. Where upward thrusts are to be blocked, the thrust blocking shall be of sufficient weight to resist the thrust and the concrete shall be reinforced as directed by the City. Other blocking sizes shall be computed based upon a maximum safe allowable soil bearing pressure of twenty-five hundred (2,500) pounds per square foot of undisturbed earth.
- C. The thrust blocking shall be placed against undisturbed trench walls, with a minimum of 18-inches between trench wall and pipe. Blocking shall extend a minimum of 0.75 X pipe diameter below and above the centerline of pipe and shall not extend beyond any joints. If requested by the City, the ends of the thrust blockings shall be contained in wood or metal forms. Where upward thrusts are to be blocked, tie-down blocking shall be used in accordance with the details.

**14-04 VALVE OPERATIONS NOTIFICATION:** The Contractor shall provide a minimum of five (5) business days notification to the City prior to the scheduled water tie-ins that require operation of any valves. For pigging, pressure testing, and chlorinating the new water line, the

Contractor shall provide a minimum of two (2) business days notification to the City prior to any valve operation. Under no circumstances shall Contractor operate any valves without the proper approval by the City.

**14-05 INTERRUPTION OF WATER SERVICE:**

A. When work performed has the potential of disrupting businesses or homestead, including but not limited to water cutoff or driveway reconstruction, Contractor shall notify the business owners, occupants and residents in writing minimum forty-eight (48) hours prior to commencing work. Contractor will be responsible to provide and place door hangers by the required time. Door hangers shall be printed in English & Spanish. See Section 11-25 Owner Notification for sample of door hangers.

B. Scheduled water shut-offs that affect critical water customers (as identified by the City); that prevent the operation of a business or industry; or that are longer than eight (8) hours in duration shall require accommodations to minimize the disruption to service. All accommodations shall be coordinated with and approved by the Inspector and the Arlington Water Utilities Department. When temporary services or fire protections are deemed necessary by the City, payment shall be per linear foot of 2-inches temporary service, including connections to existing water mains, fire hydrants, and customer services. Payment for the temporary fire protection shall be per linear foot of 6-inches pipe, including connections to existing water mains, fire hydrants, and private fire lines.

C. Temporary water lines must be chlorinated and receive a good sample before temporary tie-ins are performed. No additional payment shall be made for afterhours work or other accommodations.

**14-06 CLEANING OF NEW WATER MAIN (C 20.6): N/A**

**14-07 FIRE HYDRANTS (B 9):** Refer to the latest fire hydrant specifications and detail at <http://www.arlingtontx.gov/details>. (Rev. 4/2019)

**14-08 RELOCATION OF EXISTING FIRE HYDRANTS (C 12):** The unit price bid for relocating existing fire hydrants shall include the cost of the necessary fittings and extensions to relocate the fire hydrants as specified on the plans and to adjust them to the finished top of curb grade.

**14-09 REMOVE/SALVAGE EXISTING FIRE HYDRANT:** The unit price bid shall include cost of removing and cleaning the excess concrete from the exterior of the existing fire hydrants and delivery to the City of Arlington South Services Center, 1100 SW Green Oaks Boulevard. (Rev. 4/2019)

**14-10 GATE VALVES (B 10):**

A. Refer to the latest gate valve specifications and detail at <http://www.arlingtontx.gov/details>. (Rev. 4/2019)

B. No bypass valves shall be installed for all resilient-seated gate valves, unless otherwise specified on the plans or bid PROPOSAL.

- C. Valves 12-inches or smaller shall be furnished and installed by Contractor, unless otherwise noted in the PROPOSAL. Valves 16-inches or larger will be furnished by the City. The unit price in the PROPOSAL for the installation of the 16-inches or larger valves shall include cost for pickup and loading at the South Service Center Warehouse (1100 SW Green Oaks Boulevard) and transporting to the job site. The Contractor will be responsible for inspecting the valves and ensuring good working condition of entire valve assembly prior to transporting it to the jobsite. Any damage or repairs needed to the valve assembly once it leaves the warehouse will be the responsibility of the Contractor.

**14-11 WATER SERVICES:**

- A. Refer to the latest water services details at <http://www.arlingtontx.gov/details>. (Rev. 4/2019)
- B. The cost of the water service shall include trench and trench safety at various depths.
- C. The contractor shall furnish, install & maintain temporary trench repair in accordance with Section 12-36 Temporary Street Repair immediately after service line installation.  
(Rev. 10/2019)

**14-12 WATER METER REPLACEMENT:**

- A. **NEW METER:**  
AMI meters required for this project will be furnished by the City. The new AMI meter sizes shall match the existing meter sizes unless called out differently on the plans. The unit price in the PROPOSAL for installation of the meters shall include cost for pickup and loading at the South Service Center Warehouse (1100 SW Green Oaks Boulevard) and transporting to the job site. The Contractor will be responsible for inspecting the meters and ensuring good working condition of the entire meter assembly prior to transporting it to the jobsite. Any damage or repairs needed to the meter once it leaves the warehouse will be the responsibility of the Contractor.
- B. **METER REPLACEMENT SCHEDULING:**  
Contractor shall coordinate with Inspector to ensure City Meter Services Representative will be available to pick up the old meters and take final readings. Contractor to verify size of meter prior to installation. New or replacement meters shall not be installed until after concrete flatwork is complete.  
(Rev. 4/2019)
- C. **METER REPLACEMENT:**  
Contractor shall check for running water prior to commencing meter change-out. Contractor shall notify customer prior to water service disruption. Contractor will be responsible for turning off the water to the building. Contractor shall then replace the meter, using new gaskets or washers. Contractor shall put plastic caps on the inlet and outlet of the old meter and handle the meter with care in the event of post-removal testing. All meter adapters, bushings, or other hardware necessary to install the new water meter in the customer's existing meter setup must be furnished by the Contractor. Contractor is required to install standard connections (meter couplings) for all 5/8-inch through 2-inches meters if none exist currently. These couplings must receive prior approval from the City. Contractor shall be responsible for bringing meter to the final grade based on the latest details with all necessary pipe and fittings. Contractor shall ensure meter wire is left in neat, working, and accessible condition. **All work on the customer side shall be completed by**

a licensed plumber and considered as subsidiary to the bid item for meter replacement. (Rev. 4/2019)

**D. EXISTING METER:**

Contractor shall leave the old meter inside the new meter box for City Meter Services Representative to pick up and to take final readings. Contractor shall complete new meter tag information legibly written, and attach to old meter. (Rev. 4/2019)

**E. DIRT OR WATER AROUND METER:**

Contractor shall ensure the meter in the meter box has proper access, including removing and disposing any excess dirt. Dirt shall be removed such that there is a minimum of 2-inches clearance below the meter. If the water meter is fully or partially submerged, the Contractor shall remove the water prior to changing the meter. Contractor must ensure that the water service is not contaminated in any way, including intermittently by standing water in the meter box.

**14-13 WATER METER RELOCATION OR ADJUSTMENT:**

- A. If no meter replacement is required, the Contractor shall be responsible for relocating or adjusting (horizontal and vertical) water services, water meters to finished grade. This shall include the relocation or adjustment of the service line on the City's side of meter (from main to the meter), the quarter bend, the curb stop or angle valve, depending on service size, and the meter. The meter with curb stop or angle valve shall be adjusted accordingly with the water service detail. Relocation or adjustment of the customer's service line shall be performed by a licensed plumber. The Contractor shall also be responsible for disconnection and reconnection of antenna for AMI meters. It will be the Contractor's responsibility to notify the Inspector of any pre-existing damages prior to the relocation or adjustments.
- B. The Contractor shall also endeavor to keep meters accessible during the project construction for reading purposes. In the event the meters are covered during construction, the Contractor shall mark their locations with stakes and shall uncover the meters within twenty-four (24) hours when notified to do so by the Inspector.

**14-14 WATER METER BOX REPLACEMENT:**

- A. Water meter boxes will be furnished by the City. The Contractor shall provide a minimum of two (2) weeks notice to the Inspector prior to picking the meter boxes from the South Service Center Warehouse, 1100 SW Green Oaks Boulevard, and transporting to the job site. Water meter boxes damaged by the Contractor shall be replaced at the Contractor's expense.
- B. The Contractor shall also be responsible for disconnection and reconnection of antenna used for AMI meters. All meter boxes shall be set to the finished grade. All work related to meter boxes and antenna shall be considered subsidiary to the various bid items unless otherwise indicated in the bid PROPOSAL as a pay item. It will be the Contractor's responsibility to notify the Inspector of any pre-existing damages prior to the replacement.

**14-15 ABANDONING EXISTING VALVE BOX AND MANHOLE:**

(Rev 10/2018)

- A. The unit price for abandoning existing valve boxes shall include removing the top 10-inches or top section, fill void area with sand or approved material, backfill and compact per backfill specifications, and repair pavement if located in street, or replace with 2-inches of topsoil including hydromulch or sod if located at back of curb.
  
- B. The unit price for abandoning existing manholes shall include removing the cone or top section, plugging all penetrations with concrete, fill void with sand or an approved material, backfill and compact per backfill specifications from top of manhole section to subgrade if within pavement limits or to 2-inches below grade if outside pavement limits. Repair pavement per permanent or temporary pavement repair specifications or install 2-inches of topsoil including hydromulch or sod to match existing grade if located at back of curb.

**14-16 POLY-VINYL CHLORIDE (PVC) SEWER PIPE & FITTINGS (B 7): N/A**

**14-17 EMBEDMENT REQUIREMENTS FOR SANITARY SEWER PIPE & FITTINGS (B 19 & C 3.14): N/A**

**14-18 LOW PRESSURE AIR TEST OF SANITARY SEWER LINES (C 29): N/A**

**14-19 DEFLECTION TESTING OF FLEXIBLE SANITARY SEWER (C 27): N/A**

**14-20 SANITARY SEWER SERVICE: N/A**

**14-21 BYPASS PUMPING: N/A**

**14-22 CAST-IN-PLACE MANHOLES (C 18.3): N/A**

**14-23 CCTV INSPECTION OF SANITARY SEWER MAINS (C 28): N/A**

**14-26 TYING INTO EXISTING LINES (C 25): N/A**

**14-27 PLUGGING EXISTING LINES TO BE ABANDONED: N/A**

**14-28 DUCTILE IRON PIPE (B 5): N/A**

**14-29 DUCTILE IRON FITTINGS (B 15): N/A**

**14-30 GPS DATA ON WATER & SANITARY SEWER INSTALLATION: N/A**

END OF SECTION

**SECTION NO. 15**

**SPECIAL PROVISIONS – DRAINAGE SPECIFICATIONS**

**NOT APPLICABLE**

## SECTION NO. 16

### TRENCH SAFETY AND OSHA

- A. Pursuant to law, trench safety systems are required for all trench excavations that exceed a depth of five feet and shall require a safety program which governs the presence and activities of individuals working in and around the trench excavation. The trench safety systems and safety program shall be in accordance with current Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA) standards. A copy of the 2012 OSHA standards is included for the Contractor's convenience. However, the Contractor must check current and future OSHA Rules as they may change from time to time.
- B. The low bidder shall be required to submit a trench safety plan to the project engineer at least 10 days prior to beginning work on the project that will involve trenching operations. The trench safety plan shall be in accordance with current OSHA rules and regulations. The trench safety plan shall specify the method or methods of trench safety to be used with specific information given for each. If the Contractor chooses to use an option from OSHA in the design of sloping and benching systems or design of support systems, shield systems, and other protective systems which requires that the soil be classified as Type A, B, or C, the Contractor shall be required to provide soil investigations and testing necessary to classify the soil type. Soil investigation information must include location and depth. The review of the trench safety plan by the City of Arlington is only for general conformance with OSHA rules and regulations and to ensure sufficient information for inspection purposes. The review in no way relieves the Contractor from responsibility for trench safety in accordance with current law.
- C. Each bidder shall satisfy himself, by personal examination of the location of the proposed work and by such other means as he may prefer, as to the requirements of the work to enable him to construct his proposal intelligently. The bidder shall make himself familiar with all of the Contract Documents and other instructions before submitting his proposal (bid) in order that no misunderstanding shall exist in regard to the nature and character of the work to be done. No allowance will be made for any claim that the proposal is based upon incomplete information as to the nature and character of the site or the work involved. Conditional proposals will not be accepted.
- D. The Contractor shall make daily inspections of the Trench Safety Systems to ensure that the systems meet OSHA requirements. Daily inspection is to be made by a "competent person" provided by the Contractor. If evidence of possible cave-ins or slides is apparent, all work in the trench shall cease until the necessary precautions have been taken by the Contractor to safeguard personnel entering the trench. It is the sole duty, responsibility and prerogative of the



Contractor, not the owner or the Engineer, to determine the specific applicability of the designed trench safety systems to each field condition encountered on the project.

**E. The Contractor shall indemnify and hold harmless the City, its employees and agents, from any and all damages, costs, (including, but not limited to, attorney's fees, court costs, and costs of investigation) judgments or claims by anyone for damage to property, injury or death or persons resulting from the collapse or failure of any trenches, ditches or other excavations constructed under or associated with this contract.**

**It is the express intention of the parties, both Contractor and the City, and the Contractor acknowledges and agrees that this indemnity provision provides indemnity by the Contractor to indemnify and protect the City from the consequences of the City's own negligence, whether that negligence is the sole or concurring cause of the injury, death or damage and in the case the City is negligent either by act or omission in providing for trench safety, including but not limited to inspections, failure to issue stop work orders, and the hiring of the Contractor.**

**F. Included in the proposal is a separate pay item for the trench safety system and the trench safety program. This pay item will be a linear foot basis and will be full compensation for labor, tools, materials, equipment, and incidentals to complete the work. All requirements, as outlined in this section will be incorporated within this bid item. Should conditions during construction require that alternate methods of trench safety be used, the Contractor shall submit a revised trench safety plan following the same guidelines as in B. There will be no additional compensation for changes in the trench safety plan as may be required during construction due to changes in conditions.**

9/27/04

(c) *Coaming*—The raised frame, as around a hatchway in the deck, to keep out water.

(d) *Jacob's ladder*—A marine ladder of rope or chain with wooden or metal rungs.

(e) *Rail*, for the purpose of § 1926.605, means a light structure serving as a guard at the outer edge of a ship's deck.

### Subpart P—Excavations

**AUTHORITY:** Sec. 107, Contract Worker Hours and Safety Standards Act (Construction Safety Act) (40 U.S.C. 333); Secs. 4, 6, 8, Occupational Safety and Health Act of 1970 (29 U.S.C. 653, 655, 657); Secretary of Labor's Order No. 12-71 (36 FR 8754), 8-76 (41 FR 25059), or 9-83 (48 FR 35736), as applicable, and 29 CFR part 1911.

**SOURCE:** 54 FR 45959, Oct. 31, 1989, unless otherwise noted.

#### § 1926.650 Scope, application, and definitions applicable to this subpart.

(a) *Scope and application.* This subpart applies to all open excavations made in the earth's surface. Excavations are defined to include trenches.

(b) *Definitions applicable to this subpart.*

*Accepted engineering practices* means those requirements which are compatible with standards of practice required by a registered professional engineer.

*Aluminum Hydraulic Shoring* means a pre-engineered shoring system comprised of aluminum hydraulic cylinders (crossbraces) used in conjunction with vertical rails (uprights) or horizontal rails (walers). Such system is designed, specifically to support the sidewalls of an excavation and prevent cave-ins.

*Bell-bottom pier hole* means a type of shaft or footing excavation, the bottom of which is made larger than the cross section above to form a belled shape.

*Benching* (Benching system) means a method of protecting employees from cave-ins by excavating the sides of an excavation to form one or a series of horizontal levels or steps, usually with vertical or near-vertical surfaces between levels.

*Cave-in* means the separation of a mass of soil or rock material from the side of an excavation, or the loss of soil from under a trench shield or support

system, and its sudden movement into the excavation, either by falling or sliding, in sufficient quantity so that it could entrap, bury, or otherwise injure and immobilize a person.

*Competent person* means one who is capable of identifying existing and predictable hazards in the surroundings, or working conditions which are unsanitary, hazardous, or dangerous to employees, and who has authorization to take prompt corrective measures to eliminate them.

*Cross braces* mean the horizontal members of a shoring system installed perpendicular to the sides of the excavation, the ends of which bear against either uprights or wales.

*Excavation* means any man-made cut, cavity, trench, or depression in an earth surface, formed by earth removal.

*Faces or sides* means the vertical or inclined earth surfaces formed as a result of excavation work.

*Failure* means the breakage, displacement, or permanent deformation of a structural member or connection so as to reduce its structural integrity and its supportive capabilities.

*Hazardous atmosphere* means an atmosphere which by reason of being explosive, flammable, poisonous, corrosive, oxidizing, irritating, oxygen deficient, toxic, or otherwise harmful, may cause death, illness, or injury.

*Kickout* means the accidental release or failure of a cross brace.

*Protective system* means a method of protecting employees from cave-ins, from material that could fall or roll from an excavation face or into an excavation, or from the collapse of adjacent structures. Protective systems include support systems, sloping and benching systems, shield systems, and other systems that provide the necessary protection.

*Ramp* means an inclined walking or working surface that is used to gain access to one point from another, and is constructed from earth or from structural materials such as steel or wood.

*Registered Professional Engineer* means a person who is registered as a professional engineer in the state where the work is to be performed. However, a professional engineer, registered in any

state is deemed to be a "registered professional engineer" within the meaning of this standard when approving designs for "manufactured protective systems" or "tabulated data" to be used in interstate commerce.

*Sheeting* means the members of a shoring system that retain the earth in position and in turn are supported by other members of the shoring system.

*Shield* (Shield system) means a structure that is able to withstand the forces imposed on it by a cave-in and thereby protect employees within the structure. Shields can be permanent structures or can be designed to be portable and moved along as work progresses. Additionally, shields can be either premanufactured or job-built in accordance with § 1926.652 (c)(3) or (c)(4). Shields used in trenches are usually referred to as "trench boxes" or "trench shields."

*Shoring* (Shoring system) means a structure such as a metal hydraulic, mechanical or timber shoring system that supports the sides of an excavation and which is designed to prevent cave-ins.

*Sides.* See "Faces."

*Sloping* (Sloping system) means a method of protecting employees from cave-ins by excavating to form sides of an excavation that are inclined away from the excavation so as to prevent cave-ins. The angle of incline required to prevent a cave-in varies with differences in such factors as the soil type, environmental conditions of exposure, and application of surcharge loads.

*Stable rock* means natural solid mineral material that can be excavated with vertical sides and will remain intact while exposed. Unstable rock is considered to be stable when the rock material on the side or sides of the excavation is secured against caving-in or movement by rock bolts or by another protective system that has been designed by a registered professional engineer.

*Structural ramp* means a ramp built of steel or wood, usually used for vehicle access. Ramps made of soil or rock are not considered structural ramps.

*Support system* means a structure such as underpinning, bracing, or shoring, which provides support to an adja-

cent structure, underground installation, or the sides of an excavation.

*Tabulated data* means tables and charts approved by a registered professional engineer and used to design and construct a protective system.

*Trench* (Trench excavation) means a narrow excavation (in relation to its length) made below the surface of the ground. In general, the depth is greater than the width, but the width of a trench (measured at the bottom) is not greater than 15 feet (4.6 m). If forms or other structures are installed or constructed in an excavation so as to reduce the dimension measured from the forms or structure to the side of the excavation to 15 feet (4.6 m) or less (measured at the bottom of the excavation), the excavation is also considered to be a trench.

*Trench box.* See "Shield."

*Trench shield.* See "Shield."

*Uprights* means the vertical members of a trench shoring system placed in contact with the earth and usually positioned so that individual members do not contact each other. Uprights placed so that individual members are closely spaced, in contact with or interconnected to each other, are often called "sheeting."

*Wales* means horizontal members of a shoring system placed parallel to the excavation face whose sides bear against the vertical members of the shoring system or earth.

#### § 1926.651 Specific excavation requirements.

(a) *Surface encumbrances.* All surface encumbrances that are located so as to create a hazard to employees shall be removed or supported, as necessary, to safeguard employees.

(b) *Underground installations.* (1) The estimated location of utility installations, such as sewer, telephone, fuel, electric, water lines, or any other underground installations that reasonably may be expected to be encountered during excavation work, shall be determined prior to opening an excavation.

(2) Utility companies or owners shall be contacted within established or customary local response times, advised of

the proposed work, and asked to establish the location of the utility underground installations prior to the start of actual excavation. When utility companies or owners cannot respond to a request to locate underground utility installations within 24 hours (unless a longer period is required by state or local law), or cannot establish the exact location of these installations, the employer may proceed, provided the employer does so with caution, and provided detection equipment or other acceptable means to locate utility installations are used.

(3) When excavation operations approach the estimated location of underground installations, the exact location of the installations shall be determined by safe and acceptable means.

(4) While the excavation is open, underground installations shall be protected, supported or removed as necessary to safeguard employees.

(c) *Access and egress*—(1) *Structural ramps*. (i) Structural ramps that are used solely by employees as a means of access or egress from excavations shall be designed by a competent person. Structural ramps used for access or egress of equipment shall be designed by a competent person qualified in structural design, and shall be constructed in accordance with the design.

(ii) Ramps and runways constructed of two or more structural members shall have the structural members connected together to prevent displacement.

(iii) Structural members used for ramps and runways shall be of uniform thickness.

(iv) Cleats or other appropriate means used to connect runway structural members shall be attached to the bottom of the runway or shall be attached in a manner to prevent tripping.

(v) Structural ramps used in lieu of steps shall be provided with cleats or other surface treatments on the top surface to prevent slipping.

(2) *Means of egress from trench excavations*. A stairway, ladder, ramp or other safe means of egress shall be located in trench excavations that are 4 feet (1.22 m) or more in depth so as to require no more than 25 feet (7.62 m) of lateral travel for employees.

(d) *Exposure to vehicular traffic*. Employees exposed to public vehicular traffic shall be provided with, and shall wear, warning vests or other suitable garments marked with or made of reflectorized or high-visibility material.

(e) *Exposure to falling loads*. No employee shall be permitted underneath loads handled by lifting or digging equipment. Employees shall be required to stand away from any vehicle being loaded or unloaded to avoid being struck by any spillage or falling materials. Operators may remain in the cabs of vehicles being loaded or unloaded when the vehicles are equipped, in accordance with §1926.601(b)(6), to provide adequate protection for the operator during loading and unloading operations.

(f) *Warning system for mobile equipment*. When mobile equipment is operated adjacent to an excavation, or when such equipment is required to approach the edge of an excavation, and the operator does not have a clear and direct view of the edge of the excavation, a warning system shall be utilized such as barricades, hand or mechanical signals, or stop logs. If possible, the grade should be away from the excavation.

(g) *Hazardous atmospheres*—(1) *Testing and controls*. In addition to the requirements set forth in subparts D and E of this part (29 CFR 1926.50-1926.107) to prevent exposure to harmful levels of atmospheric contaminants and to assure acceptable atmospheric conditions, the following requirements shall apply:

(i) Where oxygen deficiency (atmospheres containing less than 19.5 percent oxygen) or a hazardous atmosphere exists or could reasonably be expected to exist, such as in excavations in landfill areas or excavations in areas where hazardous substances are stored nearby, the atmospheres in the excavation shall be tested before employees enter excavations greater than 4 feet (1.22 m) in depth.

(ii) Adequate precautions shall be taken to prevent employee exposure to atmospheres containing less than 19.5 percent oxygen and other hazardous

atmospheres. These precautions include providing proper respiratory protection or ventilation in accordance with subparts D and E of this part respectively.

(iii) Adequate precaution shall be taken such as providing ventilation, to prevent employee exposure to an atmosphere containing a concentration of a flammable gas in excess of 20 percent of the lower flammable limit of the gas.

(iv) When controls are used that are intended to reduce the level of atmospheric contaminants to acceptable levels, testing shall be conducted as often as necessary to ensure that the atmosphere remains safe.

(2) *Emergency rescue equipment.* (i) Emergency rescue equipment, such as breathing apparatus, a safety harness and line, or a basket stretcher, shall be readily available where hazardous atmospheric conditions exist or may reasonably be expected to develop during work in an excavation. This equipment shall be attended when in use.

(ii) Employees entering bell-bottom pier holes, or other similar deep and confined footing excavations, shall wear a harness with a life-line securely attached to it. The lifeline shall be separate from any line used to handle materials, and shall be individually attended at all times while the employee wearing the lifeline is in the excavation.

(h) *Protection from hazards associated with water accumulation.* (1) Employees shall not work in excavations in which there is accumulated water, or in excavations in which water is accumulating, unless adequate precautions have been taken to protect employees against the hazards posed by water accumulation. The precautions necessary to protect employees adequately vary with each situation, but could include special support or shield systems to protect from cave-ins, water removal to control the level of accumulating water, or use of a safety harness and lifeline.

(2) If water is controlled or prevented from accumulating by the use of water removal equipment, the water removal equipment and operations shall be monitored by a competent person to ensure proper operation.

(3) If excavation work interrupts the natural drainage of surface water (such as streams), diversion ditches, dikes, or other suitable means shall be used to prevent surface water from entering the excavation and to provide adequate drainage of the area adjacent to the excavation. Excavations subject to runoff from heavy rains will require an inspection by a competent person and compliance with paragraphs (h)(1) and (h)(2) of this section.

(i) *Stability of adjacent structures.* (1) Where the stability of adjoining buildings, walls, or other structures is endangered by excavation operations, support systems such as shoring, bracing, or underpinning shall be provided to ensure the stability of such structures for the protection of employees.

(2) Excavation below the level of the base or footing of any foundation or retaining wall that could be reasonably expected to pose a hazard to employees shall not be permitted except when:

(i) A support system, such as underpinning, is provided to ensure the safety of employees and the stability of the structure; or

(ii) The excavation is in stable rock; or

(iii) A registered professional engineer has approved the determination that the structure is sufficiently removed from the excavation so as to be unaffected by the excavation activity; or

(iv) A registered professional engineer has approved the determination that such excavation work will not pose a hazard to employees.

(3) Sidewalks, pavements, and appurtenant structure shall not be undermined unless a support system or another method of protection is provided to protect employees from the possible collapse of such structures.

(j) *Protection of employees from loose rock or soil.* (1) Adequate protection shall be provided to protect employees from loose rock or soil that could pose a hazard by falling or rolling from an excavation face. Such protection shall consist of scaling to remove loose material; installation of protective barricades at intervals as necessary on the face to stop and contain falling material; or other means that provide equivalent protection.

(2) Employees shall be protected from excavated or other materials or equipment that could pose a hazard by falling or rolling into excavations. Protection shall be provided by placing and keeping such materials or equipment at least 2 feet (.61 m) from the edge of excavations, or by the use of retaining devices that are sufficient to prevent materials or equipment from falling or rolling into excavations, or by a combination of both if necessary.

(k) *Inspections.* (1) Daily inspections of excavations, the adjacent areas, and protective systems shall be made by a competent person for evidence of a situation that could result in possible cave-ins, indications of failure of protective systems, hazardous atmospheres, or other hazardous conditions. An inspection shall be conducted by the competent person prior to the start of work and as needed throughout the shift. Inspections shall also be made after every rainstorm or other hazard increasing occurrence. These inspections are only required when employee exposure can be reasonably anticipated.

(2) Where the competent person finds evidence of a situation that could result in a possible cave-in, indications of failure of protective systems, hazardous atmospheres, or other hazardous conditions, exposed employees shall be removed from the hazardous area until the necessary precautions have been taken to ensure their safety.

(1) Walkways shall be provided where employees or equipment are required or permitted to cross over excavations. Guardrails which comply with §1926.502(b) shall be provided where walkways are 6 feet (1.8 m) or more above lower levels.

[54 FR 45959, Oct. 31, 1989, as amended by 59 FR 40730, Aug. 9, 1994]

**§ 1926.652 Requirements for protective systems.**

(a) *Protection of employees in excavations.* (1) Each employee in an excavation shall be protected from cave-ins by an adequate protective system designed in accordance with paragraph (b) or (c) of this section except when:

(i) Excavations are made entirely in stable rock; or

(ii) Excavations are less than 5 feet (1.52m) in depth and examination of the ground by a competent person provides no indication of a potential cave-in.

(2) Protective systems shall have the capacity to resist without failure all loads that are intended or could reasonably be expected to be applied or transmitted to the system.

(b) *Design of sloping and benching systems.* The slopes and configurations of sloping and benching systems shall be selected and constructed by the employer or his designee and shall be in accordance with the requirements of paragraph (b)(1); or, in the alternative, paragraph (b)(2); or, in the alternative, paragraph (b)(3), or, in the alternative, paragraph (b)(4), as follows:

(1) *Option (1)—Allowable configurations and slopes.* (i) Excavations shall be sloped at an angle not steeper than one and one-half horizontal to one vertical (34 degrees measured from the horizontal), unless the employer uses one of the other options listed below.

(ii) Slopes specified in paragraph (b)(1)(i) of this section, shall be excavated to form configurations that are in accordance with the slopes shown for Type C soil in appendix B to this subpart.

(2) *Option (2)—Determination of slopes and configurations using Appendices A and B.* Maximum allowable slopes, and allowable configurations for sloping and benching systems, shall be determined in accordance with the conditions and requirements set forth in appendices A and B to this subpart.

(3) *Option (3)—Designs using other tabulated data.* (1) Designs of sloping or benching systems shall be selected from and be in accordance with tabulated data, such as tables and charts.

(ii) The tabulated data shall be in written form and shall include all of the following:

(A) Identification of the parameters that affect the selection of a sloping or benching system drawn from such data;

(B) Identification of the limits of use of the data, to include the magnitude and configuration of slopes determined to be safe;

(C) Explanatory information as may be necessary to aid the user in making a correct selection of a protective system from the data.

(iii) At least one copy of the tabulated data which identifies the registered professional engineer who approved the data, shall be maintained at the jobsite during construction of the protective system. After that time the data may be stored off the jobsite, but a copy of the data shall be made available to the Secretary upon request.

(4) *Option (4)—Design by a registered professional engineer.* (i) Sloping and benching systems not utilizing Option (1) or Option (2) or Option (3) under paragraph (b) of this section shall be approved by a registered professional engineer.

(ii) Designs shall be in written form and shall include at least the following:

(A) The magnitude of the slopes that were determined to be safe for the particular project;

(B) The configurations that were determined to be safe for the particular project; and

(C) The identity of the registered professional engineer approving the design.

(iii) At least one copy of the design shall be maintained at the jobsite while the slope is being constructed. After that time the design need not be at the jobsite, but a copy shall be made available to the Secretary upon request.

(c) *Design of support systems, shield systems, and other protective systems.* Designs of support systems, shield systems, and other protective systems shall be selected and constructed by the employer or his designee and shall be in accordance with the requirements of paragraph (c)(1); or, in the alternative, paragraph (c)(2); or, in the alternative, paragraph (c)(3); or, in the alternative, paragraph (c)(4) as follows:

(1) *Option (1)—Designs using appendices A, C and D.* Designs for timber shoring in trenches shall be determined in accordance with the conditions and requirements set forth in appendices A and C to this subpart. Designs for aluminum hydraulic shoring shall be in accordance with paragraph (c)(2) of this section, but if manufacturer's tabulated data cannot be utilized, designs shall be in accordance with appendix D.

(2) *Option (2)—Designs Using Manufacturer's Tabulated Data.* (i) Design of support systems, shield systems, or other

protective systems that are drawn from manufacturer's tabulated data shall be in accordance with all specifications, recommendations, and limitations issued or made by the manufacturer.

(ii) Deviation from the specifications, recommendations, and limitations issued or made by the manufacturer shall only be allowed after the manufacturer issues specific written approval.

(iii) Manufacturer's specifications, recommendations, and limitations, and manufacturer's approval to deviate from the specifications, recommendations, and limitations shall be in written form at the jobsite during construction of the protective system. After that time this data may be stored off the jobsite, but a copy shall be made available to the Secretary upon request.

(3) *Option (3)—Designs using other tabulated data.* (i) Designs of support systems, shield systems, or other protective systems shall be selected from and be in accordance with tabulated data, such as tables and charts.

(ii) The tabulated data shall be in written form and include all of the following:

(A) Identification of the parameters that affect the selection of a protective system drawn from such data;

(B) Identification of the limits of use of the data;

(C) Explanatory information as may be necessary to aid the user in making a correct selection of a protective system from the data.

(iii) At least one copy of the tabulated data, which identifies the registered professional engineer who approved the data, shall be maintained at the jobsite during construction of the protective system. After that time the data may be stored off the jobsite, but a copy of the data shall be made available to the Secretary upon request.

(4) *Option (4)—Design by a registered professional engineer.* (i) Support systems, shield systems, and other protective systems not utilizing Option 1, Option 2 or Option 3, above, shall be approved by a registered professional engineer.

(ii) Designs shall be in written form and shall include the following:

(A) A plan indicating the sizes, types, and configurations of the materials to be used in the protective system; and

(B) The identity of the registered professional engineer approving the design.

(iii) At least one copy of the design shall be maintained at the jobsite during construction of the protective system. After that time, the design may be stored off the jobsite, but a copy of the design shall be made available to the Secretary upon request.

(d) *Materials and equipment.* (1) Materials and equipment used for protective systems shall be free from damage or defects that might impair their proper function.

(2) Manufactured materials and equipment used for protective systems shall be used and maintained in a manner that is consistent with the recommendations of the manufacturer, and in a manner that will prevent employee exposure to hazards.

(3) When material or equipment that is used for protective systems is damaged, a competent person shall examine the material or equipment and evaluate its suitability for continued use. If the competent person cannot assure the material or equipment is able to support the intended loads or is otherwise suitable for safe use, then such material or equipment shall be removed from service, and shall be evaluated and approved by a registered professional engineer before being returned to service.

(e) *Installation and removal of support—(1) General.* (i) Members of support systems shall be securely connected together to prevent sliding, falling, kickouts, or other predictable failure.

(ii) Support systems shall be installed and removed in a manner that protects employees from cave-ins, structural collapses, or from being struck by members of the support system.

(iii) Individual members of support systems shall not be subjected to loads exceeding those which those members were designed to withstand.

(iv) Before temporary removal of individual members begins, additional precautions shall be taken to ensure the safety of employees, such as in-

stalling other structural members to carry the loads imposed on the support system.

(v) Removal shall begin at, and progress from, the bottom of the excavation. Members shall be released slowly so as to note any indication of possible failure of the remaining members of the structure or possible cave-in of the sides of the excavation.

(vi) Backfilling shall progress together with the removal of support systems from excavations.

(2) *Additional requirements for support systems for trench excavations.* (i) Excavation of material to a level no greater than 2 feet (.61 m) below the bottom of the members of a support system shall be permitted, but only if the system is designed to resist the forces calculated for the full depth of the trench, and there are no indications while the trench is open of a possible loss of soil from behind or below the bottom of the support system.

(ii) Installation of a support system shall be closely coordinated with the excavation of trenches.

(f) *Sloping and benching systems.* Employees shall not be permitted to work on the faces of sloped or benched excavations at levels above other employees except when employees at the lower levels are adequately protected from the hazard of falling, rolling, or sliding material or equipment.

(g) *Shield systems—(1) General.* (i) Shield systems shall not be subjected to loads exceeding those which the system was designed to withstand.

(ii) Shields shall be installed in a manner to restrict lateral or other hazardous movement of the shield in the event of the application of sudden lateral loads.

(iii) Employees shall be protected from the hazard of cave-ins when entering or exiting the areas protected by shields.

(iv) Employees shall not be allowed in shields when shields are being installed, removed, or moved vertically.

(2) *Additional requirement for shield systems used in trench excavations.* Excavations of earth material to a level not greater than 2 feet (.61 m) below the bottom of a shield shall be permitted, but only if the shield is designed to resist the forces calculated for the full



depth of the trench, and there are no indications while the trench is open of a possible loss of soil from behind or below the bottom of the shield.

APPENDIX A TO SUBPART P OF PART  
1926—SOIL CLASSIFICATION.

(a) *Scope and application*—(1) *Scope*. This appendix describes a method of classifying soil and rock deposits based on site and environmental conditions, and on the structure and composition of the earth deposits. The appendix contains definitions, sets forth requirements, and describes acceptable visual and manual tests for use in classifying soils.

(2) *Application*. This appendix applies when a sloping or benching system is designed in accordance with the requirements set forth in §1926.652(b)(2) as a method of protection for employees from cave-ins. This appendix also applies when timber shoring for excavations is designed as a method of protection from cave-ins in accordance with appendix C to subpart P of part 1926, and when aluminum hydraulic shoring is designed in accordance with appendix D. This appendix also applies if other protective systems are designed and selected for use from data prepared in accordance with the requirements set forth in §1926.652(c), and the use of the data is predicated on the use of the soil classification system set forth in this appendix.

(b) *Definitions*. The definitions and examples given below are based on, in whole or in part, the following: American Society for Testing Materials (ASTM) Standards D653-85 and D2488; The Unified Soils Classification System, The U.S. Department of Agriculture (USDA) Textural Classification Scheme; and The National Bureau of Standards Report BSS-121.

*Cemented soil* means a soil in which the particles are held together by a chemical agent, such as calcium carbonate, such that a hand-size sample cannot be crushed into powder or individual soil particles by finger pressure.

*Cohesive soil* means clay (fine grained soil), or soil with a high clay content, which has cohesive strength. Cohesive soil does not crumble, can be excavated with vertical sideslopes, and is plastic when moist. Cohesive soil is hard to break up when dry, and exhibits significant cohesion when submerged. Cohesive soils include clayey silt, sandy clay, silty clay, clay and organic clay.

*Dry soil* means soil that does not exhibit visible signs of moisture content.

*Fissured* means a soil material that has a tendency to break along definite planes of fracture with little resistance, or a material that exhibits open cracks, such as tension cracks, in an exposed surface.

*Granular soil* means gravel, sand, or silt, (coarse grained soil) with little or no clay content. Granular soil has no cohesive

strength. Some moist granular soils exhibit apparent cohesion. Granular soil cannot be molded when moist and crumbles easily when dry.

*Layered system* means two or more distinctly different soil or rock types arranged in layers. Micaceous seams or weakened planes in rock or shale are considered layered.

*Moist soil* means a condition in which a soil looks and feels damp. Moist cohesive soil can easily be shaped into a ball and rolled into small diameter threads before crumbling. Moist granular soil that contains some cohesive material will exhibit signs of cohesion between particles.

*Plastic* means a property of a soil which allows the soil to be deformed or molded without cracking, or appreciable volume change.

*Saturated soil* means a soil in which the voids are filled with water. Saturation does not require flow. Saturation, or near saturation, is necessary for the proper use of instruments such as a pocket penetrometer or shear vane.

*Soil classification system* means, for the purpose of this subpart, a method of categorizing soil and rock deposits in a hierarchy of Stable Rock, Type A, Type B, and Type C, in decreasing order of stability. The categories are determined based on an analysis of the properties and performance characteristics of the deposits and the environmental conditions of exposure.

*Stable rock* means natural solid mineral matter that can be excavated with vertical sides and remain intact while exposed.

*Submerged soil* means soil which is underwater or is free seeping.

*Type A* means cohesive soils with an unconfined compressive strength of 1.5 ton per square foot (tsf) (144 kPa) or greater. Examples of cohesive soils are: clay, silty clay, sandy clay, clay loam and, in some cases, silty clay loam and sandy clay loam. Cemented soils such as caliche and hardpan are also considered Type A. However, no soil is Type A if:

- (i) The soil is fissured; or
- (ii) The soil is subject to vibration from heavy traffic, pile driving, or similar effects; or
- (iii) The soil has been previously disturbed; or
- (iv) The soil is part of a sloped, layered system where the layers dip into the excavation on a slope of four horizontal to one vertical (4H:1V) or greater; or
- (v) The material is subject to other factors that would require it to be classified as a less stable material.

*Type B* means:

- (i) Cohesive soil with an unconfined compressive strength greater than 0.5 tsf (48 kPa) but less than 1.5 tsf (144 kPa); or
- (ii) Granular cohesionless soils including: angular gravel (similar to crushed rock),

silt, silt loam, sandy loam and, in some cases, silty clay loam and sandy clay loam.

(iii) Previously disturbed soils except those which would otherwise be classed as Type C soil.

(iv) Soil that meets the unconfined compressive strength or cementation requirements for Type A, but is fissured or subject to vibration; or

(v) Dry rock that is not stable; or

(vi) Material that is part of a sloped, layered system where the layers dip into the excavation on a slope less steep than four horizontal to one vertical (4H:1V), but only if the material would otherwise be classified as Type B.

*Type C* means:

(i) Cohesive soil with an unconfined compressive strength of 0.5 tsf (48 kPa) or less; or

(ii) Granular soils including gravel, sand, and loamy sand; or

(iii) Submerged soil or soil from which water is freely seeping; or

(iv) Submerged rock that is not stable, or

(v) Material in a sloped, layered system where the layers dip into the excavation on a slope of four horizontal to one vertical (4H:1V) or steeper.

*Unconfined compressive strength* means the load per unit area at which a soil will fail in compression. It can be determined by laboratory testing, or estimated in the field using a pocket penetrometer, by thumb penetration tests, and other methods.

*Wet soil* means soil that contains significantly more moisture than moist soil, but in such a range of values that cohesive material will slump or begin to flow when vibrated. Granular material that would exhibit cohesive properties when moist will lose those cohesive properties when wet.

(c) *Requirements*—(1) *Classification of soil and rock deposits.* Each soil and rock deposit shall be classified by a competent person as Stable Rock, Type A, Type B, or Type C in accordance with the definitions set forth in paragraph (b) of this appendix.

(2) *Basis of classification.* The classification of the deposits shall be made based on the results of at least one visual and at least one manual analysis. Such analyses shall be conducted by a competent person using tests described in paragraph (d) below, or in other recognized methods of soil classification and testing such as those adopted by the American Society for Testing Materials, or the U.S. Department of Agriculture textural classification system.

(3) *Visual and manual analyses.* The visual and manual analyses, such as those noted as being acceptable in paragraph (d) of this appendix, shall be designed and conducted to provide sufficient quantitative and qualitative information as may be necessary to identify properly the properties, factors, and conditions affecting the classification of the deposits.

(4) *Layered systems.* In a layered system, the system shall be classified in accordance with its weakest layer. However, each layer may be classified individually where a more stable layer lies under a less stable layer.

(5) *Reclassification.* If, after classifying a deposit, the properties, factors, or conditions affecting its classification change in any way, the changes shall be evaluated by a competent person. The deposit shall be reclassified as necessary to reflect the changed circumstances.

(d) *Acceptable visual and manual tests*—(1) *Visual tests.* Visual analysis is conducted to determine qualitative information regarding the excavation site in general, the soil adjacent to the excavation, the soil forming the sides of the open excavation, and the soil taken as samples from excavated material.

(i) Observe samples of soil that are excavated and soil in the sides of the excavation. Estimate the range of particle sizes and the relative amounts of the particle sizes. Soil that is primarily composed of fine-grained material is cohesive material. Soil composed primarily of coarse-grained sand or gravel is granular material.

(ii) Observe soil as it is excavated. Soil that remains in clumps when excavated is cohesive. Soil that breaks up easily and does not stay in clumps is granular.

(iii) Observe the side of the opened excavation and the surface area adjacent to the excavation. Crack-like openings such as tension cracks could indicate fissured material. If chunks of soil spall off a vertical side, the soil could be fissured. Small spalls are evidence of moving ground and are indications of potentially hazardous situations.

(iv) Observe the area adjacent to the excavation and the excavation itself for evidence of existing utility and other underground structures, and to identify previously disturbed soil.

(v) Observe the opened side of the excavation to identify layered systems. Examine layered systems to identify if the layers slope toward the excavation. Estimate the degree of slope of the layers.

(vi) Observe the area adjacent to the excavation and the sides of the opened excavation for evidence of surface water, water seeping from the sides of the excavation, or the location of the level of the water table.

(vii) Observe the area adjacent to the excavation and the area within the excavation for sources of vibration that may affect the stability of the excavation face.

(2) *Manual tests.* Manual analysis of soil samples is conducted to determine quantitative as well as qualitative properties of soil and to provide more information in order to classify soil properly.

(i) *Plasticity.* Mold a moist or wet sample of soil into a ball and attempt to roll it into threads as thin as 1/8-inch in diameter. Cohesive material can be successfully rolled into

threads without crumbling. For example, if at least a two inch (50 mm) length of 1/8-inch thread can be held on one end without tearing, the soil is cohesive.

(ii) *Dry strength.* If the soil is dry and crumbles on its own or with moderate pressure into individual grains or fine powder, it is granular (any combination of gravel, sand, or silt). If the soil is dry and falls into clumps which break up into smaller clumps, but the smaller clumps can only be broken up with difficulty, it may be clay in any combination with gravel, sand or silt. If the dry soil breaks into clumps which do not break up into small clumps and which can only be broken with difficulty, and there is no visual indication the soil is fissured, the soil may be considered unfissured.

(iii) *Thumb penetration.* The thumb penetration test can be used to estimate the unconfined compressive strength of cohesive soils. (This test is based on the thumb penetration test described in American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM) Standard designation D2488—"Standard Recommended Practice for Description of Soils (Visual—Manual Procedure).") Type A soils with an unconfined compressive strength of 1.5 tsf can be readily indented by the thumb; however, they can be penetrated by the thumb only with very great effort. Type C soils with an unconfined compressive strength of 0.5 tsf can be easily penetrated several inches by the thumb, and can be molded by light finger pressure. This test should be conducted on an undisturbed soil sample, such as a large clump of spoil, as soon as practicable after excavation to keep to a minimum the effects of exposure to drying influences. If the excavation is later exposed to wetting influences (rain, flooding), the classification of the soil must be changed accordingly.

(iv) *Other strength tests.* Estimates of unconfined compressive strength of soils can also be obtained by use of a pocket penetrometer or by using a hand-operated shearvane.

(v) *Drying test.* The basic purpose of the drying test is to differentiate between cohesive material with fissures, unfissured cohesive material, and granular material. The procedure for the drying test involves drying a sample of soil that is approximately one inch thick (2.54 cm) and six inches (15.24 cm) in diameter until it is thoroughly dry:

(A) If the sample develops cracks as it dries, significant fissures are indicated.

(B) Samples that dry without cracking are to be broken by hand. If considerable force is necessary to break a sample, the soil has significant cohesive material content. The soil can be classified as a unfissured cohesive material and the unconfined compressive strength should be determined.

(C) If a sample breaks easily by hand, it is either a fissured cohesive material or a granular material. To distinguish between

the two, pulverize the dried clumps of the sample by hand or by stepping on them. If the clumps do not pulverize easily, the material is cohesive with fissures. If they pulverize easily into very small fragments, the material is granular.

#### APPENDIX B TO SUBPART P OF PART 1926—SLOPING AND BENCHING

(a) *Scope and application.* This appendix contains specifications for sloping and benching when used as methods of protecting employees working in excavations from cave-ins. The requirements of this appendix apply when the design of sloping and benching protective systems is to be performed in accordance with the requirements set forth in §1926.652(b)(2).

##### (b) *Definitions.*

*Actual slope* means the slope to which an excavation face is excavated.

*Distress* means that the soil is in a condition where a cave-in is imminent or is likely to occur. Distress is evidenced by such phenomena as the development of fissures in the face of or adjacent to an open excavation; the subsidence of the edge of an excavation; the slumping of material from the face or the bulging or heaving of material from the bottom of an excavation; the spalling of material from the face of an excavation; and raveling, i.e., small amounts of material such as pebbles or little clumps of material suddenly separating from the face of an excavation and trickling or rolling down into the excavation.

*Maximum allowable slope* means the steepest incline of an excavation face that is acceptable for the most favorable site conditions as protection against cave-ins, and is expressed as the ratio of horizontal distance to vertical rise (H:V).

*Short term exposure* means a period of time less than or equal to 24 hours that an excavation is open.

(c) *Requirements—(1) Soil classification.* Soil and rock deposits shall be classified in accordance with appendix A to subpart P of part 1926.

(2) *Maximum allowable slope.* The maximum allowable slope for a soil or rock deposit shall be determined from Table B-1 of this appendix.

(3) *Actual slope.* (1) The actual slope shall not be steeper than the maximum allowable slope.

(ii) The actual slope shall be less steep than the maximum allowable slope, when there are signs of distress. If that situation occurs, the slope shall be cut back to an actual slope which is at least 1/2 horizontal to one vertical (1/2H:1V) less steep than the maximum allowable slope.

(iii) When surcharge loads from stored material or equipment, operating equipment, or traffic are present, a competent person shall

determine the degree to which the actual slope must be reduced below the maximum allowable slope, and shall assure that such reduction is achieved. Surcharge loads from

adjacent structures shall be evaluated in accordance with §1926.651(i).

(4) *Configurations.* Configurations of sloping and benching systems shall be in accordance with Figure B-1.

TABLE B-1  
MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE SLOPES

SOIL OR ROCK TYPE	MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE SLOPES (H:V) [1] FOR EXCAVATIONS LESS THAN 20 FEET DEEP. [3]
STABLE ROCK TYPE A [2] TYPE B TYPE C	VERTICAL (90°) 3/4 : 1 (53°) 1:1 (45°) 1½ : 1 (34°)

NOTES:

1. Numbers shown in parentheses next to maximum allowable slopes are angles expressed in degrees from the horizontal. Angles have been rounded off.
2. A short-term maximum allowable slope of 1/2H:1V (63°) is allowed in excavations in Type A soil that are 12 feet (3.67 m) or less in depth. Short-term maximum allowable slopes for excavations greater than 12 feet (3.67 m) in depth shall be 3/4H:1V (53°).
3. Sloping or benching for excavations greater than 20 feet deep shall be designed by a registered professional engineer.

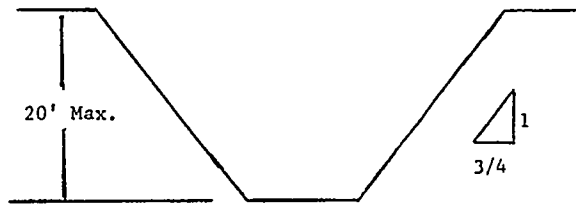
Figure B-1

Slope Configurations

(All slopes stated below are in the horizontal to vertical ratio)

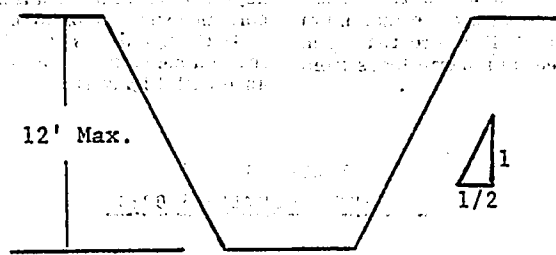
B-1.1 Excavations made in Type A soil.

1. All simple slope excavation 20 feet or less in depth shall have a maximum allowable slope of ¾:1.



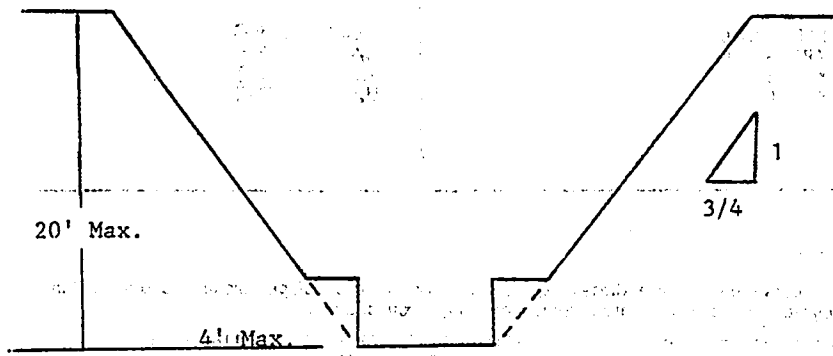
SIMPLE SLOPE—GENERAL

Exception: Simple slope excavations which are open 24 hours or less (short term) and which are 12 feet or less in depth shall have a maximum allowable slope of ½:1.

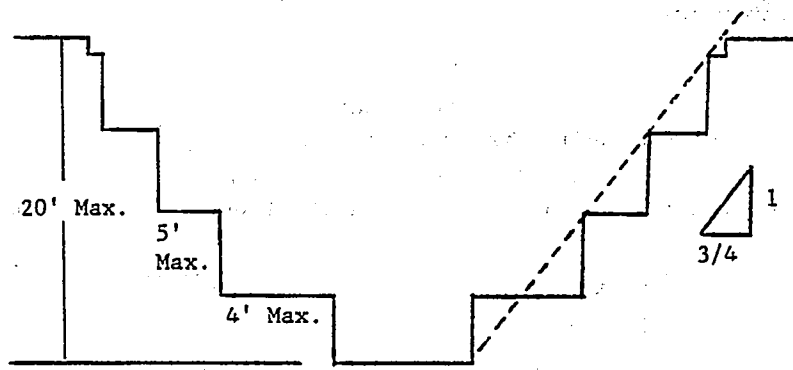


**SIMPLE SLOPE—SHORT TERM**

2. All benched excavations 20 feet or less in depth shall have a maximum allowable slope of  $\frac{3}{4}$  to 1 and maximum bench dimensions as follows:

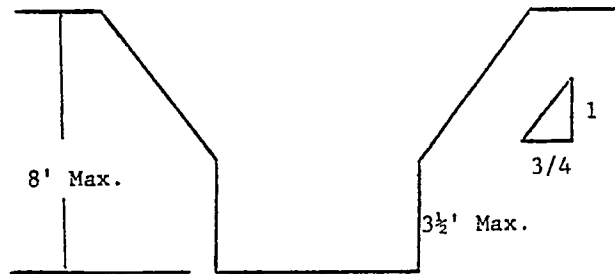


**SIMPLE BENCH**



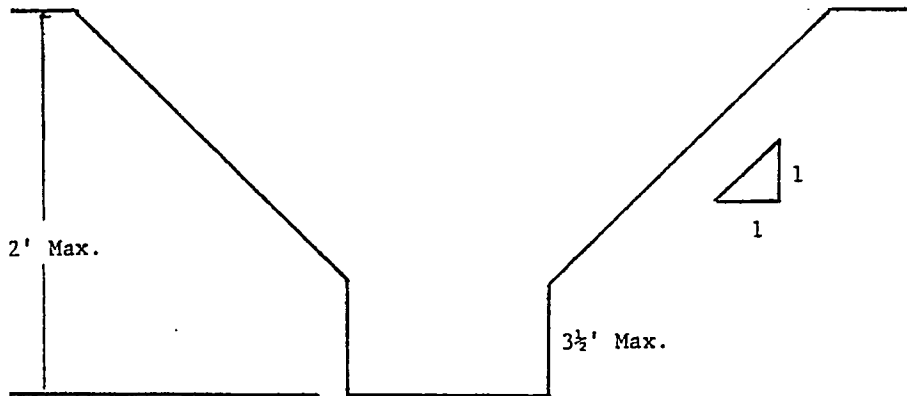
**MULTIPLE BENCH**

3. All excavations 8 feet or less in depth which have unsupported vertically sided lower portions shall have a maximum vertical side of  $3\frac{1}{2}$  feet.



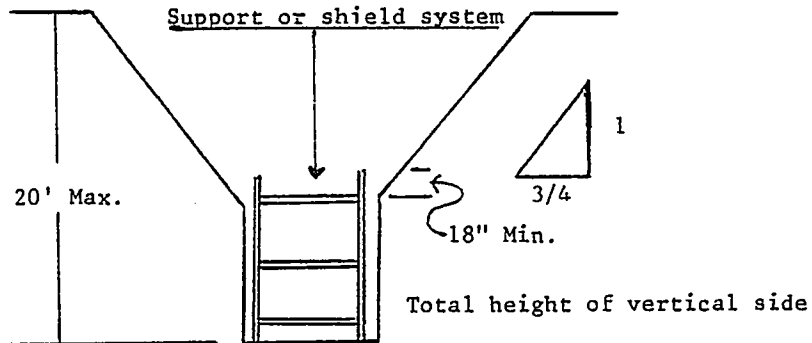
UNSUPPORTED VERTICALLY SIDED LOWER PORTION—MAXIMUM 8 FEET IN DEPTH

All excavations more than 8 feet but not more than 12 feet in depth which unsupported vertically sided lower portions shall have a maximum allowable slope of 1:1 and a maximum vertical side of 3½ feet.



UNSUPPORTED VERTICALLY SIDED LOWER PORTION—MAXIMUM 12 FEET IN DEPTH

All excavations 20 feet or less in depth which have vertically sided lower portions that are supported or shielded shall have a maximum allowable slope of ¾:1. The support or shield system must extend at least 18 inches above the top of the vertical side.

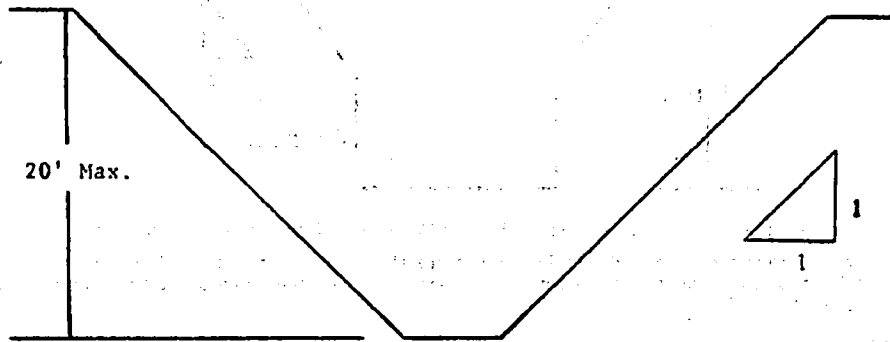


SUPPORTED OR SHIELDED VERTICALLY SIDED LOWER PORTION

4. All other simple slope, compound slope, and vertically sided lower portion excavations shall be in accordance with the other options permitted under §1926.652(b).

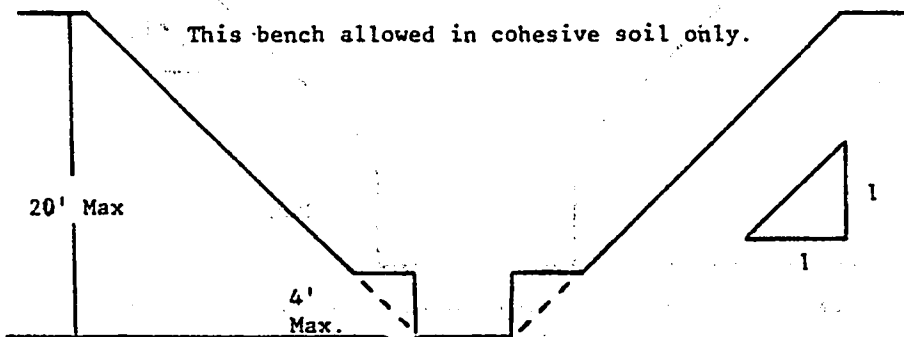
*B-1.2 Excavations Made in Type B Soil*

1. All simple slope excavations 20 feet or less in depth shall have a maximum allowable slope of 1:1.

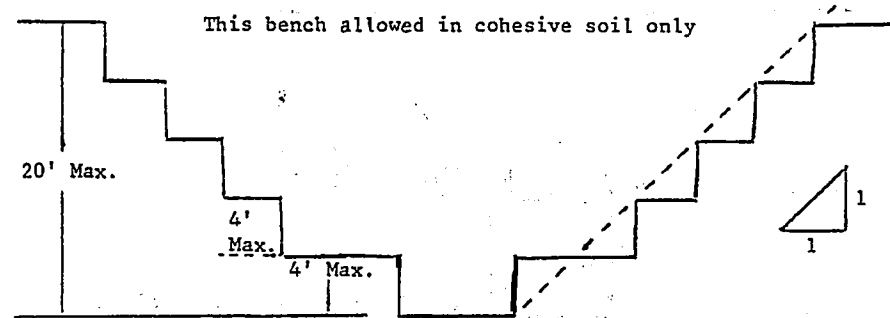


SIMPLE SLOPE

2. All benched excavations 20 feet or less in depth shall have a maximum allowable slope of 1:1 and maximum bench dimensions as follows:

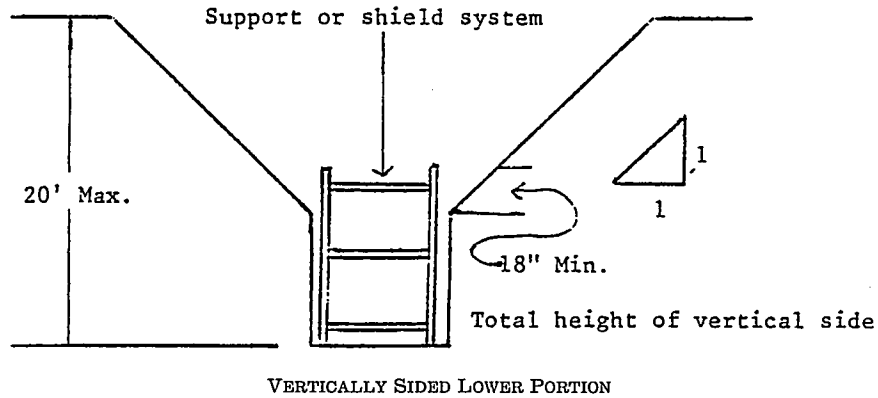


SINGLE BENCH



MULTIPLE BENCH

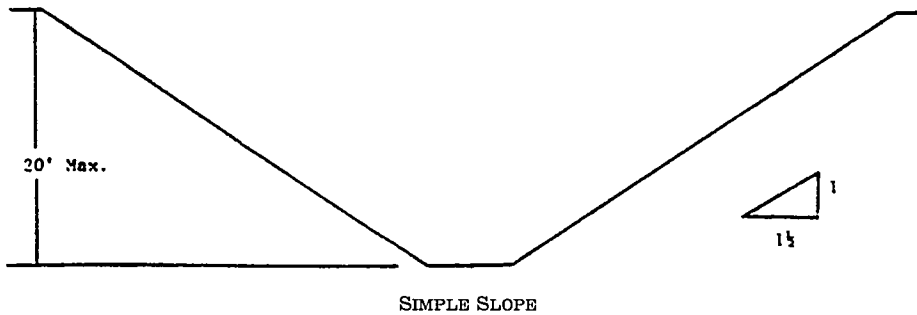
3. All excavations 20 feet or less in depth which have vertically sided lower portions shall be shielded or supported to a height at least 18 inches above the top of the vertical side. All such excavations shall have a maximum allowable slope of 1:1.



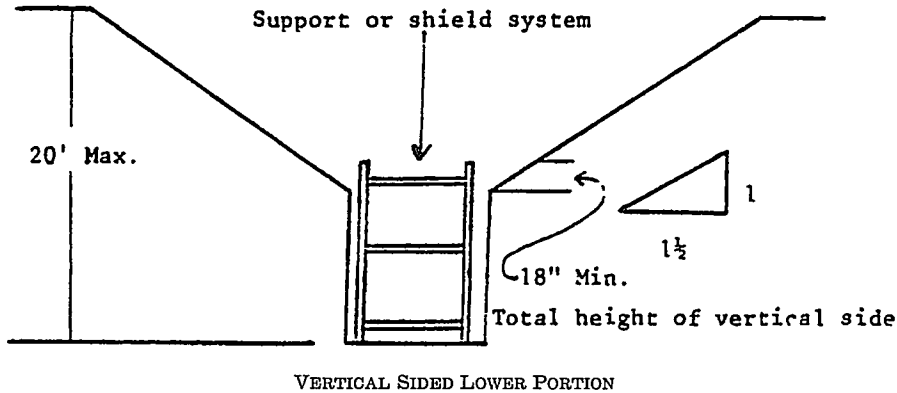
4. All other sloped excavations shall be in accordance with the other options permitted in §1926.652(b).

*B-1.3 Excavations Made in Type C Soil*

1. All simple slope excavations 20 feet or less in depth shall have a maximum allowable slope of 1½:1.



2. All excavations 20 feet or less in depth which have vertically sided lower portions shall be shielded or supported to a height at least 18 inches above the top of the vertical side. All such excavations shall have a maximum allowable slope of 1½:1.

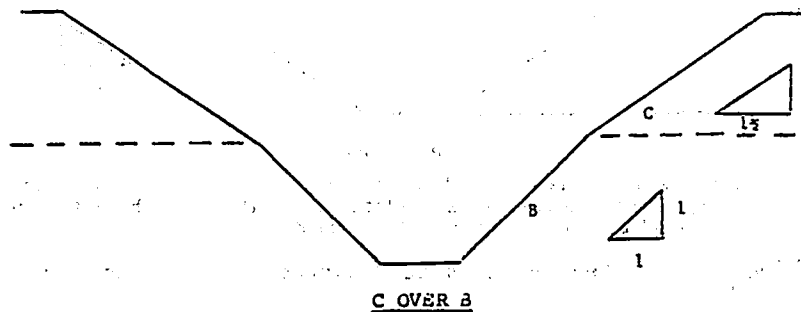
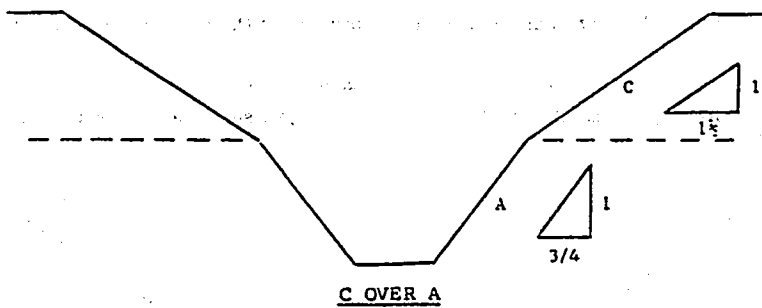
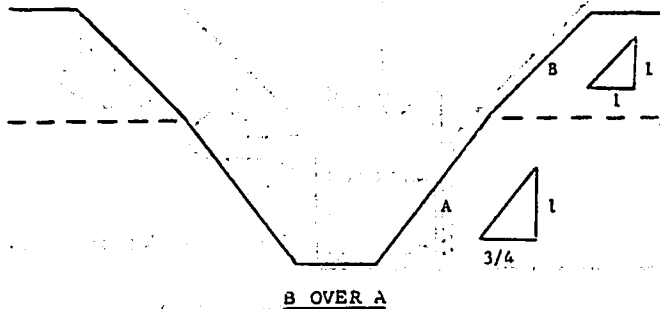


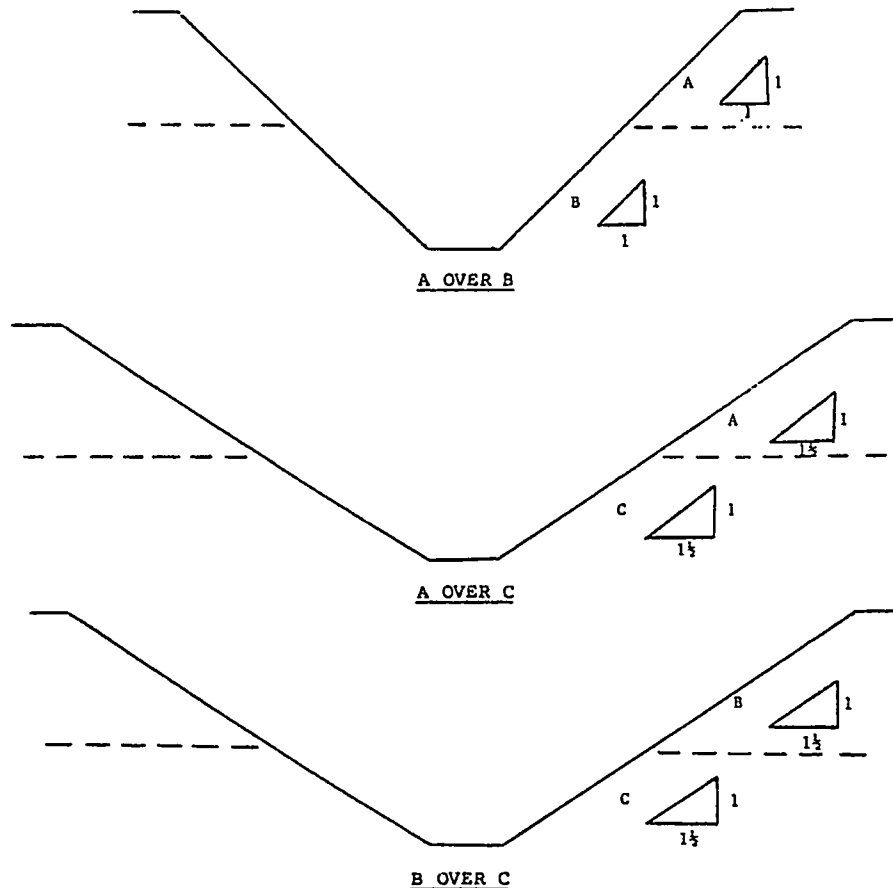
3. All other sloped excavations shall be in accordance with the other options permitted in §1926.652(b).



*B-1.4 Excavations Made in Layered Soils*

1. All excavations 20 feet or less in depth made in layered soils shall have a maximum allowable slope for each layer as set forth below.





2. All other sloped excavations shall be in accordance with the other options permitted in §1926.652(b).

APPENDIX C TO SUBPART P OF PART 1926—TIMBER SHORING FOR TRENCHES

(a) *Scope.* This appendix contains information that can be used timber shoring is provided as a method of protection from cave-ins in trenches that do not exceed 20 feet (6.1 m) in depth. This appendix must be used when design of timber shoring protective systems is to be performed in accordance with §1926.652(c)(1). Other timber shoring configurations; other systems of support such as hydraulic and pneumatic systems; and other protective systems such as sloping, benching, shielding, and freezing systems must be designed in accordance with the requirements set forth in §1926.652(b) and §1926.652(c).

(b) *Soil Classification.* In order to use the data presented in this appendix, the soil type or types in which the excavation is made must first be determined using the soil classification method set forth in appendix A of subpart P of this part.

(c) *Presentation of Information.* Information is presented in several forms as follows:

(1) Information is presented in tabular form in Tables C-1.1, C-1.2, and C-1.3, and Tables C-2.1, C-2.2 and C-2.3 following paragraph (g) of the appendix. Each table presents the minimum sizes of timber members to use in a shoring system, and each table contains data only for the particular soil type in which the excavation or portion of

the excavation is made. The data are arranged to allow the user the flexibility to select from among several acceptable configurations of members based on varying the horizontal spacing of the crossbraces. Stable rock is exempt from shoring requirements and therefore, no data are presented for this condition.

(2) Information concerning the basis of the tabular data and the limitations of the data is presented in paragraph (d) of this appendix, and on the tables themselves.

(3) Information explaining the use of the tabular data is presented in paragraph (e) of this appendix.

(4) Information illustrating the use of the tabular data is presented in paragraph (f) of this appendix.

(5) Miscellaneous notations regarding Tables C-1.1, through C-1.3 and Tables C-2.1 through C-2.3 are presented in paragraph (g) of this Appendix.

(d) *Basis and limitations of the data*—(1) *Dimensions of timber members.* (i) The sizes of the timber members listed in Tables C-1.1 through C-1.3 are taken from the National Bureau of Standards (NBS) report, "Recommended Technical Provisions for Construction Practice in Shoring and Sloping of Trenches and Excavations." In addition, where NBS did not recommend specific sizes of members, member sizes are based on an analysis of the sizes required for use by existing codes and on empirical practice.

(ii) The required dimensions of the members listed in Tables C-1.1 through C-1.3 refer to actual dimensions and not nominal dimensions of the timber. Employers wanting to use nominal size shoring are directed to Tables C-2.1 through C-2.3, or have this choice under §1926.652(c)(3), and are referred to The Corps of Engineers, The Bureau of Reclamation or data from other acceptable sources.

(2) *Limitation of application.* (i) It is not intended that the timber shoring specification apply to every situation that may be experienced in the field. These data were developed to apply to the situations that are most commonly experienced in current trenching practice. Shoring systems for use in situations that are not covered by the data in this appendix must be designed as specified in §1926.652(c).

(ii) When any of the following conditions are present, the members specified in the tables are not considered adequate. Either an alternate timber shoring system must be designed or another type of protective system designed in accordance with §1926.652.

(A) When loads imposed by structures or by stored material adjacent to the trench weigh in excess of the load imposed by a two-foot soil surcharge. The term "adjacent" as used here means the area within a horizontal distance from the edge of the trench equal to the depth of the trench.

(B) When vertical loads imposed on cross braces exceed a 240-pound gravity load distributed on a one-foot section of the center of the crossbrace.

(C) When surcharge loads are present from equipment weighing in excess of 20,000 pounds.

(D) When only the lower portion of a trench is shored and the remaining portion of the trench is sloped or benched unless: The sloped portion is sloped at an angle less steep than three horizontal to one vertical; or the members are selected from the tables for use at a depth which is determined from the top of the overall trench, and not from the toe of the sloped portion.

(e) *Use of Tables.* The members of the shoring system that are to be selected using this information are the cross braces, the uprights, and the wales, where wales are required. Minimum sizes of members are specified for use in different types of soil. There are six tables of information, two for each soil type. The soil type must first be determined in accordance with the soil classification system described in appendix A to subpart P of part 1926. Using the appropriate table, the selection of the size and spacing of the members is then made. The selection is based on the depth and width of the trench where the members are to be installed and, in most instances, the selection is also based on the horizontal spacing of the crossbraces. Instances where a choice of horizontal spacing of crossbracing is available, the horizontal spacing of the crossbraces must be chosen by the user before the size of any member can be determined. When the soil type, the width and depth of the trench, and the horizontal spacing of the crossbraces are known, the size and vertical spacing of the crossbraces, the size and vertical spacing of the wales, and the size and horizontal spacing of the uprights can be read from the appropriate table.

(f) *Examples to Illustrate the Use of Tables C-1.1 through C-1.3.*

(1) *Example 1.*

A trench dug in Type A soil is 13 feet deep and five feet wide.

From *Table C-1.1*, for acceptable arrangements of timber can be used.

*Arrangement #B1*

Space 4x4 crossbraces at six feet horizontally and four feet vertically.

Wales are not required.

Space 3x8 uprights at six feet horizontally. This arrangement is commonly called "skip shoring."

*Arrangement #B2*

Space 4x6 crossbraces at eight feet horizontally and four feet vertically.

Space 8x8 wales at four feet vertically.

Space 2x6 uprights at four feet horizontally.

*Arrangement #B3*

Space 6x6 crossbraces at 10 feet horizontally and four feet vertically.

Space 8x10 wales at four feet vertically.

Space 2x6 uprights at five feet horizontally.

*Arrangement #B4*

Space 6x6 crossbraces at 12 feet horizontally and four feet vertically.

Space 10x10 wales at four feet vertically.

Spaces 3x8 uprights at six feet horizontally.

*(2) Example 2.*

A trench dug in Type B soil in 13 feet deep and five feet wide. From Table C-1.2 three acceptable arrangements of members are listed.

*Arrangement #B1*

Space 6x6 crossbraces at six feet horizontally and five feet vertically.

Space 8x8 wales at five feet vertically.

Space 2x6 uprights at two feet horizontally.

*Arrangement #B2*

Space 6x8 crossbraces at eight feet horizontally and five feet vertically.

Space 10x10 wales at five feet vertically.

Space 2x6 uprights at two feet horizontally.

*Arrangement #B3*

Space 8x8 crossbraces at 10 feet horizontally and five feet vertically.

Space 10x12 wales at five feet vertically.

Space 2x6 uprights at two feet vertically.

*(3) Example 3.*

A trench dug in Type C soil is 13 feet deep and five feet wide.

From Table C-1.3 two acceptable arrangements of members can be used.

*Arrangement #B1*

Space 8x8 crossbraces at six feet horizontally and five feet vertically.

Space 10x12 wales at five feet vertically.

Position 2x6 uprights as closely together as possible.

If water must be retained use special tongue and groove uprights to form tight sheeting.

*Arrangement #B2*

Space 8x10 crossbraces at eight feet horizontally and five feet vertically.

Space 12x12 wales at five feet vertically.

Position 2x6 uprights in a close sheeting configuration unless water pressure must be resisted. Tight sheeting must be used where water must be retained.

*(4) Example 4.*

A trench dug in Type C soil is 20 feet deep and 11 feet wide. The size and spacing of members for the section of trench that is over 15 feet in depth is determined using Table C-1.3. Only one arrangement of members is provided.

Space 8x10 crossbraces at six feet horizontally and five feet vertically.

Space 12x12 wales at five feet vertically.

Use 3x6 tight sheeting.

Use of Tables C-2.1 through C-2.3 would follow the same procedures.

*(g) Notes for all Tables.*

1. Member sizes at spacings other than indicated are to be determined as specified in §1926.652(c), "Design of Protective Systems."

2. When conditions are saturated or submerged use Tight Sheeting. Tight Sheeting refers to the use of specially-edged timber planks (e.g., tongue and groove) at least three inches thick, steel sheet piling, or similar construction that when driven or placed in position provide a tight wall to resist the lateral pressure of water and to prevent the loss of backfill material. Close Sheeting refers to the placement of planks side-by-side allowing as little space as possible between them.

3. All spacing indicated is measured center to center.

4. Wales to be installed with greater dimension horizontal.

5. If the vertical distance from the center of the lowest crossbrace to the bottom of the trench exceeds two and one-half feet, uprights shall be firmly embedded or a mudsill shall be used. Where uprights are embedded, the vertical distance from the center of the lowest crossbrace to the bottom of the trench shall not exceed 36 inches. When mudsills are used, the vertical distance shall not exceed 42 inches. Mudsills are wales that are installed at the toe of the trench side.

6. Trench jacks may be used in lieu of or in combination with timber crossbraces.

7. Placement of crossbraces. When the vertical spacing of crossbraces is four feet, place the top crossbrace no more than two feet below the top of the trench. When the vertical spacing of crossbraces is five feet, place the top crossbrace no more than 2.5 feet below the top of the trench.

TABLE C-1.1  
 TIMBER TRENCH SHORING -- MINIMUM TIMBER REQUIREMENTS \*  
 SOIL TYPE A  $P_a = 25 \times H + 72 \text{ psf}$  (2 ft Surcharge)

DEPTH OF TRENCH (FEET)	CROSS BRACES										HALES			UPRIGHTS					
	HORIZ. SPACING (FEET)		WIDTH OF TRENCH (FEET)								VERT. SPACING (FEET)		VERT. SPACING (FEET)		MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE HORIZONTAL SPACING (FEET)				
	UP TO	TO	UP TO	UP TO	UP TO	UP TO	UP TO	UP TO	UP TO	UP TO	UP TO	UP TO	UP TO	UP TO	UP TO	UP TO	UP TO	UP TO	
5	UP TO 6	4X4	4X4	4X4	4X6	6X6	6X6	6X6	6X6	6X6	4	Not Req'd	---	---	---	---	---	---	---
	UP TO 8	4X4	4X4	4X4	4X6	6X6	6X6	6X6	6X6	4	Not Req'd	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---
10	UP TO 10	4X6	4X6	4X6	4X6	6X6	6X6	6X6	6X6	4	8X8	4	---	---	---	---	---	---	---
	UP TO 12	4X6	4X6	4X6	6X6	6X6	6X6	6X6	6X6	4	8X8	4	---	---	---	---	---	---	---
10	UP TO 6	4X4	4X4	4X4	4X6	6X6	6X6	6X6	6X6	4	Not Req'd	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---
	UP TO 8	4X6	4X6	4X6	6X6	6X6	6X6	6X6	6X6	4	8X8	4	---	---	---	---	---	---	---
15	UP TO 10	6X6	6X6	6X6	6X6	6X8	6X8	6X8	6X8	4	8X10	4	---	---	---	---	---	---	---
	UP TO 12	6X6	6X6	6X6	6X6	6X8	6X8	6X8	6X8	4	10X10	4	---	---	---	---	---	---	---
15	UP TO 6	6X6	6X6	6X6	6X6	6X8	6X8	6X8	6X8	4	6X8	4	---	---	---	---	---	---	---
	UP TO 8	6X6	6X6	6X6	6X6	6X8	6X8	6X8	6X8	4	8X8	4	---	---	---	---	---	---	---
20	UP TO 10	8X8	8X8	8X8	8X8	8X8	8X8	8X10	8X10	4	8X10	4	---	---	---	---	---	---	---
	UP TO 12	8X8	8X8	8X8	8X8	8X8	8X8	8X10	8X10	4	10X10	4	---	---	---	---	---	---	---
OVER 20	SEE NOTE 1																		

\* Mixed oak or equivalent with a bending strength not less than 850 psi.  
 \*\* Manufactured members of equivalent strength may be substituted for wood.

TABLE C-1.2

TIMBER TRENCH SHORING -- MINIMUM TIMBER REQUIREMENTS \*

SOIL TYPE B  $P_a = 4.5 X H + 72$  psf (2 ft. Surcharge)

DEPTH OF TRENCH (FEET)	SIZE (ACTUAL) AND SPACING OF MEMBERS**												UPRIGHTS					
	HORIZ. SPACING (FEET)			CROSS BRACES			VERT. SPACING (FEET)			VALES			MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE HORIZONTAL SPACING (FEET)					
	UP	TO	DOWN	UP	TO	DOWN	UP	TO	DOWN	UP	TO	DOWN	UP	TO	DOWN	CLOSE	2	3
5	UP	TO	6	4X6	4X6	6X6	6X6	6X6	6X6	5	6X8	5						
	UP	TO	8	6X6	6X6	6X8	6X8	6X8	6X8	5	8X10	5						2X6
	UP	TO	10	6X6	6X6	6X8	6X8	6X8	6X8	5	10X10	5						2X6
10	UP	TO	6	6X6	6X6	6X8	6X8	6X8	6X8	5	8X8	5						
	UP	TO	8	6X8	6X8	6X8	8X8	8X8	8X8	5	10X10	5						
	UP	TO	10	8X8	8X8	8X8	8X8	8X10	8X10	5	10X12	5						2X6
15	UP	TO	6	6X8	6X8	8X8	8X8	8X8	8X8	5	8X10	5						
	UP	TO	8	8X8	8X8	8X8	8X8	8X10	8X10	5	10X12	5						
	UP	TO	10	8X10	8X10	8X10	8X10	10X10	10X10	5	12X12	5						2X6
20	UP	TO	6	6X8	6X8	8X8	8X8	8X8	8X8	5	8X10	5						
	UP	TO	8	8X8	8X8	8X8	8X8	8X10	8X10	5	10X12	5						
	UP	TO	10	8X10	8X10	8X10	8X10	10X10	10X10	5	12X12	5						3X6
OVER	SEE NOTE 1																	

\* Mixed oak or equivalent with a bending strength not less than 850 psi.  
 \*\* Manufactured members of equivalent strength may be substituted for wood.

TABLE C-1.3

TIMBER TRENCH SHORING -- MINIMUM TIMBER REQUIREMENTS \*  
 SOIL TYPE C P<sub>a</sub> = 80 X H + 72 psf (2 ft. Surcharge)

DEPTH OF TRENCH (FEET)	SIZE (ACTUAL) AND SPACING OF MEMBERS**												UPRIGHTS	
	HORIZ. SPACING (FEET)	CROSS BRACES						VERT. SPACING (FEET)	SIZE (IN.)	VERT. SPACING (FEET)	MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE HORIZONTAL SPACING (FEET) (See Note 2)			
		WIDTH OF TRENCH (FEET)			UP TO SPACING (FEET)						CLOSE			
5	UP TO 6	6X8	6X8	6X8	8X8	8X8	5	8X10	5	2X6				
	UP TO 8	8X8	8X8	8X8	8X8	8X10	5	10X12	5	2X6				
	UP TO 10	8X10	8X10	8X10	10X10		5	12X12	5	2X6				
10	See Note 1													
	UP TO 6	8X8	8X8	8X8	8X10	8X10	5	10X12	5	2X6				
	UP TO 8	8X10	8X10	8X10	10X10		5	12X12	5	2X6				
15	See Note 1													
	See Note 1													
	See Note 1													
20	UP TO 6	8X10	8X10	8X10	10X10	10X10	5	12X12	5	3X6				
	See Note 1													
	See Note 1													
OVER 20	SEE NOTE 1													

\* Mixed Oak or equivalent with a bending strength not less than 850 psi.  
 \*\* Manufactured members of equivalent strength may be substituted for wood.





TABLE C-2.2

TIMBER TRENCH SHORING --- MINIMUM TIMBER REQUIREMENTS \*  
 SOIL TYPE B P = 45 X H + 72 psf (2 ft. Surcharge)

DEPTH OF TRENCH (FEET)	CROSS BRACES										SIZE (S4S) AND SPACING OF MEMBERS **			WALES			UPRIGHTS		
	HORIZ. SPACING (FEET)		WIDTH OF TRENCH (FEET)				VERT. UP TO SPACING (FEET)				VERT. SPACING (FEET)	SIZE (IN)	MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE HORIZONTAL SPACING	MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE HORIZONTAL SPACING (FEET)		VERT. SPACING (FEET)	SIZE (IN)	MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE HORIZONTAL SPACING (FEET)	
	UP TO	TO	UP TO	UP TO	UP TO	UP TO	UP TO	UP TO	UP TO	UP TO				UP TO	UP TO				UP TO
5	UP TO 6	4X6	4X6	4X6	4X6	6X6	6X6	6X6	5	5	6X8	5	3X12 4X8	2	3	4	6	4X12	
TO	UP TO 8	4X6	4X6	6X6	6X6	6X6	6X6	5	5	8X8	5	3X8	3	4	6	4X8			
10	UP TO 10	4X6	4X6	6X6	6X6	6X6	6X8	5	5	8X10	5	4X8	4	6					
	See Note 1																		
10	UP TO 6	6X6	6X6	6X6	6X8	6X8	6X8	5	5	8X8	5	3X6	3	4					
TO	UP TO 8	6X8	6X8	6X8	8X8	8X8	8X8	5	5	10X10	5	4X10	4	6					
15	UP TO 10	6X8	6X8	8X8	8X8	8X8	8X8	5	5	10X12	5	4X10	4	6					
	See Note 1																		
15	UP TO 6	6X8	6X8	6X8	6X8	8X8	8X8	5	5	8X10	5	4X6	3	4					
TO	UP TO 8	6X8	6X8	6X8	8X8	8X8	8X8	5	5	10X12	5	4X6	4	6					
20	UP TO 10	8X8	8X8	8X8	8X8	8X8	8X8	5	5	12X12	5	4X6	4	6					
	See Note 1																		
OVER 20	SEE NOTE 1																		

\* Douglas fir or equivalent with a bending strength not less than 1500 psi.  
 \*\* Manufactured members of equivalent strength may be substituted for wood.

TABLE C-2.3  
 TIMBER TRENCH SHORING -- MINIMUM TIMBER REQUIREMENTS \*  
 SOIL TYPE C P<sub>a</sub> = 80 X H + 72 psf (2 ft. Surcharge)

DEPTH OF TRENCH (FEET)	SIZE (S&S) AND SPACING OF MEMBERS **										UPRIGHTS			
	GROSS BRACES					MALES					MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE HORIZONTAL SPACING			
	HORIZ. SPACING (FEET)		WIDTH OF TRENCH (FEET)		VERT. SPACING (FEET)	VERT. SPACING (FEET)		SIZE (IN)	VERT. SPACING (FEET)	CLOSE				
5 TO 10	UP TO 4	6X6	UP TO 6	6X6	UP TO 9	6X6	UP TO 12	6X6	8X8	5	8X8	5	3X6	
	6 TO 8	6X6	UP TO 6	6X6	6X6	6X6	8X8	8X8	5	10X10	5	3X6		
	8 TO 10	6X6	UP TO 6	6X6	8X8	8X8	8X8	8X8	5	10X12	5	3X6		
10 TO 15	UP TO 6	6X8	UP TO 6	6X8	6X8	6X8	8X8	8X8	5	10X10	5	4X6		
	6 TO 8	8X8	UP TO 6	8X8	8X8	8X8	8X8	8X8	5	12X12	5	4X6		
	8 TO 15	See Note 1	UP TO 6	See Note 1	See Note 1	See Note 1	See Note 1	See Note 1						
15 TO 20	UP TO 6	8X8	UP TO 6	8X8	8X8	8X8	8X10	8X10	5	10X12	5	4X6		
	6 TO 15	See Note 1	UP TO 6	See Note 1	See Note 1	See Note 1	See Note 1	See Note 1						
	15 TO 20	See Note 1	UP TO 6	See Note 1	See Note 1	See Note 1	See Note 1	See Note 1						
OVER 20	SEE NOTE 1													

\* Douglas fir or equivalent with a bending strength not less than 1500 psi.  
 \*\* Manufactured members of equivalent strength may be substituted for wood.

APPENDIX D TO SUBPART P OF PART 1926—ALUMINUM HYDRAULIC SHORING FOR TRENCHES

(a) *Scope.* This appendix contains information that can be used when aluminum hydraulic shoring is provided as a method of protection against cave-ins in trenches that

do not exceed 20 feet (6.1m) in depth. This appendix must be used when design of the aluminum hydraulic protective system cannot be performed in accordance with §1926.652(c)(2).

(b) *Soil Classification.* In order to use data presented in this appendix, the soil type or types in which the excavation is made must

first be determined using the soil classification method set forth in appendix A of subpart P of part 1926.

(c) *Presentation of Information.* Information is presented in several forms as follows:

(1) Information is presented in tabular form in Tables D-1.1, D-1.2, D-1.3 and E-1.4. Each table presents the maximum vertical and horizontal spacings that may be used with various aluminum member sizes and various hydraulic cylinder sizes. Each table contains data only for the particular soil type in which the excavation or portion of the excavation is made. Tables D-1.1 and D-1.2 are for vertical shores in Types A and B soil. Tables D-1.3 and D-1.4 are for horizontal waler systems in Types B and C soil.

(2) Information concerning the basis of the tabular data and the limitations of the data is presented in paragraph (d) of this appendix.

(3) Information explaining the use of the tabular data is presented in paragraph (e) of this appendix.

(4) Information illustrating the use of the tabular data is presented in paragraph (f) of this appendix.

(5) Miscellaneous notations (footnotes) regarding Table D-1.1 through D-1.4 are presented in paragraph (g) of this appendix.

(6) Figures, illustrating typical installations of hydraulic shoring, are included just prior to the Tables. The illustrations page is entitled "Aluminum Hydraulic Shoring; Typical Installations."

(d) *Basis and limitations of the data.* (1) Vertical shore rails and horizontal wales are those that meet the Section Modulus requirements in the D-1 Tables. Aluminum material is: 6061-T6 or material of equivalent strength and properties.

(2) Hydraulic cylinders specifications. (i) 2-inch cylinders shall be a minimum 2-inch inside diameter with a minimum safe working capacity of no less than 18,000 pounds axial compressive load at maximum extension. Maximum extension is to include full range of cylinder extensions as recommended by product manufacturer.

(ii) 3-inch cylinders shall be a minimum 3-inch inside diameter with a safe working capacity of not less than 30,000 pounds axial compressive load at extensions as recommended by product manufacturer.

(3) Limitation of application.

(i) It is not intended that the aluminum hydraulic specification apply to every situation that may be experienced in the field. These data were developed to apply to the situations that are most commonly experienced in current trenching practice. Shoring systems for use in situations that are not covered by the data in this appendix must be otherwise designed as specified in §1926.652(c).

(ii) When any of the following conditions are present, the members specified in the Ta-

bles are not considered adequate. In this case, an alternative aluminum hydraulic shoring system or other type of protective system must be designed in accordance with §1926.652.

(A) When vertical loads imposed on cross braces exceed a 100 Pound gravity load distributed on a one foot section of the center of the hydraulic cylinder.

(B) When surcharge loads are present from equipment weighing in excess of 20,000 pounds.

(C) When only the lower portion or a trench is shored and the remaining portion of the trench is sloped or benched unless: The sloped portion is sloped at an angle less steep than three horizontal to one vertical; or the members are selected from the tables for use at a depth which is determined from the top of the overall trench, and not from the toe of the sloped portion.

(e) *Use of Tables D-1.1, D-1.2, D-1.3 and D-1.4.* The members of the shoring system that are to be selected using this information are the hydraulic cylinders, and either the vertical shores or the horizontal wales. When a waler system is used the vertical timber sheeting to be used is also selected from these tables. The Tables D-1.1 and D-1.2 for vertical shores are used in Type A and B soils that do not require sheeting. Type B soils that may require sheeting, and Type C soils that always require sheeting are found in the horizontal wale Tables D-1.3 and D-1.4. The soil type must first be determined in accordance with the soil classification system described in appendix A to subpart P of part 1926. Using the appropriate table, the selection of the size and spacing of the members is made. The selection is based on the depth and width of the trench where the members are to be installed. In these tables the vertical spacing is held constant at four feet on center. The tables show the maximum horizontal spacing of cylinders allowed for each size of wale in the waler system tables, and in the vertical shore tables, the hydraulic cylinder horizontal spacing is the same as the vertical shore spacing.

(f) *Example to Illustrate the Use of the Tables:*

(1) Example 1:

A trench dug in Type A soil is 6 feet deep and 3 feet wide. From Table D-1.1: Find vertical shores and 2 inch diameter cylinders spaced 8 feet on center (o.c.) horizontally and 4 feet on center (o.c.) vertically. (See Figures 1 & 3 for typical installations.)

(2) Example 2:

A trench is dug in Type B soil that does not require sheeting, 13 feet deep and 5 feet wide. From Table D-1.2: Find vertical shores and 2 inch diameter cylinders spaced 6.5 feet o.c. horizontally and 4 feet o.c. vertically. (See Figures 1 & 3 for typical installations.)

(3) A trench is dug in Type B soil that does not require sheeting, but does experience some minor raveling of the trench face. The

trench is 16 feet deep and 9 feet wide. From Table D-1.2: Find vertical shores and 2 inch diameter cylinder (with special oversleeves as designated by footnote #B2) spaced 5.5 feet o.c. horizontally and 4 feet o.c. vertically, plywood (per footnote (g)(7) to the D-1 Table) should be used behind the shores. (See Figures 2 & 3 for typical installations.)

(4) Example 4: A trench is dug in previously disturbed Type B soil, with characteristics of a Type C soil, and will require sheeting. The trench is 18 feet deep and 12 feet wide. 8 foot horizontal spacing between cylinders is desired for working space. From Table D-1.3: Find horizontal wale with a section modulus of 14.0 spaced at 4 feet o.c. vertically and 3 inch diameter cylinder spaced at 9 feet maximum o.c. horizontally. 3x12 timber sheeting is required at close spacing vertically. (See Figure 4 for typical installation.)

(5) Example 5: A trench is dug in Type C soil, 9 feet deep and 4 feet wide. Horizontal cylinder spacing in excess of 6 feet is desired for working space. From Table D-1.4: Find horizontal wale with a section modulus of 7.0 and 2 inch diameter cylinders spaced at 6.5 feet o.c. horizontally. Or, find horizontal wale with a 14.0 section modulus and 3 inch diameter cylinder spaced at 10 feet o.c. horizontally. Both wales are spaced 4 feet o.c. vertically. 3x12 timber sheeting is required at close spacing vertically. (See Figure 4 for typical installation.)

(g) *Footnotes, and general notes, for Tables D-1.1, D-1.2, D-1.3, and D-1.4.*

(1) For applications other than those listed in the tables, refer to §1926.652(c)(2) for use of manufacturer's tabulated data. For trench depths in excess of 20 feet, refer to §1926.652(c)(2) and §1926.652(c)(3).

(2) 2 inch diameter cylinders, at this width, shall have structural steel tube (3.5x3.5x0.1875) oversleeves, or structural oversleeves of manufacturer's specification, extending the full, collapsed length.

(3) Hydraulic cylinders capacities. (1) 2 inch cylinders shall be a minimum 2-inch inside diameter with a safe working capacity of not less than 18,000 pounds axial compressive load at maximum extension. Maximum extension is to include full range of cylinder extensions as recommended by product manufacturer.

(ii) 3-inch cylinders shall be a minimum 3-inch inside diameter with a safe work capacity of not less than 30,000 pounds axial compressive load at maximum extension. Maximum extension is to include full range of cylinder extensions as recommended by product manufacturer.

(4) All spacing indicated is measured center to center.

(5) Vertical shoring rails shall have a minimum section modulus of 0.40 inch.

(6) When vertical shores are used, there must be a minimum of three shores spaced equally, horizontally, in a group.

(7) Plywood shall be 1.125 in. thick softwood or 0.75 inch. thick, 14 ply, arctic white birch (Finland form). Please note that plywood is not intended as a structural member, but only for prevention of local raveling (sloughing of the trench face) between shores.

(8) See appendix C for timber specifications.

(9) Wales are calculated for simple span conditions.

(10) See appendix D, item (d), for basis and limitations of the data.

### ALUMINUM HYDRAULIC SHORING TYPICAL INSTALLATIONS

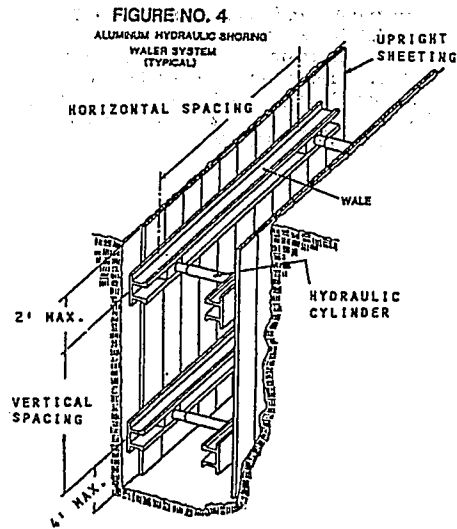
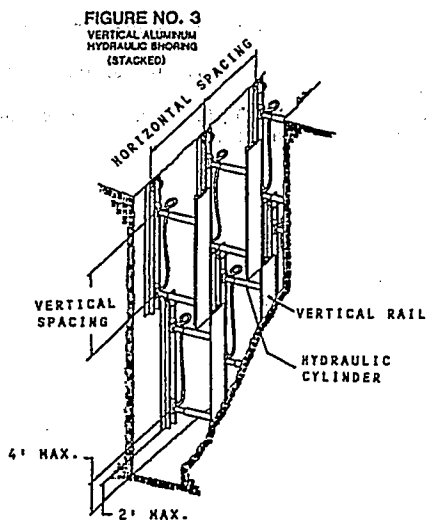
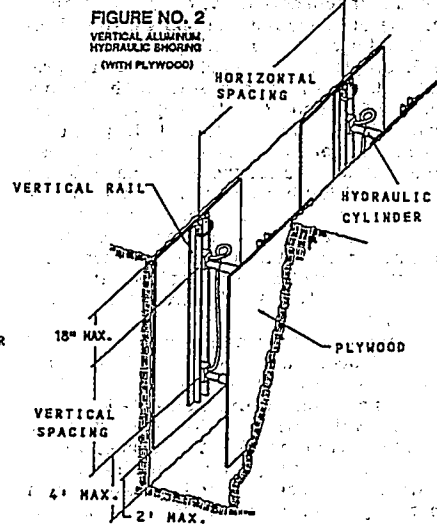
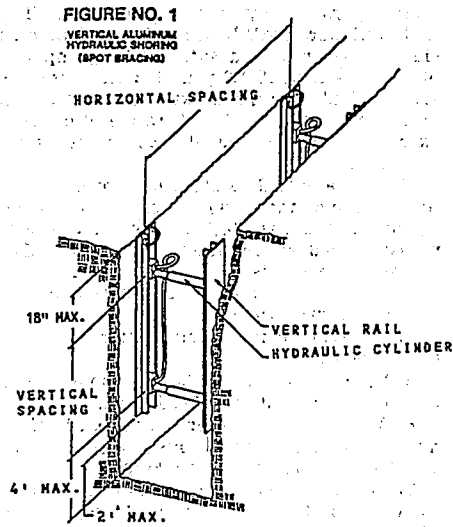


TABLE D - 1.1  
ALUMINUM HYDRAULIC SHORING  
VERTICAL SHORES  
FOR SOIL TYPE A

HYDRAULIC CYLINDERS				
DEPTH OF TRENCH (FEET)	MAXIMUM HORIZONTAL SPACING (FEET)	MAXIMUM VERTICAL SPACING (FEET)	WIDTH OF TRENCH (FEET)	
			UP TO 8	OVER 8 UP TO 12
OVER 5 UP TO 10	8	4	UP TO 8	OVER 8 UP TO 12
OVER 10 UP TO 15	8		2 INCH DIAMETER	2 INCH DIAMETER NOTE (2)
OVER 15 UP TO 20	7		2 INCH DIAMETER	3 INCH DIAMETER
OVER 20	NOTE (1)			

Footnotes to tables, and general notes on hydraulic shoring, are found in Appendix D, Item (g)

Note (1): See Appendix D, Item (g) (1)

Note (2): See Appendix D, Item (g) (2)

TABLE D - 1.2  
ALUMINUM HYDRAULIC SHORING  
VERTICAL SHORES  
FOR SOIL TYPE B

DEPTH OF TRENCH (FEET)	HYDRAULIC CYLINDERS			WIDTH OF TRENCH (FEET)		
	MAXIMUM HORIZONTAL SPACING (FEET)	MAXIMUM VERTICAL SPACING (FEET)		UP TO 8	OVER 8 UP TO 12	OVER 12 UP TO 15
OVER 5 UP TO 10	8					
OVER 10 UP TO 15	6.5	4		2 INCH DIAMETER	2 INCH DIAMETER NOTE (2)	3 INCH DIAMETER
OVER 15 UP TO 20	5.5					
OVER 20						

NOTE (1)

Footnotes to tables, and general notes on hydraulic shoring, are found in Appendix D, Item (g)

Note (1): See Appendix D, Item (g) (1)

Note (2): See Appendix D, Item (g) (2)

TABLE D - 1.3  
ALUMINUM HYDRAULIC SHORING  
WALER SYSTEMS  
FOR SOIL TYPE B

DEPTH OF TRENCH (FEET)	WALES		HYDRAULIC CYLINDERS								TIMBER UPRIGHTS	
	VERTICAL SPACING (FEET)	SECTION MODULUS (IN <sup>3</sup> )	WIDTH OF TRENCH (FEET)								MAX. HORIZ. SPACING (ON CENTER)	SOLID SHEET
			UP TO 8	OVER 8 UP TO 12		OVER 12 UP TO 15		2 FT.	3 FT.			
			HORIZ. SPACING	CYLINDER DIAMETER	HORIZ. SPACING	CYLINDER DIAMETER	HORIZ. SPACING	CYLINDER DIAMETER	HORIZ. SPACING	CYLINDER DIAMETER		
OVER 5 UP TO 10	4	3.5	8.0	2 IN	8.0	NOTE(2)	2 IN	8.0	3 IN			
		7.0	9.0	2 IN	9.0	NOTE(2)	2 IN	9.0	3 IN			3x12
		14.0	12.0	3 IN	12.0		3 IN	12.0	3 IN			
OVER 10 UP TO 15	4	3.5	6.0	2 IN	6.0	NOTE(2)	2 IN	6.0	3 IN			
		7.0	8.0	3 IN	8.0		3 IN	8.0	3 IN			3x12
		14.0	10.0	3 IN	10.0		3 IN	10.0	3 IN			
OVER 15 UP TO 20	4	3.5	5.5	2 IN	5.5	NOTE(2)	2 IN	5.5	3 IN			
		7.0	6.0	3 IN	6.0		3 IN	6.0	3 IN			3x12
		14.0	9.0	3 IN	9.0		3 IN	9.0	3 IN			
OVER 20			NOTE (1)									

Footnotes to tables, and general notes on hydraulic shoring, are found in Appendix D, Item (g)  
 Notes (1): See Appendix D, item (g) (1)  
 Notes (2): See Appendix D, Item (g) (2)  
 \* Consult product manufacturer and/or qualified engineer for Section Modulus of available wales.



TABLE D-14  
ALUMINUM HYDRAULIC SHORING  
WALER SYSTEMS  
FOR SOIL TYPE C

DEPTH OF TRENCH (FEET)	WALES		HYDRAULIC CYLINDERS						TIMBER UPRIGHTS	
	VERTICAL SPACING (FEET)	SECTION MODULUS (IN <sup>3</sup> )	WIDTH OF TRENCH (FEET)						MAX. HORIZ. SPACING (ON CENTER)	SOLID SHEET
			UP TO 8	OVER 8 UP TO 12		OVER 12 UP TO 15		2 FT.		
			HORIZ. SPACING	CYLINDER DIAMETER	HORIZ. SPACING	CYLINDER DIAMETER	HORIZ. SPACING	CYLINDER DIAMETER		
OVER 5 UP TO 10	4	3.5	6.0	2 IN	6.0	2 IN	6.0	3 IN	3x12	—
			6.5	2 IN	6.5	NOTE(2)	6.5	3 IN		
			10.0	3 IN	10.0	3 IN	10.0	3 IN		
OVER 10 UP TO 15	4	3.5	4.0	2 IN	4.0	NOTE(2)	4.0	3 IN	3x12	—
			5.5	3 IN	5.5	3 IN	5.5	3 IN		
			8.0	3 IN	8.0	3 IN	8.0	3 IN		
OVER 15 UP TO 20	4	7.0	3.5	2 IN	3.5	NOTE(2)	3.5	3 IN	3x12	—
			5.0	3 IN	5.0	3 IN	5.0	3 IN		
			6.0	3 IN	6.0	3 IN	6.0	3 IN		
OVER 20			NOTE (1)							

Footnotes to tables, and general notes on hydraulic shoring, are found in Appendix D, Item (g)  
 Notes (1): See Appendix D, Item (g) (1)  
 Notes (2): See Appendix D, Item (g) (2)  
 \* Consult product manufacturer and/or qualified engineer for Section Modulus of available wales.

APPENDIX E TO SUBPART P OF PART 1926—ALTERNATIVES TO TIMBER SHORING

Figure 1. Aluminum Hydraulic Shoring

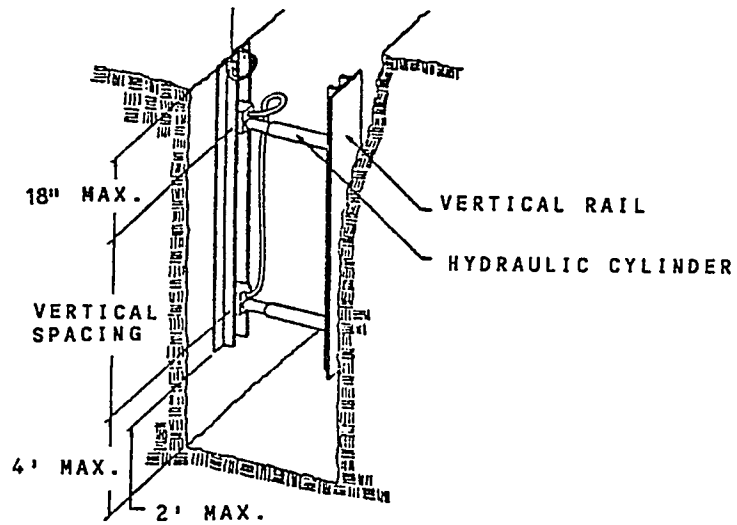


Figure 2. Pneumatic/hydraulic Shoring

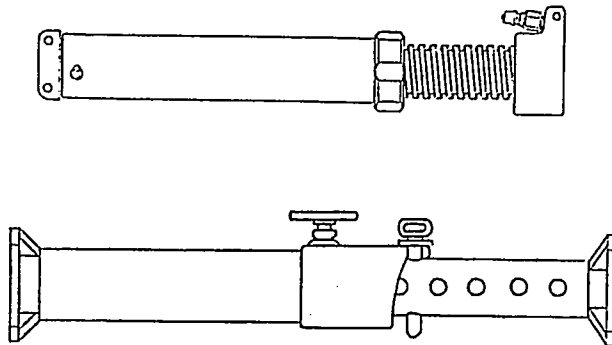


Figure 3. Trench Jacks (Screw Jacks)

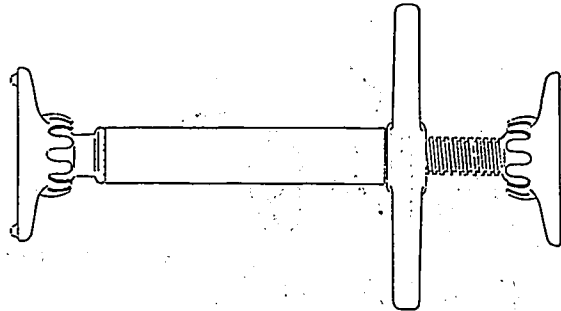
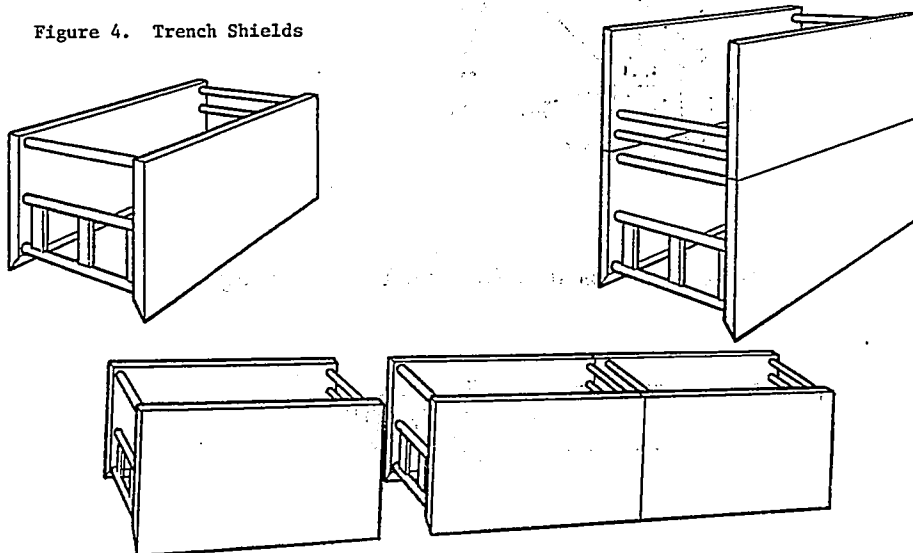


Figure 4. Trench Shields



APPENDIX F TO SUBPART P OF PART 1926—SELECTION OF PROTECTIVE SYSTEMS

The following figures are a graphic summary of the requirements contained in sub-

part P for excavations 20 feet or less in depth. Protective systems for use in excavations more than 20 feet in depth must be designed by a registered professional engineer in accordance with §1926.652 (b) and (c).

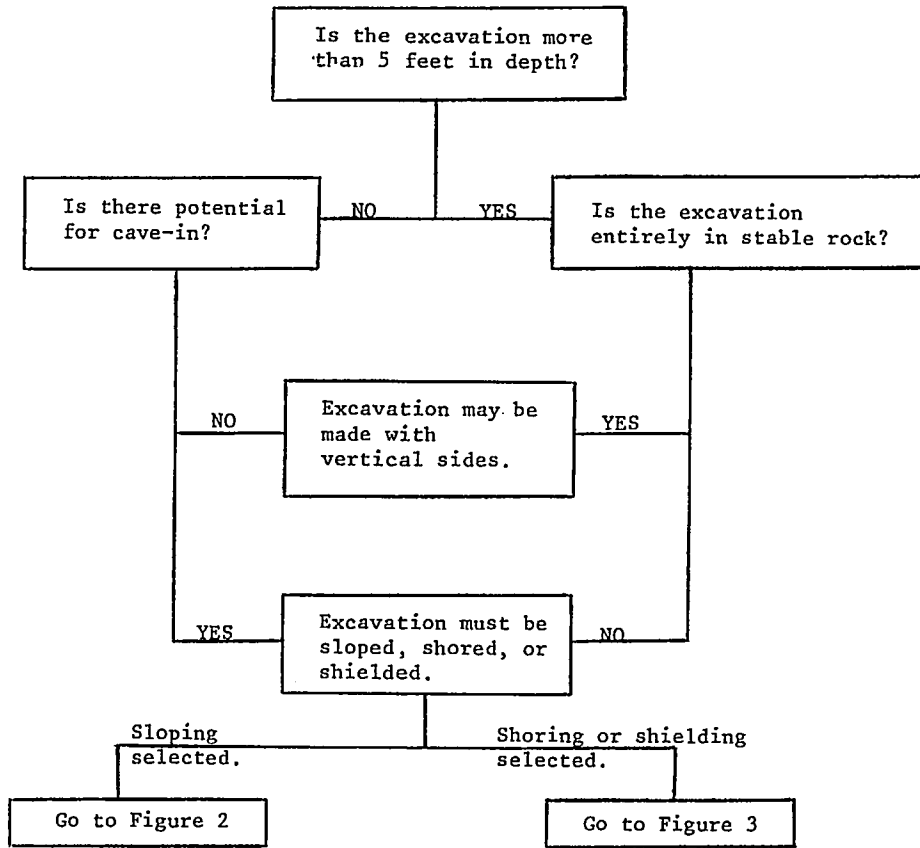


FIGURE 1 - PRELIMINARY DECISIONS

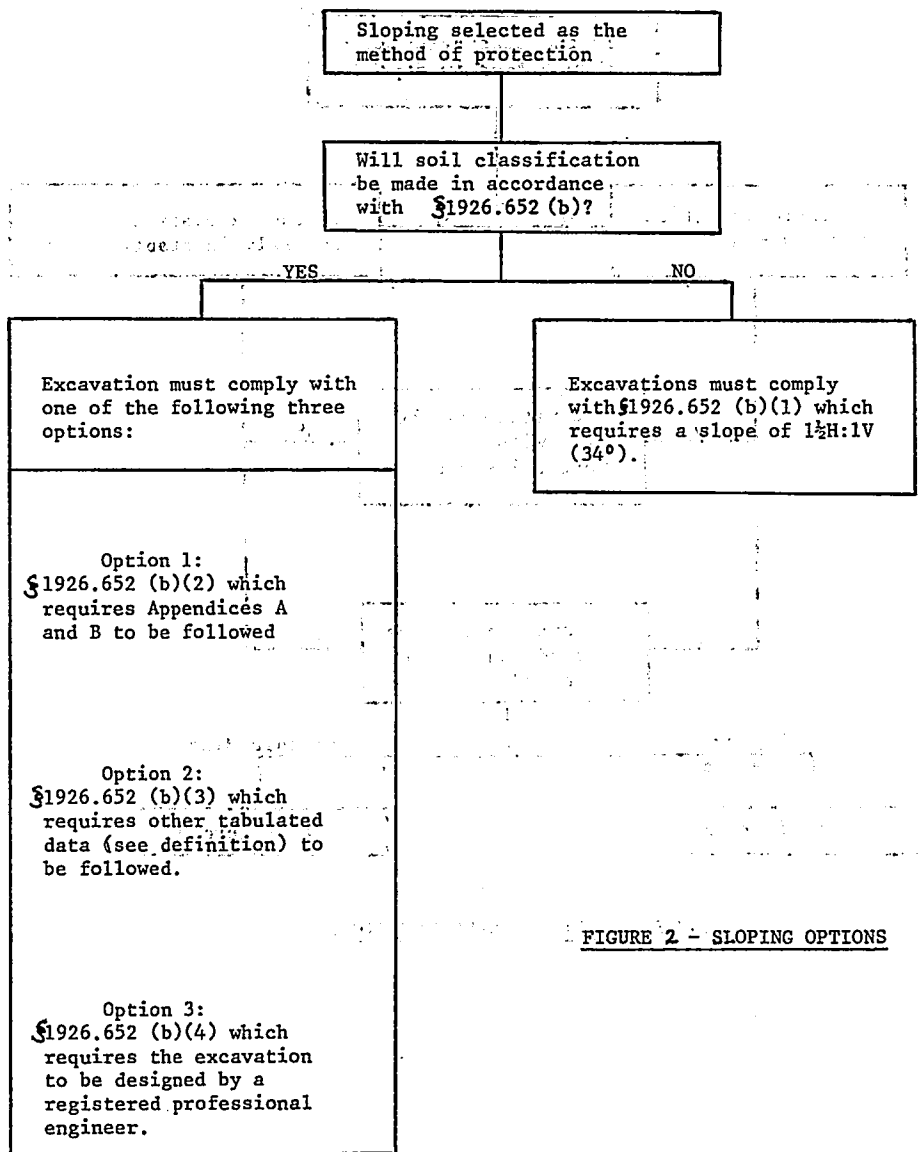


FIGURE 2 - SLOPING OPTIONS

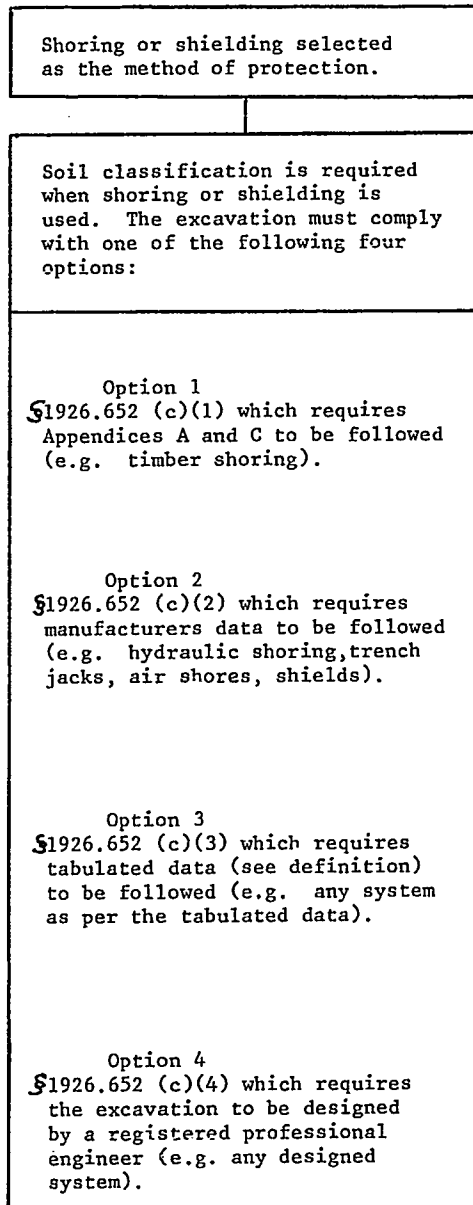
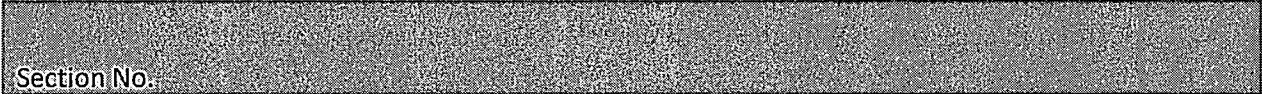


FIGURE 3 - SHORING AND SHIELDING OPTIONS

**SECTION NO. 17**

**SPECIAL PROVISIONS – LANDSCAPING AND IRRIGATION SPECIFICATIONS**

**NUMERICAL LISTING**



17-01	DESCRIPTION OF WORK
17-02	APPLICABLE STANDARDS
17-03	QUALIFICATIONS
17-04	SUBMITTALS
17-05	UTILITY VERIFICATION
17-06	MATERIALS
17-07	EXECUTION
17-08	GUARANTEE PERIOD AND REPLACEMENTS
17-09	FINAL INSPECTION AND FINAL ACCEPTANCE
17-10	TURF MAINTENANCE SPECIFICATIONS
17-11	IRRIGATION EQUIPMENT AND MATERIALS
17-12	IRRIGATION SYSTEM SPECIFICATIONS
17-13	IRRIGATION INSTALLATION PROCEDURES
17-14	IRRIGATION METERS AND WATER ACCOUNT

## SECTION NO. 17

### SPECIAL PROVISIONS – LANDSCAPING AND IRRIGATION SPECIFICATIONS

#### **17-01 DESCRIPTION OF WORK:**

- A. Provide all exterior planting as shown on the drawings or inferable there from and/or as specified in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents.
- B. These specifications include standards necessary for and incidental to the execution and completion of planting, including hauling and spreading of topsoil, and finished grading as indicated on the prepared drawings and specified herein.
- C. Protection of existing features. During construction, protect all existing trees, shrubs, and other specified vegetation, site features and improvements, structures, and utilities specified herein and/or on submitted drawings. Removal or destruction of existing plantings is prohibited unless specifically authorized by the owner.

#### **17-02 APPLICABLE STANDARDS:**

- A. *American National Standards for Tree Care Operations, ANSI A300.* American National Standards Institute, 11 West 42<sup>nd</sup> Street, New York, N.Y. 10036.
- B. *American Standard for Nursery Stock, ANSI Z60.1.* American Nursery and Landscape Association, 1250 Eye Street, NW, Suite, 500, Washington, D.C. 20005.
- C. All standards shall include the latest additions and amendments as of the date of advertisement for bids.

**17-03 QUALIFICATIONS:** Landscape planting and related work shall be performed by a firm with a minimum of five years experience specializing in this type of work. All contractors and their sub-contractors who will be performing any landscape work included in this section of the specification shall be approved by the Urban Forestry and Land Manager.

#### **17-04 SUBMITTALS:**

- A. **Manufacturer's Data:** Submit copies of the manufacturer's and/or source data for all materials specified, including soils.
- B. **Samples:** Submit samples of all topsoil, soil mixes, mulches, and organic materials. Samples shall weigh 1 kg (2 lb) and be packaged in plastic bags. Samples shall be typical of the lot of material to be delivered to the site and provide an accurate indication of color, texture, and organic makeup of the material.
- C. **Plant Photographs:** Submit color photographs of representative specimens of each type of tree and shrub on the plant list. Photos shall be 75 x 125 mm (3 x 5 in.) taken from angle that depicts the size and condition of the typical plant to be furnished. A scale rod or other measuring device shall be included in the photograph. For species where more than 20 plants are required, include a minimum of three photos that show the average plant, the



best quality plant, and the worst quality plant to be provided. Label each photograph with the plant name, plant size, and name of the growing nursery.

- D. Nursery Sources: Submit a list of all nurseries that will supply plants, along with a list of the plants they will provide and the location of the nursery.
- E. Soil Testing: Submit the manufacturers' particle size analysis and the pH analysis and provide a description and source location for the content material of all organic materials.

**17-05 UTILITY VERIFICATION:** The contractor shall contact the local utility companies for verification of the location of all underground utility lines in the area of the work. The contractor shall be responsible for all damage resulting from neglect or failure to comply with this requirement.

**17-06 MATERIALS:**

A. Topsoil

1. Imported Topsoil:

- a. Topsoil shall be a loam, sandy loam, clay loam, silt loam, sandy clay loam, and loamy sand. Other soils may be used if recommended by an agronomist or soil scientist and approved by City of Arlington Forestry and Beautification Department. Regardless, topsoil shall not be a mixture of contrasting textured sub-soils and shall contain less than 5 % by volume of cinders, stones, slag, coarse fragments, gravel, sticks, roots, trash, or other materials larger than 1 1/2 " in diameter.
- b. The subsoil shall be tilled to a minimum depth of 6-inches before placement of topsoil.
- c. Where the subsoil is either highly acidic or composed of heavy clays, ground limestone shall be spread at the rate of 4-8 tons/acre (200-400 lbs per 1000 sq ft) prior to the placement of topsoil. Lime shall be distributed uniformly over designated areas and worked into the soil.
- d. Topsoil shall be tested and amended as per soil test recommendations.

2. Existing Topsoil:

- a. Existing topsoil may be used if it meets the requirements for imported topsoil or if approved by the Urban Forest and Land Manger. Provide a minimum of one soil sample with accompanying soil test report for each topsoil type found at the site. Following the completion of the soil testing, the contractor and the Urban Forest and Land Manger shall meet at the site prior to beginning of topsoil stripping and establish the limitations of areas where existing topsoil may be used and the depth of topsoil stripping permitted. *(NOTE: The Urban Forestry and Land Manager may test the existing soil prior to bidding the project and include the areas and depths of topsoil availability in the bid documents along with the soil test results.)*

- b. Topsoil shall not be stripped, transported, or graded if moisture content exceeds field capacity or if the soil is frozen.
- c. Topsoil stockpiles shall be protected from erosion and contamination.
- d. Amendments required to be added as indicated on the soil test report shall be added by the contractor at the time of spreading and/or grading.

**B. Plants:**

- 1. Plants shall be true to species and variety specified and nursery-grown in accordance with good horticultural practices under climatic conditions similar to those in the locality of the project for at least two years. They shall have been freshly dug (during the most recent favorable harvest season). Plants shall be native or adapted to this region and must be approved by the Urban Forestry and Land Manager.
  - a. All plant names and descriptions shall be as defined in Hortus Third.
  - b. All plants shall be grown and harvested in accordance with the American Standard for Nursery Stock.
  - c. Unless approved by the Urban Forestry & Land Manager, plants shall have been grown at latitude not more than 325 km (200 miles) north or south of the latitude of the project unless the provenance of the plant can be documented to be compatible with the latitude and cold hardiness zone of the planting location.
- 2. Delivery and Inspection: All trees must be approved by the Forester or Urban Forestry & Land Manager prior to installation. The Forestry and Beautification Department may approve plants at the nursery, a designated holding area, or on site at the discretion of the Department. Contractors are responsible for notifying Forestry and Beautification prior to delivery of plant material. Plants shall be subject to inspection for conformity to specification requirements and approval by the Urban Forestry and Land Manager at their place of growth and upon delivery. Such approval shall not impair the right of inspection and rejection during progress of the work.

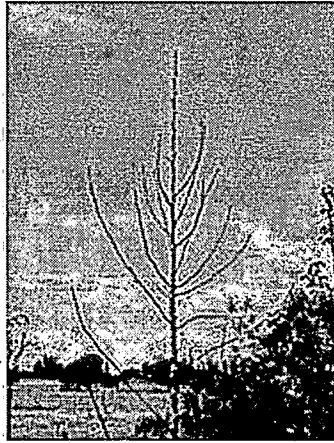
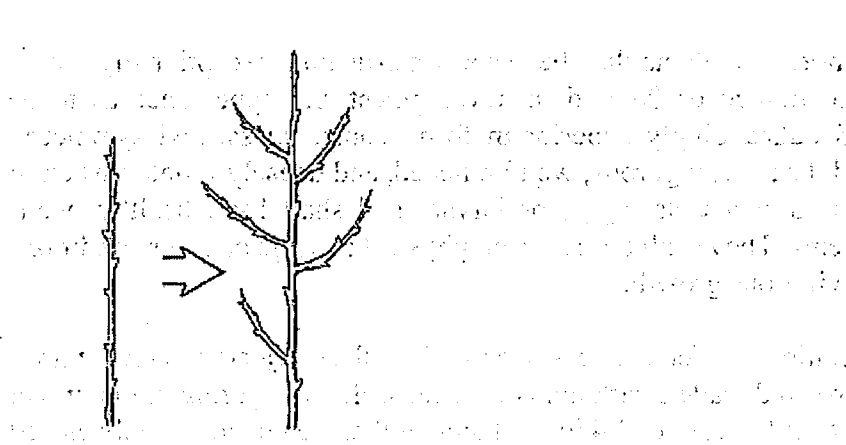
(Rev. 6/2018)

  - a. A written request for the inspection of plant material at their place of growth shall be submitted to the Urban Forestry and Land Manager at least ten calendar days prior to digging. This request shall state the place of growth and the quantity of plants to be inspected. The Urban Forestry and Land Manager may refuse inspection at this time if, in his or her judgment, sufficient quantities of plants are not available for inspection.

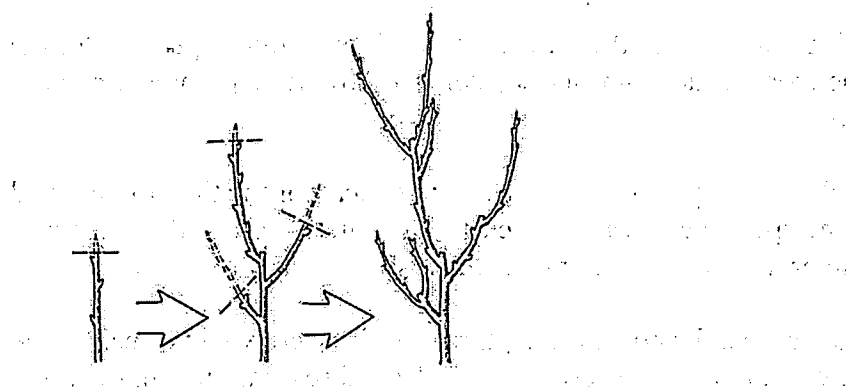
(Rev. 6/2018)
  - b. All plants shall be selected and tagged by the Urban Forest and Land Manager at their place of growth. For distant material, photographs may be submitted for pre-inspection review.

- c. All field grown deciduous trees shall be marked to indicate the trees north orientation in the nursery. Place a 1-in. diameter spot of white paint onto the north side of the tree trunk within the bottom 12 inches of the trunk. (Rev. 6/2018)
3. Unless specifically noted, all plants shall be of specimen quality, exceptionally heavy, symmetrical, and so trained or favored in development and appearance as to be unquestionably and outstandingly superior in form, compactness, and symmetry. They shall be sound, healthy, vigorous, well branched, and densely foliated when in leaf; free of disease and insects, eggs, or larvae; and shall have healthy, well-developed root systems. They shall be free from physical damage or other conditions that would prevent vigorous growth.
  - a. Trees with multiple leaders, unless specified, will be rejected. Trees with a damaged or crooked leader, bark abrasions, sunscald, disfiguring knots, insect damage, or cuts of limbs over 3/4 in. in diameter that are not completely closed will be rejected.
  - b. An inspection of the crown, trunk, and roots shall find the following characteristics:
    4. Crown Form: The form or shape of the crown is typical for a young specimen of the species/cultivar. The crown is not significantly deformed by wind, pruning practices, pests or other factors.
    5. Leaves: The size, color and appearance of leaves are typical for the time of year and stage of growth of the species/cultivar. Leaves are not stunted, misshapen, tattered, discolored (chlorotic or necrotic) or otherwise atypical.
    6. Branches: Shoot growth (length and diameter) throughout the crown is typical for the age/size of the species/cultivar. Trees do not have dead, diseased, broken, distorted or other serious branch injuries.
    7. Trunk: The tree trunk should be straight, vertical and free of wounds (except properly-made pruning cuts), sunburned areas, conks (fungal fruiting bodies), wood cracks, bleeding areas, signs of boring insects, galls, cankers/lesions and girdling ties.
    8. Tree height and trunk diameter are typical for the age, species/cultivar and container size.
    9. Roots: The root system is free of injury from biotic (insects, pathogens, etc.) and abiotic agents (herbicide toxicity, salt injury, excess irrigation, etc.). Root distribution is uniform throughout the soil mix or growth media and growth is typical for the species/cultivar.
      - a. Central Leader: Trees shall have a single, relatively straight central leader and tapered trunk, free of co-dominant stems and vigorous, upright branches that

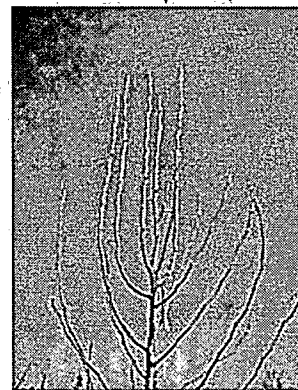
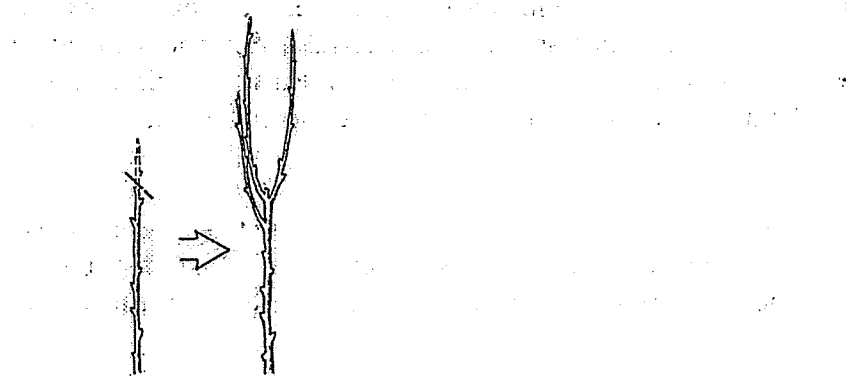
Side branches shall not compete with the central leader. If the original leader has been headed, a new leader at least 1/2 (one-half) the diameter of the original leader shall be present.



Maintaining a single, central leader is preferable.



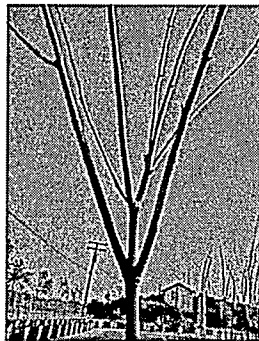
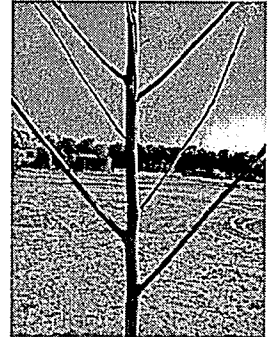
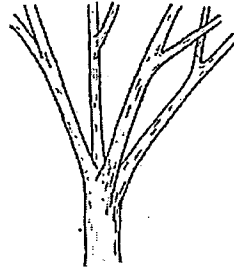
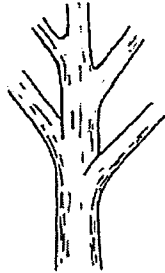
Heading and retaining a leader is acceptable.



Heading without retaining a leader is unacceptable.

b. Main Branches (scaffolds): Branches should be distributed radially around and vertically along the trunk, forming a generally symmetrical crown typical for the species.

1. Main branches, for the most part, shall be well spaced.



preferable

unacceptable  
unacceptable

preferable

2. Branch diameter shall be no greater than 2/3 (two thirds) the diameter of the trunk, measured 1" (one inch) above the branch.



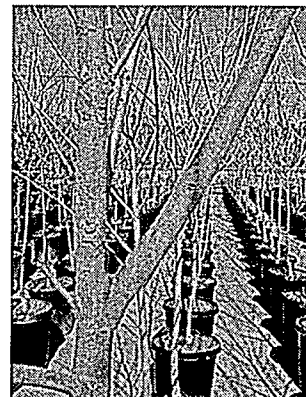
preferable



unacceptable

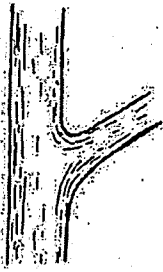


preferable



unacceptable

3. The attachment of scaffold branches shall be free of included bark.



preferable



unacceptable

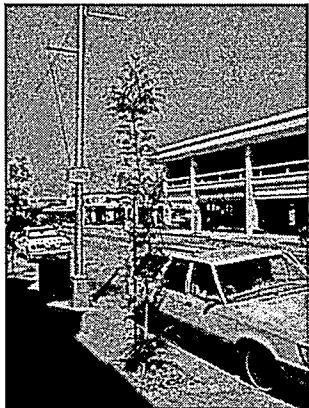


preferable

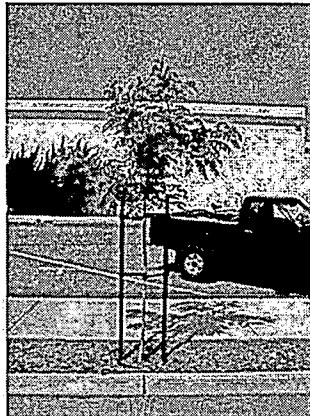
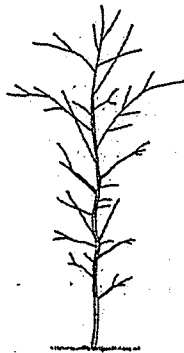


unacceptable

- c. **Temporary branches:** Temporary branches should be present along the lower trunk, particularly for trees less than 1-1/2" (one and one-half inches) in trunk diameter. They should be no greater than 3/8" (three-eighths inch) in diameter. Heading of temporary branches is often necessary to limit their growth.



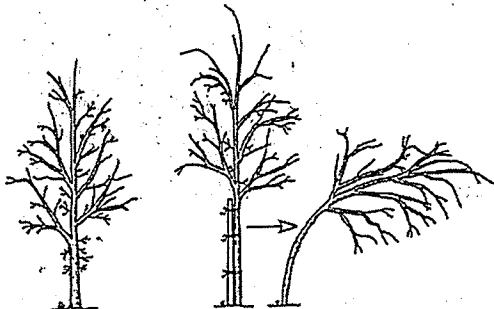
Good



Not as Good



- d. **Trunk diameter and taper** shall be sufficient so that the tree will remain vertical without the support of a nursery stake.

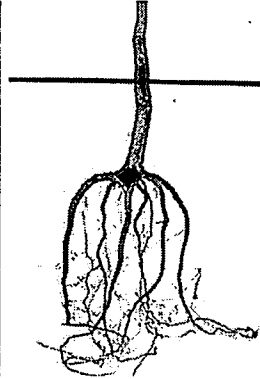
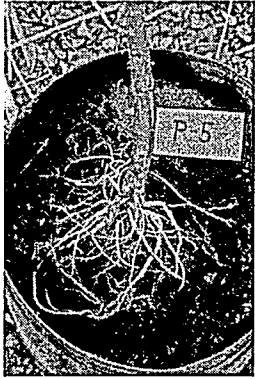


e. The trunk shall be free of wounds (except properly-made pruning cuts), sunburned areas, conks (fungal fruiting-bodies), wood cracks, bleeding areas, signs of boring insects, galls, cankers and/or lesions.

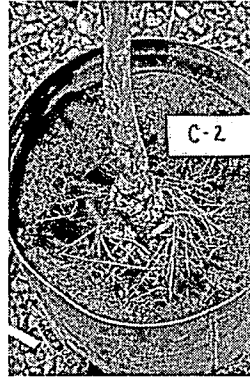
f. Trunk diameter at 6" (six inches) above the soil surface shall be within the diameter range shown for each container size below:

<u>Container Size</u>	<u>Trunk Diameter (inches)</u>
# 5 (gallon)	0.5" to 0.75"
# 15 (gallon)	0.75" to 1.5"
24 inch box	1.5" to 2.5"

g. The trunk, root collar (root crown) and large roots shall be free of circling and/or kinked roots. Soil removal near the root collar may be necessary to inspect for circling and/or kinked roots.



preferable



unacceptable

h. The tree shall be well rooted in the soil mix. When the container is removed, the root ball shall remain intact. When the trunk is carefully lifted both the trunk and root system shall move as one.

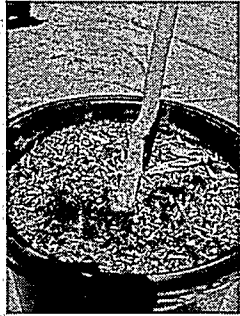


preferable

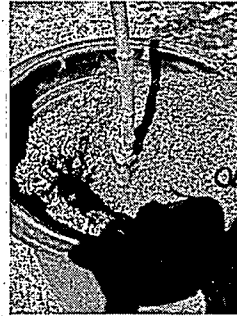


unacceptable

i. The upper-most roots or root collar shall be within 1" (one inch) above or below the soil surface.

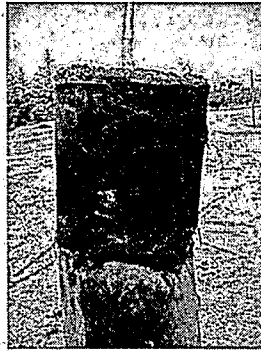


preferable



unacceptable

j. The rootball periphery should be free of large circling and bottom-matted roots. The acceptable diameter of circling peripheral roots depends on species and size of rootball. The maximum acceptable size should be indicated for the species (if necessary).



preferable



unacceptable

k. At time of inspection and delivery, the root ball shall be moist throughout. The crown shall show no signs of moisture stress as indicated by wilted, shriveled or dead leaves or branch dieback. The roots shall show no signs of excess soil moisture conditions as indicated by poor root growth, root discoloration, distortion, death or foul odor.

10. The owner reserves the right to reject trees that do not meet specifications as set forth in these guidelines or as specified by the owner. If a particular defect or substandard element or characteristic can be easily corrected, appropriate remedies shall be required. If destructive inspection of a root ball(s) is to be done, the owner and contractor should have a prior agreement as to the time and place of inspection, minimum number of trees or percentage of a species or cultivar to be inspected and financial responsibility for the inspected trees.

11. Plants shall conform to the measurements specified, except that plants larger than those specified may be used if approved by the Urban Forestry and Land Manager.



Use of larger plants shall not increase the contract price. If larger plants are approved, the root ball shall be increased in proportion to the size of the plant.

- a. Caliper measurements shall be taken on the trunk 6 in. above the natural ground line for trees up to and including 4 in. in caliper, and 12 in. above the natural ground line for trees over 4 in. in caliper. Height and spread dimensions specified refer to the main body of the plant and not from branch tip to branch tip. Plants shall be measured when branches are in their normal position. If a range of sizes is given, no plant shall be less than the minimum size, and no less than 50 percent of the plants shall be as large as the maximum size specified. Measurements specified are minimum sizes acceptable after pruning, where pruning is required. Plants that meet measurements but do not possess a standard relationship between height and spread, according to the American Standards for Nursery Stock, shall be rejected.
12. Substitutions of plant materials will not be permitted unless authorized in writing by the Urban Forestry and Land Manager. If proof is submitted in writing that a plant specified is not obtainable, consideration will be given to the nearest available size or similar variety, with a corresponding adjustment of the contract price.
  13. The plant list at the end of this section, or in the plans, is for the contractor's information only, and no guarantee is expressed or implied that quantities therein are correct or that the list is complete. The contractor shall ensure that all plant materials shown in the plans are included in his or her bid.
  14. All plants shall be labeled by plant name. Labels shall be attached securely to all plants, bundles, and containers of plant materials when delivered. Plant labels shall be durable and legible, with information given in weather-resistant ink or embossed process lettering.
  15. Anti-Desiccants: Anti-desiccants, if specified, are to be applied to plants in full leaf immediately before digging or as required by the Urban Forestry and Land Manager. Anti-desiccants are to be sprayed so that all leaves and branches are covered with a continuous protective film.
  16. Balled and Burlapped (B&B) Plant Materials: Trees designated B&B shall not be used unless specifically approved by the Urban Forestry and Land Manager.
  17. Container Plants:
    - a. Plants grown in containers shall be of appropriate size for the container as specified in the most recent edition of the American Standard for Nursery Stock and be free of circling roots on the exterior and interior of the root ball.
    - b. Container plants shall have been grown in the container long enough to have established roots throughout the growing medium.

18. **Bareroot and Collected Plants:** after care is provided, the contractor shall:  
a. Plants designated as bareroot or collected plants shall conform to the American Standard for Nursery Stock.

b. Bareroot material shall not be dug or installed after bud break or before dormancy.

19. Immediately after harvesting plants, protect from drying and damage until shipped and delivered to the planting site. Rootballs shall be checked regularly and watered sufficiently to maintain root viability.

20. **Transportation and Storage of Plant Material:**  
a. Branches shall be tied with rope or twine only, and in such a manner that no damage will occur to the bark or branches.

b. During transportation of plant material, the contractor shall exercise care to prevent injury and drying out of the trees. Should the roots be dried out, large branches broken, balls of earth broken or loosened, or areas of bark torn, the Urban Forestry and Land Manager may reject the injured tree(s) and order them replaced at no additional cost to the owner. All loads of plants shall be covered at all times with tarpaulin or canvas. Loads that are not protected will be rejected.

c. All bareroot stock sent from the storage facility shall be adequately covered with wet soil, sawdust, woodchips, moss, peat, straw, hay, or other acceptable moisture-holding medium, and shall be covered with a tarpaulin or canvas. Loads that are not protected in the above manner may be rejected.

d. Plants must be protected at all times from sun or drying winds. Those that cannot be planted immediately on delivery shall be kept in the shade, well protected with soil, wet mulch, or other acceptable material, and kept well watered. Plants shall not remain unplanted any longer than three days after delivery. Plants shall not be bound with wire or rope at any time so as to damage the bark or break branches. Plants shall be lifted and handled with suitable support of the soil ball to avoid damaging it.

21. **Mechanized Tree Spade Requirements:** Trees may be moved and planted with an approved mechanical tree spade. The tree spade shall move trees limited to the maximum size allowed for a similar B&B root-ball diameter according to the American Standard for Nursery Stock or the manufacturer's maximum size recommendation for the tree spade being used, whichever is smaller. The machine shall be approved by the Urban Forestry and Land Manager prior to use. Trees shall be planted at the designated locations in the manner shown in the plans and in accordance with applicable sections of the specifications.

C. Materials for Planting:

1. Mulch: shall be finely shredded native hardwood. Material shall be mulching grade, uniform in size, and free of foreign matter. Submit sample for approval.
2. Anti-desiccant: shall be an emulsion specifically manufactured for agricultural use, which provides a protective film over plant surfaces. Anti-desiccants shall be delivered in containers of the manufacturer and shall be mixed according to the manufacturer's directions. Submit manufacturer literature for approval.
3. Tree Shelter: shall be extruded, twin-walled polypropylene tubes, 80 mm to 105 mm (3-1/4 to 4-1/4 in.) in diameter; 600 mm (2 ft) tall, with manufacturer-supplied oak stakes and bird screen. Submit manufacturer literature for approval.
4. Tree Wrap:
  - a. Option 1 Extruded, translucent, twin-walled polypropylene protection board sheets; 3 mm thick. 1800mm (6 ft) long tree shelters may be utilized for short trunk trees 75 mm (3 in.) caliper or less. Submit manufacturer literature for approval.
  - b. Option 2 Breathable synthetic fabric tree wrap. White in color, delivered in 75 mm (3 in.) wide rolls, specifically manufactured for tree wrapping. Tree wrap shall be "Breathable Fabric Tree Wrap" as manufactured by the Dewitt Company, Inc., Sikeston, MO, or approved equal. Submit manufacturer literature for approval.
  - c. Tree wrap shall be secured to the trunk using bio-degradable tape suitable for nursery use and which is expected to degrade in sunlight in less than two years after installation.
5. Biostimulants: Biostimulants shall contain soil conditioners, VAM, and endomycorrhizal and ectomycorrhizal fungi spores and soil bacteria appropriate for existing soil conditions. Submit manufacturer literature for approval.

D. Materials for Soil Amendment:

Planting Mix

Contents:

Hammermilled, screened and aerobically composted organics including compost (approx. 35%), decomposed pine bark (approx. 35%), screened fine sand (approx. 10%), Expanded Shale (approx.10%), and Texas Green Sand (approx 10%).

**17-07 EXECUTION:**

A. Excavation of Planted Areas:

1. Locations for plants and/or outlines of areas to be planted are to be staked out at the site. Locate and mark all subsurface utility lines. Approval of the stakeout by the Urban Forestry and Land Manager is required before excavation begins.

2. Tree, shrub, and groundcover beds are to be excavated to the depth and widths indicated on the drawings. If the planting area under any tree is initially dug too deep, the soil added to bring it up to the correct level should be thoroughly tamped.

a. The sides of the excavation of all planting areas shall be sloped at 45 degrees. The bottom of all beds shall slope parallel to the proposed grades or toward any subsurface drain lines within the planting bed. The bottom of the planting bed directly under any tree shall be horizontal such that the tree sits plumb.

b. Maintain all required angles of repose of the adjacent materials as shown on the drawings. Do not excavate compacted subgrades of adjacent pavement or structures.

c. Subgrade soils shall be separated from the topsoil, removed from the area, and not used as backfill in any planted or lawn area. Excavations shall not be left uncovered or unprotected overnight.

3. For trees and shrubs planted in individual holes in areas of good soil that is to remain in place and/or to receive amendment in the top 150-mm (6 in.) layer, excavate the hole to the depth of the root ball and to widths shown on the drawing. Slope the sides of the excavation at a 45 degree angle up and away from the bottom of the excavation.

a. In areas of slowly draining soils, the root ball may be set up to 75 mm (3 in.) or 1/8 of the depth of the root ball above the adjacent soil level.

b. Save the existing soil to be used as backfill around the tree.

c. On steep slopes, the depth of the excavation shall be measured at the center of the hole and the excavation dug as shown on the drawings.

4. Detrimental soil conditions: The Urban Forestry and Land Manager is to be notified, in writing, of soil conditions encountered, including poor drainage; that the contractor considers detrimental to the growth of plant material. When detrimental conditions are uncovered, planting shall be discontinued until instructions to resolve the conditions are received from the Urban Forestry and Land Manager.

5. Obstructions: If rock, underground construction work, utilities, tree roots, or other obstructions are encountered in the excavation of planting areas, alternate locations for any planting shall be determined by the Urban Forestry and Land Manager.

**B. Installation of Topsoil and Planting Mix:**

1. Prior to the installation or modification of topsoil and planting mix, install subsurface drains, irrigation main lines, lateral lines, and irrigation risers shown on the drawings.

2. The Urban Forestry and Land Manager shall review the preparation of subgrades prior to the installation or modification of topsoil or planting mix.

3. Do not proceed with the installation of topsoil and planting mix until all utility work in the area has been installed.
4. Protect adjacent walls, walks, and utilities from damage or staining by the soil. Use 12-mm (1/2 in.) plywood and/or plastic sheeting as directed to cover existing concrete, metal, masonry work, and other items as directed during the progress of the work.
  - a. Clean up any soil or dirt spilled on any paved surface at the end of each working day.
  - b. Any damage to the paving or architectural work caused by the soils installation contractor shall be repaired by the general contractor at the soils installation contractors' expense.
5. Till the subsoil into the bottom layer of topsoil or planting mix.
  - a. Loosen the soil of the subgrade to a depth of 50 to 75 mm (2 to 3 in.), unless more extensive depth is specified in plans, with a rototiller or other suitable device.
  - b. Spread a layer of the specified topsoil or planting mix 50 mm (2 in.) deep over the subgrade. Thoroughly till the planting mix and the subgrade together.
  - c. Immediately install the remaining topsoil or planting mix in accordance with the following specifications. Protect the tilled area from traffic. DO NOT allow the tilled subgrade to become compacted.
  - d. In the event that the tilled area becomes compacted, till the area again prior to installing the planting mix.
6. Subsoiling: When subsoiling is indicated on the drawings, use a chisel plow subsoil ripping tool mounted on a machine of sufficient power to make vertical trenches 500 mm (18 in.) deep into the subsoil 600 mm (24 in.) apart. Run the ripping tool over each area in opposite directions so that each area is ripped twice to thoroughly break up the compacted subgrade material prior to the installation of topsoil and planting mix.
7. Install the remaining topsoil or planting mix in 200- to 250-mm (8- to 10-in.) lifts to the depths and grades shown on the drawing. The depths and grades shown on the drawings are the final grades after soil settlement and shrinkage of the organic material. The contractor shall install the soil at a higher level to anticipate this reduction of soil volume, depending on predicted settling properties for each type of soil.
  - a. Phase the installation of the soil such that equipment does not have to travel over already-installed topsoil or planting mixes.
  - b. Compact each lift sufficiently to reduce settling but not enough to prevent the movement of water and feeder roots through the soil. The soil in each lift should

- feel firm to the foot in all areas and make only slight heel prints. Over compaction shall be determined by the following field percolation test.
  1. Dig a hole 250 mm (10 in.) in diameter and 250 mm (10 in.) deep.
  2. Fill the hole with water and let it drain completely. Immediately refill the hole with water, and measure the rate of fall in the water level.
  3. In the event that the water drains at a rate less than 25 mm (1 in.) per hour, till the soil to a depth required to break the over compaction.
  4. The Urban Forestry and Land Manager shall determine the need for, and the number and location of percolation tests based on observed field conditions of the soil.
- c. Maintain moisture conditions within the soils during installation to allow for satisfactory compaction. Suspend installation operations if the soil becomes wet. Do not place soils on wet or frozen subgrade.
- d. Provide adequate equipment to achieve consistent and uniform compaction of the soils. Use the smallest equipment that can reasonably perform the task of spreading and compaction.
- e. Add lime, sulfur, fertilizer, and other amendments during soil installation. Spread the amendments over the top layer of soil and till into the top 100 mm (4 in.) of soil. Soil amendments may be added at the same time that organic matter, when required, is added to the top layer of soil.
- f. Protect soil from over compaction after placement. An area that becomes over compacted shall be tilled to a depth of 125 mm (6 in.). Uneven or settled areas shall be filled and regraded.

C. Installation of Organic Matter Layer:

1. After the specified topsoil or planting mix is installed and just prior to fine grading and the installation of tree, shrub, or flower plantings, spread 100 mm (4 in.) of organic matter over all bed areas designated on the drawings and rototill into the top 100 mm (4 in.) of the planting mix or topsoil.
2. Allow the finished grades to remain 50 to 75 mm (2-3 in.) higher than the grades on the grading plan to anticipate settlement over the first year. At the end of the planting guarantee period, reset the grades in this area, if required, to the final grades shown on the grading plan.

D. Fine Grading:

1. Grade the surface of all planted or lawn areas to meet the grades shown on the drawings after the 12-month settling period. Set grades at time of installation high enough relative to the type of soil mix and settlement anticipated so that the soil will be at the correct grades after the settlement period. Adjust the finish grades to meet field conditions as directed.
  - a. Provide for positive drainage from all areas toward the existing inlets and drainage structures.

- b. Provide smooth transitions between slopes of different gradients and direction. Modify the grade so that the finish grade is flush with all paving surfaces or as directed by the drawings.
  2. Fill all dips and remove any bumps in the overall plane of the slope.
    - a. The tolerance for dips and bumps in lawn areas shall be a 12-mm (1/2 in.) deviation from the plane in 3,000 mm (10 ft).
    - b. The tolerance for dips and bumps in shrub planting areas shall be a 25-mm (1 in.) deviation from the plane in 3,000 mm (10 ft).
    - c. All fine grading shall be inspected and approved by the Urban Forestry and Land Manager prior to planting, mulching, sodding, or seeding.
- E. Planting Operations: see <http://bit.ly/UrbanTreePlanting> for detailed drawings (Rev. 6/2018)
1. Plants shall be set on flat-tamped or unexcavated pads at the same relationship to finished grade as they were to the ground from which they were dug, unless otherwise noted on the drawings. Plants must be set plumb and braced in position until topsoil or planting mix has been placed and tamped around the base of the root ball. Improper compacting of the soil around the root ball may result in the tree settling or leaning. Plants shall be set so that they will be at the same depth and so that the root ball does not shift or move laterally one year later.
    - a. Determine the elevation of the root flare and ensure that it is planted at grade. This may require that the tree be set higher than the grade in the nursery.
    - b. If the root flare is less than 50 mm (2 in.) below the soil level of the root ball, plant at the tree the appropriate level above the grade to set the flare even with the grade. If the flare is more than 50 mm (2 in.) above the soil level at the center of the root ball/trunk the tree shall be rejected.
  2. Lift plants only from the bottom of the root balls or with belts or lifting harnesses of sufficient width not to damage the root balls. Do not lift trees by their trunk or use the trunk as a lever in positioning or moving the tree in the planting area.
  3. Remove plastic, paper, or fiber pots from containerized plant material. Pull roots out of the root mat and cut circling roots with a sharp knife. Loosen the potting medium and shake away from the root mat. Immediately after removing the container, install the plant such that the roots do not dry out. Pack planting mix around the exposed roots while planting.
  4. The roots of bare-root trees shall be pruned at the time of planting to remove damaged or undesirable roots (those likely to become a detriment to future growth of the root system). Bare-root trees shall have the roots spread to approximate the natural position of the roots and shall be centered in the planting pit. The planting-soil

- backfill shall be worked firmly into and around the roots, with care taken to fill in completely with no air pockets.
5. Cut ropes or strings from the top of shrub root balls and trees smaller than 3 in. caliper after plant has been set. Remove burlap or cloth wrapping and any wire baskets from around top half of balls. Do not turn under and bury portions of burlap at top of ball.
    - a. Do not immediately remove the ropes and burlap from trees larger than 3 in. caliper. Return to each tree three months after planting (six months for fall-planted material), and cut all ropes around the trunks and tops of the root balls of these trees.
    - b. Completely remove any waterproof or water-repellant strings or wrappings from the root ball and trunk before backfilling.
  6. Set balled and burlapped trees in the hole with the north marker facing north unless otherwise approved by the Urban Forestry and Land Manager.
  7. Place native soil, topsoil, or planting mix into the area around the tree, tamping lightly to reduce settlement.
    - a. For plants planted in individual holes in existing soil, add any required soil amendments to the soils, as the material is being backfilled around the plant. Ensure that the amendments are thoroughly mixed into the backfill.
    - b. For plants planted in large beds of prepared soil, add soil amendments during the soil installation process.
    - c. When required by the Urban Forestry and Land Manager, add biostimulants at the time of planting in the area directly around the plant root ball.
    - d. Ensure that the backfill immediately around the base of the root ball is tamped with foot pressure sufficient to prevent the root ball from shifting or leaning.
  8. Thoroughly water all plants immediately after planting. Apply water by hose directly to the root ball and the adjacent soil.
  9. Remove all tags, labels, strings, etc. from all plants.
  10. Remove any excess soil, debris, and planting material from the job site at the end of each workday.
  11. Form watering saucers 100 mm (4 in.) high immediately outside the area of the root ball of each tree as indicated on the drawings.

**F. Staking and Guying:**

1. Staking and guying methods shall be approved by the Urban Forestry & Land Manager. All below-ground staking material shall be capable of decomposing through biological



activity in the soil. Belowground staking methods that consist primarily of metals or other non-biodegradable material are not permitted. Below-ground staking methods shall not encircle the tree and shall not restrict the future growth of stem. (Rev 6/2018)

2. Below-ground Staking: see <https://goo.gl/S0zxft> for detailed drawings (Rev. 6/2018)
  - a. Materials
    - i. Root ball stakes
      1. Stake length will be no less than 40 inches.
      2. Stake diameter will be no less than 0.75 inches.
      3. Minimum 3 stakes per tree.
      4. For trees larger than 3 caliper inches, an additional stake will be required for each caliper inch.
    - ii. Lock
      1. Trees will be secured by placing a lock on each stake which prevents the lifting of the tree from the stakes.
      2. The lock must be less than 1 inch in height.
  - b. Planting
    - i. The planting well shall be excavated no deeper than the height of the root ball to minimize disturbance of underlying soil.
    - ii. Install root ball into planting pit per drawings / details.
    - iii. Backfill with placement of specified topsoil mixture and compact to firmly hold root ball against surrounding soil.
  - c. Adjustment
    - i. Verify placement, direction and verticality.
    - ii. Adjust as necessary.
    - iii. Re-compact surrounding soil.
  - d. Prepare Root Ball
    - i. Remove loose and extra soil, mulch, etc. from top of root ball to a point where density is consistent or coarse roots (greater than 0.25 inches diameter) are encountered.
    - ii. Ensure root ball is free of burlap, wire, plastic, nylon, or any other foreign material.
  - e. Stake Installation
    - i. Install the specified quantity of stakes based on caliper inches of the tree.
    - ii. Stakes shall be placed equally proportionate around the trunk and no more than 120 degrees apart.
    - iii. Stakes shall be placed approximately 6 inches from the trunk or root flare laterally and not less than 6 inches from the outer edge of the root ball.
    - iv. Stakes shall be driven a minimum of 6 inches into undisturbed soil while also leaving 1-2 inches above the root ball for installation of the lock.
  - f. Lock installation
    - i. Each stake must have a lock to secure the root ball.
    - ii. The lock should be oriented perpendicular to the trunk and should be no less than 4 inches from the trunk or root flare.
    - iii. Locks should be secured evenly with the top of the root ball to minimize gaps.

- iv. Locks shall not bind irrigation lines or prevent proper operation of emitters.
- 3. **Above-ground Staking:** see <https://bit.ly/2I9UOaR> for detailed drawings. (Rev. 6/2018)
  - a. Where guys are attached around the tree, the trunk shall be protected with 20-mm (3/4 in.) diameter rubber hose, black in color, and of sufficient length to extend past the trunk by more than 105 mm (6 in.). The guy must be placed around the stem with sufficient space for trunk growth during tree establishment.
- 4. Stakes and guys shall be installed immediately upon approval or planting, and shall be removed at the end of the first growing season except in the case of biodegradable below-ground staking methods. Any tree that is not stable at the end of this time shall be rejected. (Rev. 6/2018)

**G. Wrapping:**

- 1. Wrap the trunk of any tree only when necessary for the specific conditions encountered and with the approval of the Urban Forestry and Land Manager. Wrapping may be required for thin-barked species in unusual circumstances such as trees planted adjacent to South- or West-facing reflective surfaces, or when it is impossible to plant the tree with the trunk oriented to the same north orientation that it held in the growing nursery.
- 2. When required, wrapping methods shall be approved by the Urban Forestry and Land Manager. If no wrapping requirements appear on the drawings, submit for approval a drawing of the wrapping method to be used. Wrapping material shall be as specified in this specification. Wrapping material shall be fastened using a biodegradable tape. All tape shall be loosely wrapped around the wrapping material in single layer to permit its breakdown in sunlight and permit a minimum of 25 mm (1 in.) of unrestricted trunk growth. Stapling or tying the wrap with non- or slowly biodegradable tape or any synthetic or natural fiber string shall be prohibited.
- 3. Wrapping material shall be applied from the base of the tree to the first branch.
- 4. All wrapping material shall be removed no later than at the end of the year after planting or as specified by the Urban Forestry and Land Manager.

**H. Pruning:**

- 1. Plants shall not be heavily pruned at the time of planting. Pruning is required at planting time to correct defects in the tree structure, including removal of injured branches, double leaders, waterspouts, suckers, and interfering branches. Healthy lower branches and interior small twigs should not be removed except as necessary to clear walks and roads. In no case should more than one-quarter of the branching structure be removed. Retain the normal or natural shape of the plant.
- 2. All pruning shall be completed using clean, sharp tools. All cuts shall be clean and smooth, with the bark intact with no rough edges or tears.

3. Except in circumstances dictated by the needs of specific pruning practices, tree paint shall not be used. The use of tree paint shall be only upon approval of the Urban Forestry and Land Manager. Tree paint, when required, shall be paint specifically formulated and manufacturing for horticultural use.
4. Pruning of large trees shall be done from a hydraulic man-lift such that it is not necessary to climb the tree.

I. Mulching:

1. All trees, shrubs, and other plantings will be mulched with mulch previously approved by the Urban Forestry and Land Manager. The mulch on trees and shrubs shall be to the depths shown on the drawing. Mulch must not be placed within 8 cm (3 in.) of the trunks of trees or shrubs.
2. Mulch will be 3" thick and in a 7' diameter circle around the base of the tree.

J. Turfgrass Planting:

1. This work includes labor, material, and equipment for soil preparation, fertilization, planting, and other requirements regarding turfgrass planting areas shown on the plan.
2. Delivery Receipts and Invoices: All delivery receipts and copies of invoices for materials used for this work shall be subject to checking by the Urban Forestry & Land Manager and shall be subsequently delivered to the office of the Urban Forestry & Land Manager.
3. Samples and Producers' Specifications: Various samples, certificates, and specifications of seed, fertilizer, sand, compost, other soil amendments and other materials shall be submitted for approval as required by subsequent sections of this specification.
4. Buffalograss Sod or Bermuda Grass Sod: Turfgrass sod shall be "Buchloe dactyloides" (Buffalograss) 'Prairie Grass' variety or "Cynodon dactylon" Common Bermuda Grass. Sod shall consist of stolons, leaf blades, rhizomes, and roots with a healthy, virile system of dense, thickly matted roots throughout the soil of the sod for a thickness not less than three-quarters inch (3/4"). Sod shall be alive, healthy, vigorous, free of insects, disease, stones, and undesirable foreign materials and grasses. The grass shall have been mowed prior to sod cutting so that the height of the grass shall not exceed two inches (2"). Sod shall have been produced on growing beds of clay or clay-loam topsoil. Sod shall not be harvested or planted when its moisture condition is so excessively wet or dry that its survival will be affected. All sod is to be harvested, delivered, and planted within a thirty-six (36) hour period of time. Sod shall be protected from exposure to wind, sun and freezing. If sod is stacked, it shall be kept moist and shall be stacked roots-to-roots and grass-to-grass. If the work is completed in portion of an area where existing grass will remain around the work area; match the new sod to the existing sod species. (Rev. 6/2016)

5. **Dimensions:** All sod shall be machine cut to uniform soil thickness of one inch (1") plus or minus one-quarter inch (1/4"). All sod shall be of the same thickness. Rectangular sections of sod may vary in length, but all shall be of equal width and of a size that permits the sod to be lifted, handled, and rolled without breaking. Broken pads and torn, uneven ends will be unacceptable.

6. **Solid Sodding:** Prior to laying the sod, the planting beds shall be raked smooth to true grade and moistened to a depth of four inches (4"), but not to the extent causing puddling. The sod shall be laid smoothly, tightly butted edge to edge, and with staggered joints. The sod shall be pressed firmly into contact with the sod bed by rolling or by hand tamping with an approved tamper so as to eliminate all air pockets, provide a true and even surface, and insure knitting without displacement of the sod or deformation of the surfaces of sodded areas. Following compaction, fine screened soil of good quality shall be used to fill all cracks between sods. Excess soil shall be worked into the grass with suitable equipment and shall be well watered. The quantity of fill soil shall be such that it will cause no smothering of the grass.

7. If sod is placed after September 15, final acceptance on the grass will not occur until after April 15. The grass shall not be over seeded with rye. The Contractor shall water the grass until the grass is accepted.

**K. Maintenance of Trees, Shrubs, and Vines:**

1. Maintenance shall begin immediately after each plant is planted and continue until its acceptance has been confirmed by the Urban Forestry and Land Manager.

2. Maintenance shall consist of pruning, watering, cultivating, weeding, mulching, tightening and repairing guys and stakes, resetting plants to proper grades or upright position, restoring of the planting saucer, and furnishing and applying such sprays or other materials as necessary to keep plantings free of insects and diseases and in vigorous condition.

3. Planting areas and plants shall be protected at all times against trespassing and damage of all kinds for the duration of the maintenance period. If a plant becomes damaged or injured, it shall be treated or replaced as directed by the Urban Forestry and Land Manager at no additional cost.

4. **Watering:** Contractor shall irrigate as required to maintain vigorous and healthy tree growth. Overwatering or flooding shall not be allowed. The contractor shall monitor, adjust, and use existing irrigation facilities, if available, and furnish any additional material, equipment, or water to ensure adequate irrigation. Root balls of all trees and large shrubs shall be spot watered using handheld hoses during the first four months after planting, as required to ensure adequate water within the root ball.

5. During periods of restricted water usage, all governmental regulations (permanent and temporary) shall be followed. The contractor may have to transport water from

ponds or other sources, at no additional expense to the owner when irrigation systems are unavailable.

6. Vegetation planted in floodplains, streams, streambanks, ditches, or runoff flow paths shall be secured to ensure that they are protected from high velocities and flood inundation until they are fully established and accepted by the City. Vegetation lost to rain events prior to establishment shall be replaced at no cost to the City.”

(Rev. 6/2020)

L. Acceptance:

1. The Urban Forestry and Land Manager shall inspect all work for acceptance upon written request of the contractor. The request shall be received at least ten calendar days before the anticipated date of inspection.
2. Acceptance of plant material shall be for general conformance to specified size, character, and quality and shall not relieve the contractor of responsibility for full conformance to the contract documents, including correct species.
3. Upon completion and re-inspection of all repairs or renewals necessary in the judgment of the Urban Forestry and Land Manager, the Urban Forestry and Land Manager shall certify in writing that the work has been accepted.

- M. Acceptance in Part: Work may be accepted in parts when the Urban Forestry and Land Manager and contractor deem that practice to be in their mutual interest. Approval must be given in writing by the Urban Forestry and Land Manager to the contractor verifying that the work is to be completed in parts. Acceptance of work in parts shall not waive any other provision of this contract.

**17-08 GUARANTEE PERIOD AND REPLACEMENTS:**

- A. The guarantee period for trees and shrubs shall begin at the date of acceptance.
- B. The contractor shall guarantee all plant material to be in healthy and flourishing condition for a period of two year from the date of acceptance.
- C. When work is accepted in parts, the guarantee periods extend from each of the partial acceptances to the terminal date of the guarantee of the last acceptance. Thus, all guarantee periods terminate at one time.
- D. The contractor shall replace, without cost, as soon as weather conditions permit, and within a specified planting period, all plants determined by the Urban Forestry and Land Manager to be dead or in an unacceptable condition during and at the end of the guarantee period. To be considered acceptable, plants shall be free of dead or dying branches and branch tips and shall bear foliage of normal density, size, and color. Replacements shall closely match adjacent specimens of the same species. Replacements shall be subject to all requirements stated in this specification.
- E. The guarantee of all replacement plants shall extend for an additional period of one year

from the date of their acceptance after replacement. In the event that a replacement plant is not acceptable during or at the end of said extended guarantee period, the Urban Forestry and Land Manager may elect subsequent replacement or credit for that item.

F. At the end of the guarantee, the contractor shall reset grades that have settled below the proposed grades on the drawings.

G. The contractor shall make periodic inspections, at no extra cost, during the guarantee period to determine what changes, if any, should be made in the maintenance program. If changes are recommended, they shall be submitted in writing to the Urban Forestry and Land Manager. Claims by the contractor that the owner's maintenance practices or lack of maintenance resulted in dead or dying plants will not be considered if such claims have not been documented by the contractor during the guarantee period.

**17-09 FINAL INSPECTION AND FINAL ACCEPTANCE:** At the end of the guarantee period and upon written request of the contractor, the Urban Forestry and Land Manager will inspect all guaranteed work for final acceptance. The request shall be received at least ten calendar days before the anticipated date for final inspection. Upon completion and re-inspection of all repairs or renewals necessary in the judgment of the Urban Forestry & Land Manager at that time, the Urban Forestry & Land Manager shall certify, in writing, that the project has received final acceptance.

**17-10 TURF MAINTENANCE SPECIFICATIONS:**

A. **Description:** Upon beginning a public works construction project, the General Contractor shall initiate and sustain turf maintenance requirements in inaccessible areas until receiving official acceptance at the final inspection. These minimum requirements are stated to insure that the City of Arlington receives a quality end product and an aesthetically acceptable construction area

B. **Maintenance Schedules:** For the duration of the construction project, the General Contractor will be required to provide lawn maintenance services to the surrounding area. These areas of maintenance are not limited to the project footprint, but also include adjacent medians, rights-of-way and other properties that are difficult to access during construction. Turf areas are to be mowed, trimmed, edged and blown bi-weekly. Regular and consistent maintenance should be provided as described below.

C. **Turf Watering:**

1. Upon completion of turf installations, the General Contractor should utilize watering trucks to provide a minimum of one inch of precipitation weekly. Environmental changes will dictate how often truck watering is required, but a minimum standard of one inch per week must be maintained. Within the construction area, if previously existing grass, trees, plant material, flower beds etc. are present, the General Contractor is responsible for watering if these areas were currently being watered. These watering expectations will be consistent with newly installed turf areas (1" per week) to ensure proper establishment and healthy turf.

2. Performance measure: **Maintain a consistent and acceptable precipitation rate to sustain healthy turf and plant material.**

D. Mowing and Trimming:

1. Turf areas are to be mowed, trimmed, edged and blown to keep the area in code compliance. Maintenance should be regular and consistent on a fourteen day schedule.
2. Mowing times shall be between the hours of 7:30am and 8:00pm central standard time for each calendar week day.
3. Contractor shall remove all trash and litter from the entire Project Area prior to initiating any mowing of the turf areas.
4. Turf shall be cut at a height of two inches (2") in a professional manner as not to scalp turf or leave areas of uncut grass. Equipment must be operated at a speed to provide the optimal desired "manicured" cut designated by the Urban Forestry & Land Manager.
5. Use of chemicals for trimming and edging is not acceptable.
6. Performance measure: **Mowed area shall be FREE of clumped grass, trash, grass over-hanging the curb, grass in the gutter and along the curb, and tire tracks or ruts from the mowing equipment repaired.**

E. Removal of Grass Clippings:

1. Removal of cut grass from the turf area where growth occurred will not be required unless grass is clumped. Cut grass and debris which falls or is thrown upon the pavement, streets, sidewalks, driveways, adjacent properties, or other hard surface through the action of the work crew shall be removed from the Project Area prior to the exit of the work crew from the work site.
2. The City of Arlington has the authority to issue citations and impose fines beginning at \$250 per offense, per Article 2 of the "Industrial Waste and Water Pollution Control" Chapter of the Code of the City of Arlington, as amended.
3. Performance measure: **No visibly cut vegetation on pavement, streets, sidewalks, driveways, adjacent properties, or any other hard surfaces shall be present when the work crew exits the work site.**

F. Trimming:

1. Contractor shall cut and remove of all plant material immediately adjacent to or under Project Area structures, poles, trees (not within 2" of tree trunks), signs, fences, planting beds, etc. This shall also include the removal of all plant material from expansion joints and any other cracks in curbs, sidewalks (both sides), driveways and any other hard surface.

2. Special care shall be given to trimming around small trees as not to inflict damage to the bark of the trees.

3. All trimming shall be accomplished maintaining the required 2" cutting height.

4. All trimming must be accomplished concurrently with mowing operations.

5. Use of chemicals for trimming and edging is not acceptable.

6. Performance measure: **No vegetation taller than existing turf around structures and obstacles.**

**G. Edging:**

1. All sidewalks, curbs, and steps must be mechanically edged to a one-inch (1") depth and one-quarter-inch (1/4") width where they exist exposing the concrete surface. This must be completed before final acceptance will be given by the Urban Forestry & Land Manager.

2. Performance measure: **Visible separation of turf from concrete and no vegetation overhanging onto sidewalks, curbs, steps, drives or other concrete surfaces.**

**H. Litter/Debris Removal:**

1. Litter pick up is required prior to each mowing.

2. Contractor shall on each visit to a site clean and sweep all paved areas, remove all clippings, bottles, cans, paper, fallen limbs, rocks, and other debris from all site grounds which is not intended to be present as part of the landscape.

3. All trash and litter, including debris in the parking lots, shall be removed by the Contractor and disposed of through their waste disposal provider at an off-site location. Contractor is not allowed to utilize City dumpsters to dispose of collected litter and trash bags, and is therefore solely responsible for pick up and disposal of said litter.

4. Miscellaneous items: Should unique items be found in Project Areas, such as abandoned barrels, roofing materials, appliances, etc., it will be necessary for Contractor to notify city's representative. It will be the responsibility of the Contractor to notify the City of any potential hazardous materials found on site, as well as report any branding on container if possible.

5. Performance measure: **Zero visible litter and debris on finished maintenance areas.**

**I. Weed and Pest Control and Chemical Application:** In the event of excessive weed growth or pest infestation, the City of Arlington (at its discretion), may require a professional



chemical application. The applicator must be accredited with appropriate licensing and all chemical applications must be approved by the Urban Forestry & Land Manager.

**17-11 IRRIGATION EQUIPMENT AND MATERIALS:**

**A. General:**

1. All materials shall be new and without flaws or defects of any type and shall be the best of their class and kind. All materials shall have a minimum guarantee of two year against material defects or defective workmanship.
2. All materials shall be of the brands and types noted on the drawings or as specified herein, or approved by the Urban Forestry & Land Manager as equal. (Rev. 3/09)
3. The irrigation system was designed around equipment manufactured by specific companies as a standard. Approved as equal equipment by other manufacturers may be used only with the approval of the Urban Forestry & Land Manager five days prior to the opening of bids.
4. Submittal of approved equal shall be per the following: If the approved equal deals with any portion of the irrigation system that can affect or alter the hydraulics of said system, the submittal for approved equal shall list the equipment along with the manufacturer's technical design data along with a 24" X 36" plan showing the substitution as well as complete hydraulic calculations. All design work must be prepared by a current State of Texas Licensed Irrigator. Drawings/plans must be signed and sealed and in accordance with current City Ordinances. (Rev. 3/09)

**B. Cements, Cleaners/Primers, and Joint Compounds:**

1. Cement shall be No. 2200 series Uni-Weld or Rectorseal Gold low temperature plastic pipe cement for use on all sizes and schedules of PVC pipe and fittings. Cement must be NSF approved and meet ASTM D 2564 specifications.
2. Cleaner/primer shall be No. 8700 United Elchem hi-etch cleaner/primer. Cleaner/primer must be any color other than clear.
3. All threaded connections between PVC and metal pipe shall be made using Rectorseal No. 100 virgin heavy duty sealing paste or plasto-joint stick as manufactured by Lake Chemical Company or Teflon tape.
4. All metal to metal connections shall be made using Rectorseal No. 5, slow dry, and soft set pipe thread compound. All PVC-to-PVC threaded connections shall use Teflon tape.
5. "O"-ring gasket and pipe spigot ends shall be lubricated using the lubricant recommended or supplied by the pipe manufacturer. If the pipe manufacturer does not provide a lubricant for the pipe, use IPS Weld-On No. 787 gasket lube as manufactured by Industrial Polychemical Service.

- C. Polyvinyl Chloride Pipe (PVC Pipe):
1. Applicable Standards:
    - a. ASTM - D2241 - Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Pipe (SDR-PR)
    - b. ASTM - D2464 - Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Pipe Fittings, Threaded, Schedule 40
    - c. ASTM - D2466 - Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Pipe Fittings, Socket Type, Schedule 40
    - d. ASTM - D2564 - Solvent Cements for Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Pipe and Fittings
    - e. ASTM - D2855 - Making Solvent - Cemented Joints with Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Pipe and Fittings
  2. Marking and identification of PVC pipe shall be continuously and permanently marked with following information:
    - a. Manufacturers' name, size, type of pipe and materials, SDR number, Product Standard number and the NSF (National Sanitation Foundation) Seal.
  3. PVC pipe fittings shall be of the same material as the PVC pipe specified and compatible with PVC pipe furnished. Solvent weld type shall be Schedule 40.
  4. PVC pipe shall be Schedule 40 solvent weld, SDR-PR, PS22-70 for all sizes 1/2" - 2".
- D. 4" Pop-Up Bubbler Heads: Bubbler heads shall have a minimum four-inch (4") pop-up. The sprinkler body on all related parts shall be plaster, cyclocac or polycarbonate. They shall have a spring retraction for positive return action of the pop-up nozzle. The spring for retraction and the fixed flow nozzle shall be made of corrosion resistant materials. Four inch (4") pop-up bubbler heads shall be Rain Bird 1404, 2 - 50 (.5 gal) each side of tree or 1 - 10 (1 gal) on up side of tree. (Rev 6/2016)
- E. Drip Irrigation Tubing: Drip tubing shall be used for all landscape beds and the tubing shall be Netafim .9 tubing with 12" spacing. No other tubing or spacing shall be used without the written approval of the Urban Forestry and Land Manager.
- F. Wire And Splices: All wire shall be single strand solid copper, minimum 14 gauge with type UF insulation which is Underwriters Laboratory approved for direct underground burial when used in a National Electrical Code Class II Circuit (30 volts AC or less) as per Articles 725 and 300. Voltage drop shall be taken into consideration. All wire shall be color coded so that the common wire shall have white insulation and the signal wires shall have red insulation. All wire connectors shall have a pre-filled insulator tube with a Scotchlok Y or R connector, which, when pressed together, forms a permanent, one-piece, moisture-proof wire splice. All connectors shall be U.L. listed and rated 600 volts

maximum as a wire connector system for use with underground conductors. All direct bury wire splice kits shall be DBY-6 or DBR-6 as manufactured by the Electrical Products Division of 3M Corporation.

- G. Swing Joints: Swing joints for quick coupling valves shall be Lasco Model G17B-212 with one-half inch (½") brass insert stabilizer elbow or approved equal.
- H. Ball Valves: Ball valves two inch (2") and smaller shall be made of PVC, shall have a non-shock rating of 200 psi, shall have ball seals made of teflon, shall have Viton O-rings and threaded end connectors. Ball valves shall be Spears "Safe-T-Shear" compact or approved equal.
- I. Flexible PVC Risers (Nipples): All flexible PVC nipples shall be made from virgin PVC material, shall comply with ASTM D2287, and shall be tested at 200 P.S.I. Flexible PVC pipe nipples shall be "Excalibur" or approved equal.
- J. Valve Boxes:
1. A box shall be provided for all backflow preventers, electric valves, quick coupling valves, and wire splices. Valve boxes for quick coupling valves and wire splices shall be made of high strength plastic, shall have covers with bolt down or locking mechanisms and shall be colored green or black. Valve boxes for electric remote control valves and backflow preventers or any box located within 10' of any traffic flow shall be made of concrete with a concrete cover and cast iron hinged lid. Boxes shall be suitable in size and configuration for the operability and adjustment of the valve. Extension sections will be used as appropriate to the depth of piping. All boxes shall be set with bricks or extensions under the base of the box. (Rev. 3/09)
  2. Electric Valves: Boxes for remote control electric valves two inch (2") and smaller shall be 65 Series or approved equal as manufactured by Brooks Products, Inc.
  3. Quick Coupling Valves: Boxes for quick coupling valves shall be Model 910 or approved equal as manufactured by Carson-Brooks Plastics, Inc. (800) 255-6340.
  4. Backflow Preventers: Boxes for backflow preventers two inches (2") or smaller shall be 65 Series or approved equal as manufacture by Brooks Products, Inc. (817) 465-0080.
  5. Wire Splices: Boxes for wire splices shall be Model 910 or approved equal as manufactured by Carson-Brooks Plastics, Inc.
- K. Quick Coupling Valves: Quick coupling valves shall be heavy-duty brass construction with a locking purple thermoplastic rubber cover and shall be marked with special "Do Not Drink!" warnings in English and Spanish for use on non-potable systems. Quick coupling valves shall be Rain Bird Model 44 NP or approved equal. They need to be housed in a plastic coupler valve box with a purple lid. Provide two (2) 44k keys and two (2) SH-2

swivel hose ends. Each quick coupler must have a ball valve in front of it to allow quick shut off for leak emergencies.

L. **Backflow Preventer:** The backflow preventer shall be a double gate valve, double check assembly, shall have all bronze construction, shall be located and sized as shown on the plans, shall be installed in a box and shall conform to City of Arlington's plumbing codes. The backflow preventer shall be Fabio Model 805Y or approved equal.

M. **Irrigation Controller; Remote Control Compatible:**

1. **Electrical Controller:** In parks or municipal property where 120 volt, 60 cycle AC is available the controller shall be a Rain Bird ESP – LXME Controller. (Rev. 3/09)
2. **Solar Battery Powered Controllers:** Use the Hunter XCH battery powered controller with the Hunter solar panel for SC hybrid battery operated controller model SPXCH, on all tree areas. (Rev. 6/2016)
3. All landscape beds use Motorola/Irrinet controls. (Rev. 6/2016)

N. **Electric Remote Control Valves:**

1. Electric Remote Control Valves shall have plastic bodies and covers and shall be globe-type diaphragm valves. Operation shall be accomplished by means of an integrally mounted heavy-duty 24 VAC or 24 VDC solenoid complying with National Electrical Code, Class II Circuit. A flow stem adjustment shall be included for each valve.
2. 24 VAC: MCplus-B electric remote control valves used with the Irri-Trol MCplus-B controller shall be Rain Bird PGA Series with 24 VAC solenoid as manufactured by the Rain Bird Company.
3. 24 VDC: Valves used with the Hunter XCH battery powered controller are the Rain Bird Valve model DVF. These valves should be coupled with the Rain Bird TBOS potted latching Solenoid model K80920.
4. Drip Irrigation Valves and Pressure Reducers: Drip irrigation valves with pressure reducers and filters shall be Rain Bird XCZ 100 PRS.

**17-12 IRRIGATION SYSTEM SPECIFICATIONS:**

A. **Design Pressure:** Irrigation systems shall be designed to operate with a minimum static inlet water pressure at the point of connection to the city water supply as shown on the drawings. The Contractor shall take a pressure reading prior to beginning construction. If the pressure reading is less than shown on the drawings, the Contractor shall notify the Urban Forestry & Land Manager for instructions as to further action.

B. **Contractor Responsibility:** The contractor shall not willfully install the irrigation system as shown on the drawings when it is obvious in the field that obstructions, grade differences or discrepancies in equipment usage, area dimensions or static water pressure exist that

might not have been considered in the design. Such obstructions or differences shall be brought to the attention of the Urban Forestry & Land Manager. In the event this notification is not performed, the contractor shall assume full responsibility for any revision necessary at no additional cost to the Owner.

- C. Staking: Before installation begins, the Contractor shall place a stake or flag where each bubbler shall be located in accordance with drawing. Staking shall be approved by the Urban Forestry & Land Manager before proceeding.
  
- D. Piping Layout: Piping layout is diagrammatic. The Contractor shall route piping around existing trees, shrubs and any existing utilities or other underground improvements in such manner as to avoid damage to plantings. The Contractor shall not dig within the ball of newly planted trees or shrubs or in the drip line of mature trees without written approval from the Urban Forestry & Land Manager. In areas where trees are present, trenches will be adjusted on site to provide a minimum clearance of ten times the trunk diameter of the tree (at its base) between any tree and any trench. If spacing is limited boring under 24" under the root zone is preferred. (Rev. 3/09)
  
- E. Submittals: The contractor shall submit to the Urban Forestry & Land Manager two (2) copies of shop drawings or manufacturer's "cut sheet" for each type of sprinkler head, pipe, controller, valves, check valve assemblies, valve boxes, wire, conduit, fittings and all other types of fixtures and equipment which will be installed on the job. The submittal shall include the manufacturer's name, model number, equipment capacity and manufacturer's installation recommendation, if applicable, for each proposed item. No partial submittal will be accepted and submittals shall be neatly bound into a brochure and logically organized. After the submittal has been approved, substitutions will not be allowed except by written consent of the Urban Forestry & Land Manager. Shop drawings shall include dimensions, elevation, construction detail, arrangements and capacity of equipment, as well as manufacturer's installation recommendations.
  
- F. Codes/Permits:
  - 1. All work under this contract shall comply with the provisions of these specifications, as illustrated on the accompanying drawings, or as directed by the Urban Forestry & Land Manager and shall satisfy all applicable City of Arlington codes, ordinances, or regulations of the governing bodies and all authorities having jurisdiction over this project. Installation of equipment and material shall be done in accordance with the requirements of the National Electric Code, City of Arlington Plumbing codes and standard plumbing procedures. The drawings and these specifications are intended to comply with all the necessary rules and regulations; however, some discrepancies may occur. Where such discrepancies occur, the Contractor shall immediately notify the Urban Forestry & Land Manager in writing of the discrepancies and apply for an interpretation. Should the discovery and notification occur after the execution of a contract, any additional work required for compliance with the regulations shall be paid for as covered by these contract documents.

2. The Contractor shall give all necessary notices, obtain all permits and pay all costs (including all costs for water meters and impact fees) and fees in connection with his or her work; file with all governmental departments having jurisdiction; obtain all required certificates of inspection for work and deliver to the Urban Forestry & Land Manager before request of final acceptance for the work. The Contractor shall include in the work any labor, materials, services, apparatus or drawings in order to comply with all applicable laws, ordinances, rules and regulations whether or not shown on the drawings and/or specified.
3. The installation of the irrigation system shall be made by an individual or firm duly licensed under Article No. 8751 VTCS, titled "Licensed Irrigators Act," S.B. No. 259, as passed by the 66th Texas Legislature.

G. Existing Utilities:

1. Locations and elevations of various utilities included with the scope of this work have been obtained from the most reliable sources available and should serve as a general guide without guarantee to accuracy. The Contractor shall examine the site and verify to their satisfaction the location and elevation of all utilities, availability of utilities and services required, and their relation to the work and the submission of bids shall be deemed as evidence thereof. The Contractor shall repair at their expense, and to the satisfaction of the Urban Forestry & Land Manager, any damage to any utility including existing irrigation systems shown or not shown on the plans. Should utilities not shown on the plans be found during excavations, Contractor shall promptly notify the Urban Forestry & Land Manager for instructions as to further action.
2. Contractor shall make necessary adjustments in the layout to connect to existing stubouts, should such stubouts not be located exactly as shown on the plans. Contractor shall also make necessary adjustments required to work around existing work, at no increase in cost to the Owner. All such work will be recorded on record drawings and turned over to the Urban Forestry & Land Manager prior to initial acceptance.

H. Record Drawings:

1. Record dimensioned locations and depths for each of the following:
  - a. Point of connection to City water supply.
  - b. Irrigation pressure line routing. (Provide dimensions for each 100 lineal feet [maximum] along each routing, and for each change in directions.)
  - c. Quick coupling valves.
  - d. Electric remote control valves.
  - e. Control wire routing.

- f. Pressure relief valves.
- g. Other related items as may be directed by the Urban Forestry & Land Manager.
2. Locate all dimensions from two permanent points (buildings, monuments, sidewalks, curbs or pavements).
3. Record all changes that are made from the Contract Drawings, including changes in the pressure and non-pressure lines.
4. Record all required information on a set of blackline prints of the Drawings. Do not use these prints for any other purpose.
5. Maintain information daily. Keep drawings at the site at all times and available for review by the Owner.
6. Transfer all information to a set of reproducible mylars using permanent India ink when record drawings have been approved by the Owner. Changes using ballpoint pen are not acceptable. Make dimensions accurately at the same scale used on the original drawings, or larger. If photo reduction is required to facilitate controller chart housing, notes or dimensions must be a minimum one-fourth inch ( $\frac{1}{4}$ " ) in size.
7. Reproducible mylars will be furnished by the Owner.

I. Controller Charts:

1. Do not prepare charts until the Urban Forestry & Land Manager has approved record drawings.
2. Provide one controller chart for each automatic controller installed.
3. Chart may be a reproduction of the Record Drawing, if the scale permits fitting the controller door. If photo reduction prints are required, keep reduction to maximum size possible to retain full legibility.
4. Chart shall be black line print of the actual system, showing the area covered by that controller.
5. Identify the area of coverage of each remote control valve, using a distinctly different pastel color, drawn over the entire coverage.
6. Following approval of charts by the Urban Forestry & Land Manager, they shall be hermetically sealed between two layers of 20-mil thick plastic sheet.
7. Charts must be completed and approved prior to final acceptance of the irrigation system.

**J. Operation and Maintenance Manuals:**

1. Provide two individually bound manuals detailing operation and maintenance requirements for irrigation systems.
2. Manuals shall be delivered to the Urban Forestry & Land Manager no later than 10 days prior to initial acceptance of the work.
3. Provide descriptions of all installed materials and systems in sufficient detail to permit maintenance personnel to understand, operate and maintain the equipment.
4. Provide the following in each manual:
  - a. Index sheet, stating Irrigation Contractor's name, address, telephone number and name of person to contact.
  - b. Duration of guarantee period is two years.
  - c. Equipment list providing the following for each item:
    1. Manufacturer's name.
    2. Make and model number.
    3. Name and address of local manufacturer's representative.
    4. Spare parts list in detail.
    5. Detailed operation and maintenance instructions of major equipment.
    6. Serial numbers.
  - d. The serial number for each irrigation controller and controller enclosure as well as the address for its corresponding electrical service. Contractor shall independently lock each controller and furnish key to Urban Forestry & Land Manager.

**K. Electric Power:** The Contractor shall be responsible for providing 120 volt, 60 cycle AC electrical power to the irrigation controller whenever it is necessary.

**L. Water for Testing:** The Contractor shall furnish all water necessary for testing and flushing.

**17-13 IRRIGATION INSTALLATION PROCEDURES:**

**A. General:**

1. This section includes installation specifications for all items installed as a part of the irrigation systems. Certain construction procedures or minor equipment installation procedures may have been omitted from these specifications. If no specification, detail or plan provides adequate instructions for installation, the Contractor shall install per the manufacturer's recommendation.
2. A Licensed Irrigator or Licensed Irrigation Installer shall be present at the project site at all times as work is in progress. The Urban Forestry & Land Manager may demand that work stop until the Contractor provides for a Licensed Irrigator or Licensed Irrigation Installer to be present at the project site and supervising all irrigation work.



3. A pre-construction site observation will be conducted prior to construction to observe conditions and note features which may be considered inoperable or have prior damage.
  4. Irrigation plans are diagrammatic due to scale. Significant system modifications required by field conditions are permitted with consent from the Urban Forestry & Land Manager. In no situation shall the Contractor install valves or heads under or in concrete paving areas. In any situation that the plans show a conflict in the actual site conditions, it shall be the Contractor's responsibility to notify the Urban Forestry & Land Manager of the conflict to receive direction. Irrigation work shown on the drawings within tree dripline areas is not diagrammatic, and must be constructed exactly as shown on the drawings.
- B. Product Handling: The Contractor shall be responsible for correct procedures in loading, unloading, staking, transporting, and handling all materials to be used in the system. The Contractor shall avoid rough handling which could affect the useful life of equipment. Pipe shall be handled in accordance with the manufacturer's published recommendations on loading, unloading, and storage.
- C. Excavation and Trenching:
1. The Contractor shall perform all excavation to the depth indicated in these specifications and drawings. The banks of trenches shall be kept as nearly vertical as practicable. The width of the trenches shall not be greater than necessary to permit proper jointing, tamping, backfilling, bedding or any other installation procedures that may be necessary. Trencher shall be wide enough to allow a minimum of four inches (4") between parallel pipelines or electrical wiring. Pipes shall not be vertically stacked. Where rock excavation is required, or where stones are encountered in the bottom of the trench that would create a concentrated pressure on the pipe, rock or stones shall be removed to a depth of six inches (6") minimum below the trench depth indicated. The overdepth rock excavation and all excess trench excavation shall be backfilled with loose, moist earth or sand, thoroughly tamped. Whenever wet or otherwise unstable soil that is incapable of properly supporting the pipe is encountered in the trench bottom, such shall be removed to a depth and length required, and the trench backfilled to trench bottom grade as hereinafter specified with course sand, fine gravel or other suitable material.
  2. Excavation and trenching shall be true to line and at the width and depth specified in other sections of these specifications. The full length of each section of the pipe shall rest solidly upon the pipe bed. Bottom of trench grade shall be continued past ground surface deviations to avoid air pockets and low collection points in the line. The minimum cover specifications shall govern regardless of variations in ground surface profile and the occasional deeper excavation required at banks and other field conditions. Excavation shall be such that a uniform trench grade variation will occur in all cases where variations are necessary.

3. Trench excavation shall comprise the satisfactory removal and disposition of all materials and shall include all shoring and sheeting required to protect the excavation and to safeguard employees.

4. During excavation, material suitable for backfilling shall be stockpiled in an orderly manner a sufficient distance back from edge of trenches to avoid overloading and prevent slides or cave-ins. Material unsuitable for backfilling shall be removed from the site as directed by the Urban Forestry & Land Manager. When excavated material is of a rocky nature and the topsoil or any other layer of excavated material is suitable for pipe bedding and backfill in the vicinity of the pipe, such material shall be separately stockpiled for use in such bedding and pipe backfill operations, unless satisfactory imported material is used.

5. All excavations and backfill shall be unclassified and covered in the basic bid. No additional compensation will be allowed for rock encountered.

6. The Contractor shall restore all surfaces and/or existing underground installations damaged or cut as a result of the excavations to their original conditions in a manner acceptable to the Urban Forestry & Land Manager.

**D. Depth of Bury:**

1. There shall be a minimum of 18 inches and a maximum of 20 inches of cover from proposed grade to top of pipe for all pipe installed in parks and public buildings.

2. There shall be a minimum of 24 inches and a maximum of 36 inches of cover from adjacent top of curb to top of pipe for all pipe installed in street medians. There shall be a minimum of 24 inches and a maximum of 36 inches of cover from adjacent top of curb to top of pipe for all pipe installed in parkways.

**E. Pipe and Fittings:**

1. Installation of plastic pipe and fittings shall be in accordance with the specifications list within and, when specifications do not clearly depict the scope, install per the manufacturer's recommendation.

2. Caution shall be exercised by the Contractor in handling, loading, unloading, and storing of PVC pipe and fittings. All PVC pipe shall be stored and transported in a vehicle with a bed long enough to allow the pipe to lie flat without subjecting it to undue bending or concentrated external load at any point. Any section of pipe that has been dented or damaged or in any other way found to be defective, either before or after laying, shall be replaced with sound pipe without additional expense to the Owner.

3. Material storage in median areas is not permitted.

4. Before installing the pipe, all rubbish and rocks shall be removed from the trenches. Before installation, the inside of the pipe shall be cleaned of all direct and foreign

matter and shall be kept in a cleaned condition during and after laying of the pipe. When work is not in progress, open ends of pipe and fittings shall be securely closed so that no trench water, earth, or other foreign substances will enter the pipe or fittings. Where pipe ends are left for future expansion or connections, they shall be valved and capped, as directed on the drawings.

5. All PVC pipe and fittings shall be assembled to permit the pipe or fittings to be joined at the true parallel position of the fitting. Placement of pipe in curving trenches which causes bending and stress on pipe and fittings will not be permitted. No excess piping or fittings shall be permitted in the installation of the system, which may increase pressure loss or potential blockage.
6. Pipe shall not be laid in water or when trench or weather conditions are unsuitable for the work. Any water which may be encountered or may accumulate in the trenches or excavation shall be pumped out or otherwise removed as necessary to keep the bottom of the trench or excavation free and clear of water during the progress of the work.
7. PVC pipe will expand or contract at the rate of one (1) inch per 100 feet per 10 degrees F change in temperature. Therefore, the pipe shall be installed in a manner so as to provide for expansion and contraction as recommended by the manufacturer.
8. Unless otherwise specified on the drawings, all piping passing under sidewalks, roadways, parking lots, etc., shall be sleeved in a SCH 40 PVC pipe two sizes larger than the pipe to be sleeved.
9. When more than one pipe is installed in the same trench, at all times the four (4)-inch separation shall be maintained.
10. PVC pipe and fittings shall be assembled with the following requirements:
  - a. Solvent. Use only solvent recommended by manufacturer to make solvent-welded joints following standards noted herein. Thoroughly clean pipe and fittings of dirt, dust and moisture with an approved PVC primer before applying solvent.
  - b. PVC to Metal Connection. Work metal connections first. Use a non-hardening pipe dope such as Permatex No. 2 or "Teflon" tape on threaded PVC to metal joints. Use only light wrench pressure.
  - c. Threaded PVC Connections. Where required, use threaded PVC adapters into which pipe may be welded.
11. After all irrigation piping, risers, valves, thrust blocks, etc., have been installed and partially backfilled as specified in other parts of these specifications, the control valve shall be opened and a full head of water used to flush out the system. After the system is thoroughly flushed, risers shall be capped off and the system pressure tested in

accordance with the testing section of these specifications. At the conclusion of the pressure test, the heads shall be installed and the backfill operation completed. No backfill shall occur before the Urban Forestry & Land Manager inspects the piping and approves the work.

**F. Solvent Welding:**

1. PVC plastic pipe shall be squarely cut.
2. Burrs left from cutting shall be wiped off with a clean, dry cloth.
3. Utilizing a colored cleaner/primer, thoroughly clean the mating pipe end and the fitting socket with a clean dry cloth.
4. Apply a uniform coat of solvent cement to the outside of the pipe end with a non-synthetic brush or dauber.
5. In like manner, apply a thin coating of solvent cement to the inside of the fitting socket.
6. Re-apply a light coat of solvent cement to the pipe and quickly insert it into the fitting to the full depth of the fitting socket.
7. Rotate the pipe or fitting approximately 1/4 turn to insure even distribution of the solvent cement.
8. Hold in position for approximately 30 seconds.
9. Wipe off any excess solvent cement that forms as a bead around the outer shoulder.
10. Care should be taken so as not to use an excess amount of solvent cement that could cause burrs or obstructions to form on the inside of the pipe joint.
11. Solvent weld joints shall be allowed to cure for at least 24 hours before pressure is applied to the system.

**G. Tree Bubbler Heads:** Each tree shall have two bubblers each they must be placed one must be placed on the upward slope of the tree and the other on the side of the tree that is on the inner median side. No bubblers may be placed on the lower slope or curb side of the tree. The bubbler placement should allow full water flow to cover the entire rootball. All bubblers must be hard piped in; no funny pipe is allowed.

**H. Drip Irrigation Tube:** The Netafim .9 tubing shall be placed 12" apart and stapled down to keep the tubing from rising up and popping up through the mulch. The emitters shall be triangulated providing optimum watering. Each drip zone must have at least one air release valve at the end of the run.

I. Ball Valves: Each zone shall have a ball valve in front of it to shut down only that section if a repair must be made.

J. Backfilling:

1. Underground inspection shall be made after trenches or ditches are excavated, piping and control wiring installed and before any backfill is put in place in accordance with current City Ordinance. After completion and acceptance of the hydrostatic test, wiring and piping inspection for a particular section of the irrigation system, the backfill operation can be completed. (Rev. 3/09)

2. All backfill material shall be subject to approval by the Urban Forestry & Land Manager. Backfill material shall be free from rubbish, rock large stones, brush, sod, frozen material or other unsuitable substances that may damage pipe during the backfilling operations.

3. In the event that the material from the excavation or trenching is found to be unsuitable for use in backfill, it shall be removed from the site and properly disposed of by the Contractor and at the Contractor's expense. The Contractor shall then, at no additional cost to the Owner, arrange for, purchase, and furnish suitable backfill material consisting of earth, loam, sandy clay, sand, or other approved materials free of large clods of earth or sharp stones.

4. Backfill shall be placed in horizontal layers "lifts" not exceeding six (6) inches in depth and shall be thoroughly tamped, rolled or otherwise compacted. Backfill shall be placed to the original ground level or to the limits the installer feels that total settlement in three (3) months shall be flush to finish grade. If settlement of trenches below finished grade occurs any time within the two-year warranty period, it shall be the Contractor's responsibility to refill trenches and re-seed or sod the repaired areas. The Contractor shall be notified in writing of areas that have settled, and the Contractor shall fix the settled ditches within five (5) working days.

K. 4" Pop-Up Bubbler Heads: Contractor shall provide heads and nozzles as specified and install in locations as shown on the drawings. Pop-up bubbler heads shall be installed on a flexible PVC nipple directly on to lateral piping as detailed on drawings/plans. Heads shall be installed with the top of head flush with the finished grade. Contractor will be required to adjust heads as necessary after establishment of trees so that bubblers are located inside tree wells and away from curbside. In areas where slope is prominent, install heads on the high side of the tree.

L. Irrigation Heads:

1. Irrigation heads shall not utilize above-ground spray emission devices in landscapes that are less than 60 inches not including the impervious surfaces in either length or width and which contain impervious pedestrian or vehicular traffic surfaces along two or more perimeters. Qualifying areas less than 60 inches may be irrigated utilizing subsurface or drip irrigation, pressure compensating tubing, or be designed without irrigation. If pop-up sprays or rotary sprinkler heads are used in a new

irrigation system, the sprinkler heads must direct flow away from any adjacent surface and shall not be installed closer than 4 inches from a hardscape, such as, but not limited to, a building foundation, fence, concrete, asphalt, pavers, or stones set with mortar in accordance with current City Ordinances. Heads shall be installed in the vertical positions, hand backfilled, and compacted to near original density. Spray heads must be Rain Bird 1800 PRS Series with Rain Bird MPR fixed pattern spray nozzle. Any rotors will be Rain Bird 5000 Series PRS. (Rev.6/2016)

2. Irrigation head spacing shall not exceed the spacing shown on the drawings and shall be in the approximate locations and configuration as shown on the drawings. Contractor shall verify area dimensions while staking irrigation head locations. Irrigation heads shall be spaced so that they are equal distance from one another for the given lengths and widths of the area to achieve uniform coverage.
3. After all piping and risers are in place and connected, and before installation of the irrigation heads, all control valves for a given section shall be fully opened and a full head of water shall be used to flush out the system.
4. If water pressure without the heads installed is not sufficient to provide adequate water flow from end risers, the Contractor shall cap off enough heads closest to the water source to provide adequate flushing of the end riser assemblies.

**M. Electrical Remote Control Valves and Valve Boxes:**

1. All electric remote control valves shall be of the type and size as indicated on the drawings and shall be installed where shown on the drawings, following the published recommendations of the manufacturer and in accordance with these specifications and drawings.
2. A ball valve and remote control electric valve, in that order or as detailed on the drawings, shall be installed in a rectangular valve box as specified and shall be set with a minimum of six inches (6") of space between their top surface and the bottom of the valve box. Valves shall be fully opened and fully closed to ensure that all parts are in operating condition. Valve boxes shall be set plumb, vertical and concentric with the valve stem with top of box flush with finished grade. Any valve box which has moved from this required position after final acceptance and during the guarantee period shall be reset by the Contractor at his or her own expense.
3. Any DC-powered system must provide automatic valve DC latching solenoids at no additional cost to Owner.
4. The valve boxes shall be locking and of the size and type as shown on the drawings. Valve boxes shall be installed as shown on the drawings.
5. Valve wire splices shall be waterproofed using dry splice connectors. The Contractor shall leave 24 inches of wire coiled to facilitate raising the wire out of the valve box for repairs.

N. Quick Coupling Valves: Quick coupling valves shall be installed on a swing-joint assembly as detailed on the drawings. Under the warranty, the Contractor shall return after grass is established and adjust the valve boxes to the proper grade.

O. Mainline Manual Drain Valves:

1. No 90° ells shall be accepted or used in mainlines. Mainlines are “all pipe downstream of water meter and upstream of station valves”.
2. If shown on plan, manual drain valves of the size and type indicated on the drawings shall be installed at all low points of mainline piping, or at any other points that may be indicated on the irrigation system drawings or indicated elsewhere in these specifications.

P. Sleeved Crossings and Electrical Conduit:

1. Sleeves and electrical conduits shall be installed as noted on the drawings. Contractor shall be responsible for locating all sleeves and conduits at no additional cost to the Owner.
2. Unless otherwise noted on drawings, all piping installed under sidewalks, roadways, parking lots, etc., shall be one, 4” sleeve for both wire and pipe.
3. Every effort shall be made by the Contractor to install sleeving prior to the pouring or construction of the sidewalks, roadways, parking lots, etc. If prior sleeving is not possible, all crossings must be bored unless written authorization for an open cut is obtained from the Urban Forestry & Land Manager. Reference typical irrigation sleeve under paving.

Q. Thrust Blocks: Thrust blocks shall be constructed at all direction changes and/or termination points, or at any point of the system that will result in an unbalanced thrust. Thrust blocks shall be poured against undisturbed earth and in accordance with the drawings and details. Do not obstruct the outlets of fittings that are intended for future connections.

R. Controller Enclosure: The Contractor shall install the enclosure according plan and manufacturer specifications. The Contractor shall provide, in the controller enclosure, one (1) ground fault interrupter duplex receptor, the clock and all sensors required by the manufacturer and ordinances.

S. Controller:

1. The controller location is indicated on the drawings. The Contractor shall be familiarized with the requirements of making power connections. Installation shall be performed by a licensed electrician. The electrical power for the controller shall be considered a part of this contract but bid as an incidental item to the controller, and is not a pay item.

2. The controller shall be mounted and wired according to the manufacturer's recommended procedures and as specified in these specifications and on the drawings.
3. Electric control valves shall be connected to controller in the numerical sequences as shown on the drawings.
4. Controller shall be installed in a locking controller enclosure as specified on the drawings.
5. In situations where a computerized central controller system is utilized, the Contractor is responsible for providing and installing the flow sensor wire to the water meter or electronic valve.
6. Contractor shall provide a green wire for the common flow wire, and a blue wire for the pulse signal on the flow meter. Ground wire and rod shall be installed inside the controller pedestal.
7. All wiring is subsidiary to controller installation.

**T. 24-Volt Control Valve Wiring:**

1. All control wire less than one thousand feet (1,000') in length shall be continuous without splices or joints from the controller to the valves. Connections to the electric control valves shall be made within eighteen inches (18") of the valve using connectors as specified. ALL wire splices shall be covered with a valve box. All wire passing under existing or future paving, sidewalk, construction, etc., shall be encased in PVC Schedule 40 conduit extending at least thirty-six inches (36") below the top of curb..
2. All wire installation procedures as described herein shall be checked to conform to local electrical codes.
3. All wire used for the 24 volt wiring from the controller to the electric control valves shall be type "UF", 600 volt, solid copper, single conductor, PVC insulated and bear UL approval for direct burial underground feeder cable. Unless otherwise specified on the drawings, the 24 volt common wires shall be wire No. 12 AWG and the remaining 24 volt control wires shall be No. 12 AWG, and of colors other than white. These colors shall be noted on the "as-built" record drawings.
4. The Contractor shall install the 24 volt control valve wiring in the same trench as the irrigation system mainline. In no situation shall the wire be installed above the spring line of the mainline. The wires shall be laid loose in the trench to allow for contraction. Control wires shall be taped together in 10'0" increments.
5. Wire splices, other than at valve box locations, shall be kept to a minimum. If needed, they shall be made only at common splice points and placed in a concrete valve box, reference irrigation electric valve detail. The location of these wire splice boxes shall



be shown on the "as-built" record drawings. No buried wire splices shall be permitted. All wire splices shall be made waterproof using dry splice connectors.

6. In no case shall wires of different colors be spliced together.
7. Control wires shall be identified with E-Z Coder WDR Series Tape at each valve and at the controller and at splices. Valves shall be numbered on the "as-built" record drawings.
8. All wiring shall be subsidiary to control valve installation.

U. 120 Volt Controller Power Wiring:

1. The Contractor shall familiarize himself/herself with the work required to complete this portion of the installation. All 120 volt wiring shall be installed in accordance with State and local electrical codes and regulations. The 120 volt service shall consist of one black and one white wire. The neutral wire must be bonded. All wiring is subsidiary to project.
2. Contractor shall provide and install 120 volt power to the controller location. All electrical work shall be performed by a Licensed Electrician.

V. Hydrostatic Tests:

1. Upon completion of the irrigation system's mainline; the entire mainline shall be tested for a four (4) hour period at 100 psi. Prior to testing, the mainline shall be partially backfilled, leaving all joints and connections exposed for visual observation. All dirt shall be flushed from the system and the line filled with water to remove air. The mainline shall be brought to static pressure. A pressure gauge and temporary valve shall be installed at the end of the mainline to permit hydrostatic pressure to be applied to the main. A pressure of 100 psi must be retained for a four (4) hour period. Any leaks resulting in the four (4) hour pressure test shall be repaired and the system retested until the system passes the test.
2. Upon completion of the irrigation mainline, all lateral irrigation piping must be pressure tested for one (1) hour at 100 psi. The procedure shall be the same as used for the mainline. If after one (1) hour no visual leakage has occurred and the 100-psi pressure has been retained, the heads shall be installed, and the backfill operation completed. Any leaks resulting from the hydrostatic test shall be repaired and the system retested until the system passes the test.

W. Final Adjustment:

1. After installation has been completed, the Contractor shall make final adjustment of irrigation system prior to Urban Forestry & Land Manager final inspection.
2. The Contractor shall completely flush system to remove debris from lines by removing bubbler head nozzles and turning system on.

3. After lateral lines have been thoroughly flushed, the Contractor shall replace nozzles and check each bubbler for proper operation.

4. The Contractor shall operate each section as long as necessary to insure all bubblers are working properly.

**17-14 IRRIGATION METERS AND WATER ACCOUNT:** Contractor will be responsible for payment of the impact fee and activation fee for the irrigation meter(s) on this project. Contractor shall establish the water account under their name and inform the Water Customer Care representative that the meter(s) are for a City's project and that it will later be owned by the Parks and Recreation Department. Once the irrigation system is tested, inspected, and accepted by the Parks and Recreation Department, the Parks and Recreation Department will have the water account transferred to the City. A bid item is included in the PROPOSAL for reimbursement of this expense.

(Rev. 6/2016)

END OF SECTION

**SECTION NO. 18**

**SPECIAL PROVISIONS - PAVEMENT MARKING SPECIFICATIONS**

- A. Pavement markings shall include Reflectorized Pavement Markings, Prefabricated Pavement Markings, and Raised Pavement Markers and shall be in accordance with the Standard Specifications for Construction and Maintenance of Highways, Streets, and Bridges as published by the Texas Department of Transportation, latest edition. Contractor shall place markings in accordance with the surface condition, moisture, and temperature requirements.
- B. Reflectorized Pavement Markings that are considered the final and permanent markings shall be Type I "Hot Applied Thermoplastic, unless otherwise noted on the plans or approved by the City. Prefabricated pavement markings shall be placed in accordance with the manufacturer's specifications.
- C. Payment for pavement markings shall be lump sum as shown in the PROPOSAL.

END OF SECTION

**SECTION NO. 19**

**SPECIAL PROVISIONS – STREETLIGHT SPECIFICATIONS**

**NOT APPLICABLE**



**SECTION NO. 20**

**SPECIAL PROVISIONS - SIGN SPECIFICATIONS**

- A. Contractor shall furnish, fabricate, and erect sign assemblies consisting of the signs, sign supports, foundations, and associated mounting hardware in accordance with the City's details.
- B. Contractor shall remove and dispose of all existing signs, poles, and foundation; and furnish and install new signs as shown on the construction plans. All signs must meet current TMUTCD design and reflectivity requirements. Contractor shall prevent scarring and marring of poles and signs. Any damaged components shall be replaced with new material at the Contractors expense, as directed by the City.
- C. Payment shall be made in accordance with the lump sum bid item in the PROPOSAL.

END OF SECTION

**NOT APPLICABLE**

**SPECIAL PROVISIONS:**

**SECTION NO. 21 – SIGNAL SPECIFICATIONS**

**SECTION NO. 22 – MILL & OVERLAY RECLAMATION SPECIFICATIONS**

***END OF DOCUMENT***

---

---